JUNIOR LATIN COURSE

For Junior Forms in Schools.

A JUNIOR COURSE OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR. By A. M.
WALMSLEY, M.A. *Third Edition.* 2s. 6d.
A JUNIOR COURSE OF ENGLISH COMPOSITION. By
E. W. EDMUNDS, M.A., B.Sc. *Second Edition.* 2s. 6d.
A FIRST ENGLISH COURSE (formerly entitled *Preliminary
English Course*). By A. M. WALMSLEY, M.A. *Second Edition.*
2s. 6d.
JUNIOR GEOGRAPHY. By G. C. FRY, M.Sc. *Fifth Edition.*
4s.
JUNIOR ARITHMETIC. By R. H. CHOPE, B.A. *Fifth
Edition.* 4s. With Answers. 4s. 6d.
JUNIOR ALGEBRA. By A. G. CRACKNELL, M.A., B.Sc., F.C.P.,
and AUGUSTUS BARRACLOUGH, M.A. 3s. 6d. With Answers. 4s.
JUNIOR GEOMETRY. By A. G. CRACKNELL, M.A., B.Sc.,
F.C.P. 3s. 6d.
JUNIOR LATIN COURSE. By B. J. HAYES, M.A. *Second
Edition.* 4s.
NEW JUNIOR LATIN READER. By A. J. TATE, M.A. 3s. 6d.
NEW JUNIOR FRENCH COURSE. By G. A. ROBERTS,
M.A. 4s.
JUNIOR FRENCH COURSE. By Professor ERNEST WEEKLEY,
M.A., and M. A. LEBONNOIS, B.-ès-L. *Third Edition.* 3s. 6d.
JUNIOR FRENCH READER. By Professor ERNEST WEEKLEY,
M.A. *Second Edition.* 2s.
JUNIOR MECHANICS. By F. ROSENBERG, M.A., B.Sc. 4s.
JUNIOR EXPERIMENTAL SCIENCE. By W. M. HOOTON,
M.A., M.Sc., F.I.C. *Second Edition.* 3s. 6d.
JUNIOR HEAT. By Professor JOHN SATTERLY, D.Sc., M.A.
Second Edition. 2s. 6d.
JUNIOR SOUND AND LIGHT. By R. W. STEWART, D.Sc.,
and Professor JOHN SATTERLY, D.Sc. M.A. 3s. 6d.
JUNIOR MAGNETISM AND ELECTRICITY. By R. H. JUDE,
D.Sc., M.A., and Professor JOHN SATTERLY, D.Sc., M.A.
Second Edition. 3s. 6d.
JUNIOR CHEMISTRY. By R. H. ADIE, M.A., B.Sc. *Third
Edition, Revised* by J. E. T. GILBERT, B.Sc., A.I.C. 3s. 6d.
JUNIOR BOTANY. By FRANCIS CAVERS, D.Sc. 3s. 6d.

LONDON : W. B. CLIVE

University Tutorial Press Ld.

HIGH ST., NEW OXFORD ST., W.C.

JUNIOR LATIN COURSE

BY

B. J. HAYES, M.A. CAMB. AND LOND.

LATE SCHOLAR OF ST. JOHN'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE, GOLD MEDALLIST IN CLASSICS
AUTHOR OF "THE TUTORIAL LATIN GRAMMAR"

Second Edition (Fourteenth Impression)

LONDON : W. B. CLIVE

University Tutorial Press Ld.

HIGH ST., NEW OXFORD ST., W.C.

1931

PREFACE.

A GLANCE at the table of contents will make the plan of this book clear : it follows the traditional order of the parts of speech, except that for the sake of the Exercises considerable portions of the conjugations of *sum* and of *amo* (active and passive) are introduced at an early stage ; moreover provision has been made for the postponement of some of the lessons on the comparison of adjectives and on pronouns.

The rules relating to dependent statements, ablative absolute, and various uses of the subjunctive have been given at greater length and with fuller explanation than is customary in books intended for beginners, for it is now generally acknowledged that the chief, if not the only, benefit which the majority of such learners can derive from the study of Latin is a training in the accurate use of language, and for this purpose syntactical rules are of much greater value than irregularities of accidence and of genders, which for only too many of us are our only recollection of the Latin we learnt at school.

It is assumed that those who use this book will already know the meaning of common grammatical terms such as *subject, object, active, passive, indicative,* and that it would be a waste of space to insert definitions of them ; but terms peculiar to Latin grammar are duly explained. In the vocabularies English derivatives are given where possible

as a help to the memory, but it must be understood that the words so given are not in all cases derived *directly* from the Latin words opposite which they stand.

By the time the learner has reached Lesson 72, or even earlier, he should take up some Latin construing beyond that provided in the Exercises : for this purpose the *New Junior Latin Reader*, in this series, may be used.

The Exercises and Vocabularies were written by Miss F. L. D. Richardson (Mrs. A. J. Herbertson), B.A. Lond., who also rendered assistance with other parts of the book. For a careful revision of the proof sheets thanks are due to Mr. T. R. Mills, M.A., Wadham College, Oxford, late Lecturer in Greek at Aberdeen University, and to Mr. J. V. Thompson, M.A., also of Wadham College, Oxford.

In the second edition printers' and other errors have been corrected, but the differences between the two editions are not sufficient to make their use together in class inconvenient.

CONTENTS.

JUNIOR LATIN COURSE.

INTRODUCTORY LESSON.

1. Classical Latin, *i.e.* Latin of the best period, is the language of Roman literature during the century preceding the death of the Emperor Augustus (A.D. 14). This book deals only with classical Latin.

2. The **Latin alphabet** is the same as that now in use for writing English, except that it has no **J** and no **W**.

3. Vowels are said to be of **long** or **short quantity,** according to the time occupied by their pronunciation. Thus in the English word *fumigated u* and *a* are of long quantity, *i* and *e* of short quantity.

The sign (-) denotes that the quantity of the vowel over which it is placed is long, the sign (ˑ) denotes that the quantity of the vowel is short.

Obs. These marks are not used in the ordinary writing or printing of Latin. In this book long vowels not followed by two consonants are marked as long ; see § 5, Note 3.

4. Latin words of two syllables are **accentuated** on the first syllable (*e.g.* **pa′ter,** *father* ; **mā′ter,** *mother*), *i.e.* the first syllable is pronounced with more stress than the second, though the stress is not so marked as in the English words *fáther, móther.*

Latin words of more than two syllables are accentuated on the last syllable but one if that syllable is long, *e.g.* **sorō′res,** *sisters* ; but otherwise on the last syllable but two, *e.g.* **do′minus,** *lord* ; **fami′lia,** *household.*

A syllable is long if (1) it contains a long vowel or diphthong, or (2) if its vowel is followed by **x** or **z** or by two consonants.

J. L. C.   I

NOTE.—If of two consonants the first is b, c, d, f, g, p, or t, and the second l or r, the syllable preceding may be long or short, provided that its vowel is short. For the purpose of accentuation such syllables are usually regarded as short, *e.g.* im'petrŏ.

Obs. The mark of accentuation is not used in the ordinary writing or printing of Latin.

5. How the Romans pronounced Latin in the Classical Period has been ascertained with fair certainty, and learners are expected to follow the main rules laid down by modern scholars, which are roughly as follows.

CONSONANTS :—
    c, always as in *can*, not as in *city*.
    g, always as in *go*, not as in *general*.
    i (in some books printed j), as *y* in *ye*.
    r, always rolled, as *rr* in *furrier*.
    s, always unvoiced, as in *hiss* (not voiced as in *his*).
    v (in some books printed u), as *w* in *we*.
    x, always as *cs*, not *gs*.

COMBINATIONS :—
    bs, as ps ; *e.g.* **trabs**, *beam*, is pronounced *trraps*.
    gu (before a vowel), as *gu* in *language*.
    qu, as *qu* in *queen*.   su, as *sw* in *sweet*.

The other consonants have their normal English value ; t is never to be pronounced *sh* as in *diction*.

§ 8. VOWELS :—

ā, as second *a* in *papa*.	a, as first *a* in *papa*.
ē, as *e* in *prey* (Fr. *é* in *blé*), not $e^{i\cdot}$	e, as *e* in *set*.
ī, as *i* in the second syllable of *quinine, machine*.	i, as first *i* in *quinine*.
ō, as second *o* in *follow*, not o^{u}.	o, as first *o* in *follow*.
ū, as *oo* in *boot*.	u, as *oo* in *foot*.
y, like Latin ī uttered with rounded lips, or like *u* in French *pure*.	y, like Latin i uttered with rounded lips, or like *u* in French *pu*.

Obs. The sounds indicated above by e^{i} and o^{u} are those heard, especially in Southern English, in such words as *way, so*. The Latin vowel is a single sound, not diphthongal.

DIPHTHONGS :—
    ae, nearly as *ai* in *Isaiah* (broadly pronounced).
    au, as *ou* in *house*.   eu, as *eu* in *feud*.
    ei, as *ei* in *eight*.   ui, as French **oui**.
    oe, as *oi* in *boil*.

Note 1.—The true pronunciation of the diphthongs is best ascertained by pronouncing the vowels of which they are composed quickly one after the other; the sounds indicated above are only approximations.

Note 2.—The symbol i serves both as a consonant and as a vowel. When i is followed by a consonant it must be a vowel; so also when it is long in quantity. Whether a short i followed by a vowel is a vowel or a consonant will not greatly concern the beginner, as the difference in pronunciation is but slight. Final i is always a vowel.

Note 3.—The quantity of a vowel followed by x or z or by two consonants cannot always be ascertained; such vowels are commonly pronounced as if they were short and are left unmarked in this book. The same applies to vowels before final m, e.g. in portam.

Obs.—Distinguish carefully between the length of a vowel and the length of the syllable which the vowel helps to form; e.g. trabs has a short vowel, but as the vowel is followed by two consonants the syllable is long. The pronunciation of a vowel depends, of course, on the length of that vowel, not on the length of the syllable.

PRACTICE IN PRONUNCIATION.

1. Repeat several times the vowels ā, ē, ī, ō, ū, ȳ, giving each the sound indicated on p. 2, and continuing the enunciation for about a second.

2. Repeat several times the vowels a, e, i, o, u, y, giving each the sound indicated on p. 2 and making no effort to prolong the enunciation.

Pronounce carefully, referring frequently to the tables on p. 2 and to Notes 1-3 above :—

3. ībat, ībit, ībō, ībant, ab, sub, ob.
4. āc, cum, coëunt, cicūta, biceps, ecce, cieō, Cynicus.
5. dum, ad, id, īdem, idem, dabō, dō.
6. fēlix, fēlīcem, fulciō, folium, efficiō.
7. gignō, genū, gula, gustō, age, gestāmen, gymnicus.
8. iam, iaciō, iēcistī, iocī, iambī, iūdex.
9. palam, pāgī, pedem, appōnō, supplex, Pygmaliōn.
10. quā, quī, quō, equus, colloquium, inquam.
11. rē, arō, currit, ācer, parum, pāret, parra, iēcēre.
12. sī, sīs, iūs, essēs, ursās, rēs, fers, tyrannus, Byrsa.
13. tē, ratiō, attamen, adiēcit, ambitiō, satis, Tyrus.
14. iuvenis, vātis, vēr, vir, vīrēs, vōcēs, avē.
15. xystus, lex, Xerxēs, neglexī, vervex.
16. zōna, Zēnō, Zama, mazonōmus, gaza.
17. aes, aera, āera, aequus, portae, aēneus, vae, faex.
18. plaustrum, faucēs, adelphoe, suāvius, Oeneus, Oedipūs.
19. abs, urbs, chalybs, ēchō, Sapphō, philosophus, Hyacintha, Tēthys, Corinthus, Euphrātēs, Thūcȳdidēs.
20. distinguō, assuēfacere, cuī, persuāsī, pinguis.

6. PART OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

(ACTIVE VOICE).

Nearly all Latin verbs belong to one of the four " conjugations," i.e. they are conjugated like one or other of the four model verbs shown on pp. 64-79.

The part of the first conjugation printed on this page is to be learnt with Lessons 1-3, according to the directions there given.

MODEL : **amō,** *I love, I like.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

am-ō,	*I love* or *am loving*	**am-āmus,**	*we love* or *are loving*
am-ās,	*thou lovest* or *art loving*	**am-ātis,**	*ye love* or *are loving*
am-at,	*he loves* or *is loving*	**am-ant,**	*they love* or *are loving*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

am-ābam,	*I was loving*	**am-ābāmus,**	*we were loving*
am-ābās,	*thou wast loving*	**am-ābātis,**	*ye were loving*
am-ābat,	*he was loving*	**am-ābant,**	*they were loving*

FUTURE TENSE.

am-ābō,	*I shall love*	**am-ābimus,**	*we shall love*
am-ābis,	*thou wilt love*	**am-ābitis,**	*ye will love*
am-ābit,	*he will love*	**am-ābunt,**	*they will love*

PERFECT TENSE.

am-āv-ī,	*I loved* or *have loved*	**am-āv-imus,**	*we loved* or *have loved*
am-āv-istī,	*thou lovedst* or *hast loved*	**am-āv-istis,**	*ye loved* or *have loved*
am-āv-it,	*he loved* or *has loved*	**am-āv-ērunt** or **am-āv-ēre,**	*they loved* or *have loved*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

am-ā,	*love (thou)*	**am-āte,**	*love (ye)*

LESSON 1.

Learn the **present** indicative active of **amō** (p. 4).

7. It will be seen that, just as an English verb has different terminations for the different persons in the singular (*love, lovest, loves* or *loveth*), so a Latin verb varies (**amō, amās, amat**) ; but in Latin there are different terminations also for each person in the plural.

In Latin, however, these terminations are not merely characteristic of the several persons, but their use renders unnecessary that of the personal pronouns ; *e.g.* **amās** stands not merely for *lovest*, but for *thou lovest*. Hence a Latin verb can by itself form a complete sentence.

8. After learning the present indicative active of **amō**, learn the verbs in Vocabulary 1 (below) and conjugate the present indicative active of each. In order to do this :— cut off from each verb given in the Vocabulary its final **-ō** ; the *base* then remains. To the base add the several terminations **-ās, -at,** etc. Thus, the base of **cantō** is **cant-** ; the second person singular is therefore **cant-ās,** the third person singular **cant-at,** and so on.

9. In doing the Exercises (pp. 161-205) it is best to use *you* in translating the Latin second person singular and plural into English ; *e.g.* **amās** or **amātis,** *you love* or *you like*. In the English sentences *you* is to be rendered by the Latin second person *singular*, unless there is any reason to suppose that more persons than one are addressed ; then, and then only, the Latin second person plural is to be used.

VOCABULARY I.

ambul-ō (amble), *I walk.*
cant-ō (chant), *I sing.*
clām-ō (clamour), *I shout.*
curs-ō (course), *I run to and fro.*

err-ō (err), *I go astray, I am mistaken.*
salt-ō (somer-sault), *I dance.*
voc-ō (vocal), *I call.*

All the above verbs belong to the first conjugation.

LESSON 2.

Learn the **imperfect** and **future** indicative active of **amō**
(p. 4).

10. In English two tenses only, viz., the present simple
and the past simple, consist of a single word, in which the
verb exhibits various changes ; *e.g. love—loved, come—
came.* In Latin many tenses are so formed, and among
these are the imperfect and future, both of which tenses
are in English made up by the help of auxiliary verbs.

11. Learn Vocabulary 2 (below), and conjugate in the
imperfect and future each of the verbs there given.   To do
this, cut off the final -ō and add the terminations **-abam,
-ābās,** etc., for the imperfect, and **-ābō, -ābis,** etc., for the
future.

VOCABULARY 2.

ar-ŏ (arable), *I plough.*
festīn-ŏ, *I hasten.*
imper-ŏ (imperative),   *I com-
  mand.*

labŏr-ŏ (labour), *I labour, take
  pains.*
pecc-ŏ, *I sin.*
vigĭl-ŏ (vigil), *I watch.*

All the above verbs belong to the first conjugation.

LESSON 3.

Learn the **perfect indicative** active and the **present im-
perative** active of **amō** (p. 4).

NOTE.—In the perfect indicative the third person plural termina-
tion **-ēre** is chiefly used in poetry.

12. In the table of the imperative the pronouns *thou* and
ye are added to distinguish singular from plural ; no pro-
nouns need, however, be used in translating a Latin
imperative, so that in this mood a single English word may
form a complete sentence.

Learn Vocabulary 3 (p. 7), and conjugate in the perfect
indicative and present imperative each of the verbs there
given, cutting off the final -ō and adding the terminations
-āv-ī, -āv-istī, etc.

VOCABULARY 3.

dubit-ō (dubitative), *I doubt, I hesitate.*

laud-ō (laud), *I praise.*

pugn-ō (pugnacious), *I fight.*

super-ō (insuperable), *I overcome.*

vulner-ō (vulnerable), *I wound.*

All the above verbs belong to the first conjugation

LESSON 4.

13.   FIRST (OR A*) DECLENSION.

MODEL : **porta, (f.),** *gate.*   Base, **port-.**

	Singular.		Plural.		
Nominative.	**port-a,**	*a gate.*		**port-ae,**	*gates.*
Vocative.	**port-a,**	*gate !*		**port-ae,**	*gates !*
Accusative.	**port-am,**	*a gate.*		**port-ās,**	*gates.*
Genitive.	**port-ae,**	*of a gate.*		**port-ārum,**	*of gates.*
Dative.	**port-ae,**	*to a gate.*		**port-īs,**	*to gates.*
Ablative.	**port-ā,**	*in, with,* or *from a gate.*		**port-īs,**	*in, with,* or *from gates.*

Obs.—A and *the* are not, as a rule, expressed in Latin.   Thus **porta** means *gate,* or *a gate,* or *the gate.*

CAUTION.—'' To '' in the translation of the dative **portae** does not imply motion (see § 22).   A preposition denoting *in, with,* or *from,* is often required with the ablative.

Learn the nominative, vocative, accusative, and genitive cases of **porta,** singular and plural.

* The declensions are also known according to the characteristic vowel of the genitive plural, as follows :—

	Gen. Sing. Ending.	Gen. Pl. Ending.	Characteristic.
First Declension	**ae**	**ārum**	**A**
Second ,,	**ī**	**ōrum**	**O**
Third ,,	**is**	**ium** or **um**	I or Consonant
Fourth ,,	**ūs**	**uum**	**U**
Fifth ,,	**ēī** or **eī**	**ērum**	**E**

14. Latin substantives are of **three genders**—masculine, feminine, and neuter. As in English, substantives denoting persons of the male sex are masculine, and those denoting persons of the female sex are feminine ; but other substantives, instead of being all neuter, are in Latin some masculine, some feminine, some neuter.

Substantitives of the first declension are feminine, unless they denote male persons.

(In this book, m. = masculine, f. = feminine, c. = common, *i.e.* either masculine or feminine, n. = neuter.)

15. The two **numbers,** singular and plural, are distinguished in Latin, as in English, by terminations ; *e.g.* **port-a,** *gate,* **port-ae,** *gates.*

16. Cases are more numerous in Latin than in English, where the objective (which corresponds to the Latin accusative) does not differ in form from the nominative, except in some pronouns, *e.g. who* (nominative), *who-m* (objective), *who-se* (possessive).

17. RULE.—The **nominative,** as in English, expresses the **subject** of the sentence, and the verb must be of the same number and person as its subject.

puella cantat	*the girl sings*
puellae cantant	*the girls sing*

Obs.—This rule is known as the " first concord."

18. RULE.—The **vocative** denotes the person addressed.

cantā, puella	*sing, girl*
cantāte, puellae	*sing, girls*

19. RULE.—The **accusative,** like the objective case in English, denotes the direct object of a transitive verb.

rēgīna puellam amat	*the queen loves the girl*
rēgīna puellās amat	*the queen likes girls*

NOTE.—In Latin the verb usually stands at the end of the clause.

20. RULE.—The **genitive** case answers to the English possessive case and also expresses nearly all the other meanings of the preposition *of*.

rēgĭnae fīlia	*the queen's daughter* or *the daughter of the queen*
rēgĭna insulae	*the queen of the island*
turba nautārum	*a crowd of sailors*

NOTE.—In Latin, a genitive sometimes precedes, but more often follows, the substantive on which it depends.

21. Learn Vocabulary 4 (below), and form the nominative, accusative, and genitive (singular and plural) of six of the substantitives there given. In order to do this :— cut off from each substantive in the Vocabulary its final **-a**; the base then remains. To the base add the several terminations **-am, -ae, -ās, -arum,** as shewn in the table. Thus, the base of **fīlia** is **fīli-**; the accusative singular is therefore **fīli-am,** the genitive singular **fīli-ae,** etc.

Obs.—In this declension the vocative has the same form as the nominative.

VOCABULARY 4.

audāci-a, -ae, *f.* (audacity), *boldness.*

fēmin-a,-ae,*f.* (feminine), *woman.*

fīli-a, -ae, *f.* (filial), *daughter.*

naut-a, -ae, *m.* (nautical), *sailor.*

poēt-a, -ae, *m., poet.*

procell-a, -ae, *f., storm.*

puell-a, -ae, *f., girl.*

pugn-a,   ae, *f.* (pugnacious), *battle.*

rēgīn-a, -ae, *f., queen.*

ros-a, -ae, *f., rose.*

sapienti-a, -ae, *f.* (sapient), *wisdom.*

silv-a, -ae, *f.* (silvan), *wood.*

turb-a, -ae, *f.* (turbulent), *crowd.*

Obs.—After each substantive in these vocabularies the termination of the genitive singular is given, in order to show to which of the five declensions the substantive belongs.

LESSON 5.

Learn the whole of the declension of **porta** (p. 7).

22. RULE.—The **dative** is used with verbs of *showing, telling,* and *giving* to express the **indirect object,** *i.e.* the person or thing *to whom* something is shown, told, or given.

rēgīnam n a u t a e indicāvī	*I pointed the queen out to the sailor*
nautīs hastās dōnāte	*give the sailors spears* (or *give spears to the sailors*)

NOTE.—In Latin the indirect object usually precedes the direct object, as it always does in English if no preposition is used.

23. The **ablative** answers the questions *Where? When? Wherewith?* and *Whence?* Rules for the first, second, and fourth of these usages will be given later on.

Obs.—The ablative does duty for some lost cases : hence the variety of its usages.

24. RULE.—The ablative answering the question *Wherewith?* is called the **ablative of the instrument,** and denotes the thing *by means of which* (*i.e.* wherewith) a thing is done.

nautae hastīs pugnābant	*the sailors were fighting with spears*
rēgīna turbam s a p i e n t i ā superāvit	*the queen overcame the crowd by wisdom*

NOTE.—The ablative is usually placed just before the verb.

Learn Vocabulary 5, and decline **agricola, insula,** and **vīta** throughout like **porta.**

VOCABULARY 5.

agricol-a, -ae, *m.* (agriculture), *farmer.*
culp-ō (culpable), *I blame.*
dēlect-ō (delectable), *I delight.*
dōn-ō (donor), *I give* (as a present).
fer-a, -ae, *f., wild beast.*
habit-ō (inhabit), *I inhabit.*

hast-a, -ae, *f., spear.*
indicō (indicate), *I point out.*
insul-a, -ae, *f.* (insular), *island.*
patri-a, -ae, *f.* (patriot), *native land, country.*
pecūni-a, -ae, *f.* (pecuniary), *money, sum of money.*
vīt-a, -ae, *f.* (vital), *life.*

All the above verbs belong to the first conjugation.

LESSON 6.

25.   PART OF THE CONJUGATION OF *SUM*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

sum,	*I am*	**sumus,**	*we are*
es,	*thou art*	**estis,**	*ye are*
est,	*he is*	**sunt,**	*they are*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

eram,	*I was*	**erāmus,**	*we were*
erās,	*thou wast*	**erātis,**	*ye were*
erat,	*he was*	**erant,**	*they were*

FUTURE TENSE.

erō,	*I shall be*	**erimus,**	*we shall be*
eris,	*thou wilt be*	**eritis,**	*ye will be*
erit,	*he will be*	**erunt,**	*they will be*

PERFECT TENSE.

fu-ī,	*I was* or *I have been*	**fu-imus,**	*we were* or *we have been*
fu-istī,	*thou wast* or *thou hast been*	**fu-istis,**	*ye were* or *ye have been*
fu-it,	*he was* or *he has been*	**fu-ērunt** or **fu-ēre**	*they were* or *they have been*

Learn the above four tenses of **sum**; also Vocabulary 6 (p. 12).

26. RULE.—With the verb **sum** the **completion of the predicate** stands in the **same case as the subject.**

   poētae fīlia r ē g ī n a erit   *the poet's daughter will be queen*

Here **erit** forms an incomplete predicate, and **rēgīna** completes the predicate : hence **rēgīna** is in the same case as **fīlia,** the subject. Compare in English "*I* am *he.*"

NOTE.—If the subject is contained in the verb, the completion of the predicate is in the case in which the subject would be if separately expressed, namely the nominative ; *e.g.* **Nautae sumus,** *We are sailors.*

27. RULE.—The ablative answering the question *Where* ? is preceded by the preposition **in,** *in.*

>   **in silvīs sumus**   *we are in the woods*

For an important exception to this rule, see § 55, p. 24.

VOCABULARY 6.

aquil-a, -ae, *f.* (aquiline), *eagle.*	**Ītali-a, -ae,** *f., Italy.*
caus-a, -ae, *f., cause.*	**ōr-a, -ae,** *f., shore.*
columb-a, -ae, *f., dove.*	**stultiti-a, -ae,** *f.* (stultify), *folly.*
Galli-a, -ae, *f., Gaul* (now *France*).	**vi-a, -ae,** *f., way, street.*
in, *in, on.*	**victōri-a, -ae,** *f., victory.*

LESSON 7.

Learn the declension of **dominus** (p. 13).

28. RULE.—An adverb immediately precedes the word it modifies.

>   **rēgīnam nōn amāmus**   *we do not like the queen*

29. Learn Vocabulary 7 (below), and decline **amīcus, equus, fluvius, servus,** cutting off from each the final **-us,** and adding the terminations **-e, -um, -ī,** etc.

Obs.—This is the only declension of Latin substantives in which the vocative differs in form from the nominative.

VOCABULARY 7.

amīc-us, -ī, *m.* (amicable), *friend.*	**inimīc-us, -ī,** *m.* (inimical), *enemy*
av-us, -ī, *m., grandfather.*	**medic-us, -ī,** *m.* (medical), *surgeon, physician, doctor.*
domin-us, -ī, m. (dominate), *master, lord.*	**morb-us, -ī,** *m.* (morbid), *disease.*
equ-us, -ī, *m.* (equine), *horse.*	**nec-ō,** 1st conjugation (internecine), *I kill, I slay.*
fīli-us, -ī, *m.* (filial), *son.*	**nōn,** adverb, *not.*
fluvi-us, -ī, m., *river.*	**serv-us, -ī,** *m.* (servile), *slave.*
gladi-us, -ī, *m.* (gladiator), *sword.*	**taur-us, -ī, m.,** *bull.*
hort-us, -ī, m. (horticulture), *garden.*	

30.   SECOND (OR O) DECLENSION.

Substantives of this declension are classed as follows :—

(1) Masculines (and a few feminines) with nominative singular ending in **-us** ;

(2) Masculines with nominative singular ending in **-er** ;

(3) Neuters with nominative singular ending in **-um**.

(1) Example : **dominus** (m.), *lord.*   Base, **domin-.**

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	domin-us	domin-ī
Voc.	domin-e	domin-ī
Acc.	domin-um	domin-ōs
Gen.	domin-ī	domin-ōrum
Dat.	domin-ō	domin-īs
Abl.	domin-ō	domin-īs

(2) Example : **magister** (m.), *master.*   Base, **magistr-.**

	Singular.	Plural.
N.V.	magister	magistr-ī
Acc.	magistr-um	magistr-ōs
Gen.	magistr-ī	magistr-ōrum
Dat.	magistr-ō	magistr-īs
Abl.	magistr-ō	magistr-īs

Obs.—The vocative singular has the same form as the nominative. In the other cases e is dropped before **r**.

A few substantives, however, retain e before r throughout. Example : **puer** (m.), *boy.* Base, **puer-.**

	Singular.	Plural.		So too, **vir** (m.), *man.*	
				Singular.	Plural.
N.V.	puer	puer-ī			
Acc.	puer-um	puer-ōs	*N.V.*	vir	virī
Gen.	puer-ī	puer-ōrum	*Acc.*	virum	virōs
Dat.	puer-ō	puer-īs	*Gen.*	virī	virōrum
Abl.	puer-ō	puer-īs	*D.Abl.*	virō	virīs

(3) Example : **regnum** (n.), *kingdom.*   Base, **regn-.**

	Singular	Plural.
N. V. A.	regn-um	regn-a
Gen.	regn-ī	regn-ōrum
Dat.	regn-ō	regn-īs
Abl.	regn-ō	regn-īs

LESSON 8.

Learn the declension of **magister** and **puer** (p. 13).

31. Substantives of the second declension in -er are *nearly all* declined like **magister**, *i.e.* the **e** is dropped before the **r** in all cases except the nominative and vocative singular. Like **puer** are declined **socer**, *father-in-law*, **gener**, *son-in-law*, and **līberī** (plural only), *children*; also **vir**, *man*.

32. Learn Vocabulary 8 (below), and decline **ager, aper, faber, liber** like **magister**, and **gener, socer, vir**, like **puer**. The terminations must be added to the base, not to the nominative singular : the base is found by cutting off the termination (ī) of the genitive singular, which is given in the vocabulary after the nominative of each word.

33. RULE.—In Latin a verb common to two clauses of the same sentence is usually expressed in the second clause only, and the conjunction (meaning *and* or *but*) is frequently omitted in such sentences.

puellae rosās, puerī equōs amant   *girls like roses, and boys like horses*

Obs.—**Puellae rosās amant et puerī equōs amant** would be very awkward Latin.

VOCABULARY 8.

ager, agr-ī, *m.* (agriculture), *field*.
aper, apr-ī, *m.*, *wild boar*.
et, conj., *and*.
faber, fabr-ī, *m.* (fabric), *carpenter*
Gall-us, -ī, *m.*, *a Gaul*.
gener, gener-ī, *m.*, *son-in-law*.
liber, libr-ī, *m.* (library), *book*.
līber-ī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, *children*.

magister, magistr-ī, *m.* (magistrate), *master*.
minister, ministr-ī, *m.*, *servant*.
puer, puer-ī, *m.* (puerile), *boy*.
-que, conj., *and*.
semper, adverb, *always*.
socer, socer-ī, *m.*, *father-in-law*.
vir, vir-ī, *m.* (virile), *man*.

Obs.— -**que** is added to the second of the two words which it connects ; *e.g.* **ministrī servīque,** *servants and slaves*. For the purpose of accentuation (§ 4) -**que** forms part of the word to which it is appended ; *e.g.* **servī′que.** -**que** connects more closely than **et.**

LESSON 9.

Learn the declension of **regnum** (p. 13), and revise the conjugations and declensions in Lesson 1—8, viz. the conjugation of **amō** (p. 4) and **sum** (p. 11) and the declension of **porta** (p. 7), **dominus, magister,** and **puer** (p. 13).

34. Learn Vocabulary 9 (below), and decline like **regnum** any five substantives ending in **-um.** This may be done by cutting off the **-um** and replacing it by **-ī, -ō,** etc., *e.g.* **proeli-um, proeli-ī, proeli-ō.**

35. The vocative and accusative of all neuter substantives are the same in form as the nominative, both in the singular and in the plural. In the nominative, vocative, and accusative plural neuter substantives of any declension end in **-a.**

VOCABULARY 9.

aedific-ō, 1st conjugation (edifice), *I build.*
aqu-a, -ae, *f.* (aquatic), *water.*
argent-um, -ī, *n.*, *silver.*
aur-um, -ī, *n.* (aureole), *gold.*
bell-um, -ī, *n.* (bellicose), *war.*
cael-um, -ī, *n.* (celestial), *heaven.*
dēdic-ō, 1st conjugation, *I dedicate.*
de-us, -ī, *m.* (deity), *god.*
dōn-um, -ī, *n.* (donor), *gift.*
gaudi-um, -ī, n. (gaudy), *joy.*
initi-um, -ī, n. (initial), *beginning*
narr-ō, 1st conjugation, *I narrate, I relate.*
oppid-um, -ī, *n.*, *town.*
praemi-um, -ī, *n.*, *reward.*
proeli-um, -ī, *n.*, *battle.*
Rōmān-us, -ī, *m.*, *a Roman.*
saepe, adverb, *often.*
scūt-um, -ī, *n.*, *shield.*
spoli-ō, 1st conjugation (spoil), *I pillage.*
templ-um, -ī, *n.*, *temple.*
terr-a, -ae, *f.* (terrestrial), *earth.*
tract-ō, 1st conjugation (tractable), *I handle.*
venēn-um, -ī, *n.*, *poison, drug.*
vīn-um, -ī, n. (vine), *wine.*

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST CLASS.

36. This class consists of adjectives with nominative singular ending in the masculine in **-us or -er,** in the feminine in **-a,** and in the neuter in **-um.**

In the masculine and neuter these adjectives are declined like substantives of the second declension, and in the feminine like substantives of the first declension.

΅na, bonum, *good.* Base, bon-.
ʒra, nigrum, *black.* Base, nigr-.

	Singular.				Plural.	
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	bon-us	bon-a	bon-um	bon-ī	bon-ae	bon-a
Voc.	bon-e	bon-a	bon-um	bon-ī	bon-ae	bon-a
Acc.	bon-um	bon-am	bon-um	bon-ōs	bon-ās	bon-a
Gen.	bon-ī	bon-ae	bon-ī	bon-ōrum	bon-ārum	bon-ōrum
Dat.	bon-ō	bon-ae	bon-ō	bon-īs	bon-īs	bon-īs
Abl.	bon-ō	bon-ā	bon-ō	bon-īs	bon-īs	bon-īs

Obs.—In committing the above table to memory, the learner should repeat the form for each of the three genders in the nominative singular, then the three forms for the vocative singular, and so on for each case in the singular, and afterwards similarly for each case in the plural.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.V.	niger	nigr-a	nigr-um	nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-a
Acc.	nigr-um	nigr-am	nigr-um	nigr-ōs	nigr-ās	nigr-a
Gen.	nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ī	nigr-ōrum	nigr-ārum	nigr-ōrum
Dat.	nigr-ō	nigr-ae	nigr-ō	nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs
Abl.	nigr-ō	nigr-ā	nigr-ō	nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs

NOTE.—Some few adjectives of this class with nominative singular masculine in -er retain e before r in the base.

Example : **tener, tenera, tenerum,** *tender.* Base, tener-.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.V.	tener	tener-a	tener-um	tener-ī	tener-ae	tener-a
Acc.	tener-um	tener-am	tener-um	tener-ōs	tener-ās	tener-a
Gen.	tener-ī	tener-ae	tener-ī	tener-ōrum	tener-ārum	tener-ōrum
Dat.	tener-ō	tener-ae	tener-ō	tener-īs	tener-īs	tener-īs
Abl.	tener-ō	tener-ā	tener-ō	tener-īs	tener-īs	tener-īs

LESSON 10.

Learn the declension of **bonus** (p. 16), repeating forms for each gender separately, *i.e.* learn the columns downwards ; afterwards repeat the masculine, feminine, and neuter forms for each case together, thus—**bonus, bona, bonum, bone, bona, bonum.**

37. The form of a Latin adjective varies in accordance with the gender, number, and case of the substantive to which it refers. Thus we may write **timidus nauta,** *a timid sailor,* or **nauta est timidus,** *the sailor is timid* ; but if we wish to express in Latin *a timid girl* or *the girl is timid,* **timidus,** the masculine form of the adjective is inadmissible, and we must write **timida puella, puella est timida,** because the feminine substantive **puella** requires a feminine form of the adjective. The same holds good with regard to number and case : we say **timidī nautae,** *timid sailors,* **timide nauta** (vocative), *timid sailor !* in each instance changing the ending of the adjective in accordance with the gender, number, and case of the substantive to which it is applied.

Note.—Substantives denoting males are masculine and those denoting females are feminine. Substantives of the first declension (except those which denote males) are feminine ; in the second declension those ending in -um in the nominative singular are neuter, the rest (except some ending in -us) are masculine.

38. Rule.—An **adjective,** participle, or adjectival pronoun must be in the **same gender, number, and case as the substantive** to which it refers.

nauta malus poëtam doctum gladiō longō necāvit	*the wicked sailor slew the clever poet with a long sword.*
insula est magna	*the island is large*
poëtae verba stulta erant	*the poet's words were foolish*

Obs. 1.—This rule is known as the " second concord."

Obs. 2.—This rule applies whether the adjective is an attribute, as in the first example, or the completion of the predicate, as in the second example.

J. L. C.   2

NOTE.—A qualifying adjective used as an attribute usually follows the substantive to which it refers, but an adjective of quantity or number (*e.g.* **multus**) usually precedes.

39. The declension of **ager lātus** (m.), *a wide field*, is given in full as an illustration of the " second concord " :—

	Singular.			Plural.	
Nom.	ager	lātus		agrī	lātī
Voc.	ager	lāte		agrī	lātī
Acc.	agrum	lātum		agrōs	lātōs
Gen.	agrī	lātī		agrōrum	lātōrum
Dat.	agrō	lātō		agrīs	lātīs
Abl.	agrō	lātō		agrīs	lātis

40. RULE.—The **dative** is used with many Latin adjectives which correspond to English adjectives commonly followed by *to* or *for*.

puerī verba a v ō grāta erant	*the boy's words were pleasing to his grandfather*
gladiī longī b e l l ō sunt idōneī	*long swords are suitable for war*

Learn Vocabulary 10 (below), and decline throughout **nauta timidus** (together), **insula magna** (together), **grātum verbum** (together).

VOCABULARY 10.

amoen-us, -a, -um (amenity), *pleasant.*

bon-us, -a, -um (boon), *good.*

confirm-ō, 1st conjugation (confirm), *strengthen, cheer.*

doct-us, -a, -um (doctor), *learned, skilled.*

fact-um, -ī, *n.* (fact), *deed.*

grāt-us, -a, -um (grateful), *pleasing, welcome.*

long-us, -a, -um, *long.*

magn-us, -a, -um (magnify), *great, large.*

mal-us, -a, -um, *bad, wicked.*

mult-us, -a, -um (multiply), *much, many.*

noxi-us, -a, -um (noxious), *hurtful.*

perfid-us, -a, -um, *perfidious, treacherous.*

perīcul-um, -ī, *n., danger.*

splendid-us, -a, -um, *splendid.*

stult-us, -a, -um (stultify), *foolish.*

timid-us, -a, -um, *timid.*

verb-um, -ī, *n.* (verb), *word.*

viti-um, -ī, *n.* (vitiate), *vice.*

LESSON 11.

Learn the declension of **niger** and **tener** (p. 16), repeating each according to the directions given on p. 17 for **bonus**.

41. The following adjectives are declined like **tener** :

(1) Adjectives ending in -fer, denoting *bearing* (cp. ferō, *I bear*), or -ger, denoting *carrying* (cp. gerō, *I carry*) ; *e.g.* **frūgifer, frūgifera, frūgiferum,** *fruit-bearing* ; **armiger, armigera, armigerum,** *carrying arms.*

(2) **asper, aspera, asperum,** *rough.* **līber, lībera, līberum,** *free.*
lacer, lacera, lacerum, *torn.* **miser, misera, miserum,** *wretched.*

Rhyme :—Like **tener** compound words in -fer
Retain the e ; so those in -ger ;
Add **asper,** *rough,* and **lacer,** *torn.*
With **līber,** *free,* and **miser,** *lorn.*

42. The declension of **impiger,** *active,* qualifying **nauta,** *q sailor* (a masculine substantive), is here given in illustration of the second concord.

	Singular.			Plural.	
N.V.	nauta	impiger		nautae	impigrī
Acc.	nautam	impigrum		nautās	impigrōs
Gen.	nautae	impigrī		nautārum	impigrōrum
Dat.	nautae	impigrō		nautīs	impigrīs
Abl.	nautā	impigrō		nautīs	impigrīs

Learn Vocabulary 11 (below), and decline throughout (*a*) **puer aeger,** (*b*) **puella misera,** (*c*) **lilium pulchrum.**

VOCABULARY 11.

aeger, aegr-a, aegr-um, *sick, ill.*
agn-us, -ī, *m., lamb.*
alb-us, -a, -um (alb), *white.*
asper, asper-a, asper-um (asperity), *rough, harsh.*
de-a, -ae, *f.* (deity), *goddess.*
frīgid-us, -a, -um (frigid), *cold.*
immolō, 1st conjugation (immolate), *I sacrifice.*
līli-um, -ī, *n., lily.*
miser, miser-a, miser-um (miserable), *wretched, unhappy.*

niger, nigr-a, nigr-um (nigger), *black.*
ocul-us, -ī, *m.* (oculist), *eye.*
parv-us, -a, -um, *small, little.*
pulcher, pulchr-a, pulchr-um, *beautiful.*
ruber, rubr-a, rubr-um (rubric), *red.*
sacer, sacr-a, sacr-um, *sacred.*
tener, tener-a, tener-um, *tender, delicate.*
vast-ō, 1st conjugation, *I lay waste.*
vent-us, -ī, *m., wind.*

43.   PART OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

(PASSIVE VOICE).

MODEL : amō, *I love, I like.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

am-or,	*I am loved* or *am being loved*	am-āmur,	*we are loved* or *are being loved*
am-āris,	*thou art loved* or *art being loved*	am-āminī,	*ye are loved* or *are being loved*
am-ātur,	*he is loved* or *is being loved*	am-antur,	*they are loved* or *are being loved*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

am-ābar,	*I was being loved*	am-ābāmur,	*we were being loved*
am-ābāris or am-ābāre,}	*thou wast being loved*	am-ābāminī,	*ye were being loved*
am-ābātur,	*he was being loved*	am-ābantur,	*they were lov*

FUTURE TENSE.

am-ābor,	*I shall be loved*	am-ābimur,	*we shall be loved*
am-āberis or am-ābere,	*thou wilt be loved*	am-ābiminī,	*ye will be loved*
am-ābitur,	*he will be loved*	am-ābuntur,	*they will be loved*

PERFECT TENSE.

am-āt-us*sum,	*I was loved* or *have been loved*	am-āt-ī*sumus,	*we were loved* or *have been loved*
am-āt-us* es,	*thou wast loved* or *hast been loved*	am-āt-ī*estis,	*ye were loved* or *have been loved*
am-āt-us* est,	*he was loved* or *has been loved*	am-āt-ī*sunt	*they were loved* or *have been loved*

* The forms given in the table are masculine, and are to be used only if the subject is masculine ; see § 50.

With a feminine singular subject use **amāta** instead of **amātus.**

,,	neuter	,,	,,	,,	**amātum**	,,	,,
,,	feminine plural	,,	,,	,,	**amātae**	,,	**amātī.**
,,	neuter	,,	,,	,,	**amāta**	,,	,,

LESSON 12.

Learn the present and imperfect indicative passive of **amō** from the table on p. 20.

44. In learning these two tenses notice that :—

(1) The passive terminations correspond to a certain extent with the active ; *e.g.* **am-at** (active), **am-āt-ur** (passive) ; **am-ābam** (active), **am-ābar** (passive).

(2) In the passive the terminations of the imperfect indicative are (except in the first person singular) the same as those of the present preceded by **-āb-**.

45. RULE.—The **agent**, *i.e.* the **person by whom** an action is performed, is expressed by the ablative preceded by the preposition **ā** or **ab**.

aprī ab agricolīs necantur	*wild boars are slain by the farmers*
aprī hastīs ā nautīs necā-bantur	*wild boars were being slain with spears by the sailors*

Obs. 1.—The form **ā** is generally used before a consonant other than **h**, **ab** before **h** or a vowel.

Obs. 2.—The ablative of the agent (with **ā** or **ab**) answering the question *By whom ?* must be carefully distinguished from the ablative of the instrument (without a preposition) answering the question *Wherewith ?* (§ 24).

46. RULE.—The masculine and neuter of adjectives are often used in a general sense without a substantive, if the meaning is clear. This usage is common in the plural ; it is not found in the nominative singular masculine.

bonī laudantur	*good men are praised*
multa dēsīderāmus	*we feel the want of many things.*

Learn Vocabulary 12 (p. 22), and conjugate throughout the present indicative passive of **honōrō**, and the imperfect indicative passive of **dēsīderō**.

VOCABULARY 12.

castīg-ō, *I chastise.*
cib-us, -ī, *m., food.*
dēfatīg-ō, *I fatigue.*
dēsīder-ō, *I desire, I long for.*
dīviti-ae, -ārum, *f.pl., riches.*

honōr -ō, *I honour.*
Marc-us, -ī, *m., Marcus* (a Roman name).
recre-ō (recreation), *I refresh.*
somn-us, -ī, *m.* (somnolent), *sleep*

All the above verbs belong to the first conjugation.

LESSON 13.

Learn the **future** and **perfect indicative passive** of **amō** (p. 20).

47. In learning the future indicative passive compare the terminations with those of the future indicative active (p. 4).

48. In the perfect indicative passive **amātus** is the perfect participle passive and means *having been loved.* It is declined like **bonus** (p. 16), and varies according to the number and gender of the subject, *e.g.* in addressing a man say **amātus es,** in addressing a woman **amāta es** ; so too *the towns have been pillaged* = **oppida spōliāta sunt.**

Learn Vocabulary 13 (below), and conjugate throughout the future indicative passive of **castīgō,** and the perfect indicative passive of **honōrō.**

VOCABULARY 13.

amīciti-a, -ae, *f., friendship.*
benevolenti-a, -ae, *f.* (benevolence), *good-will.*
incit-ō, -āre (incite), *drive forwards, excite.*
lacrim-a, -ae, *f., tear.*

numquam, *never.*
perīt-us, -a, -um, *skilful.*
rustic-us, -a, -um (rustic), *country* (*adj.*).
urbān-us, -a -um, (suburban), *city, town* (*adj.*).

The insertion of the infinitive termination after a verb in the vocabulary indicates to which conjugation the verb belongs ; e.g. -āre signifies " first conjugation."

LESSON 14.

THIRD (OR I AND CONSONANT) DECLENSION.

49. Substantives of this declension fall into two classes :—

  (1) those which have genitive plural ending in -ium
     (I-substantives),
  (2) those which have genitive plural ending in -um
     preceded by a consonant (consonant-substantives).

50. The endings in this declension also vary according as the substantive is (a) masculine or feminine, or (b) neuter.

51. On looking out a substantive of the third declension in a vocabulary or dictionary, the student will find (1) the nominative singular, (2) the genitive singular (whence, by taking off the suffix -is, the base may be ascertained) ; (3) the gender. In order to decline the word fully it is necessary also to know whether it is an I-substantive or a consonant-substantive, or (in other words) whether the genitive plural ends in -ium or in -um.

52. This last point may be decided thus in the case of **masculine and feminine** words :—
  parisyllabic substantives (*i.e.* those in which the number of syllables in the nominative singular and genitive singular respectively is equal), **and substantives with base ending in two consonants**, are I-substantives (genitive plural -ium) ;
  imparisyllabic substantives (*i.e.* those in which the number of syllables in the nominative singular and genitive singular respectively is unequal) **with base ending in a single consonant** are **consonant-substantives** (genitive plural -um).

53. Of **neuters** of the third declension those with **bases ending in -āl-, -īl-,** or **-ār-** are I-substantives ; the rest are consonant-substantives.

Learn the declensions on p. 26.
Learn Vocabulary 14 (p. 24).

VOCABULARY 14.

abund-ō, -āre, *abound.*

castr-a, -ōrum, *n.pl., camp.*

cīv-is, -is, *c.* (civic), *citizen.*

clād-ēs, -is, *f., disaster.*

class-is, -is, *f., fleet.*

coll-is, -is, *m., hill.*

compar-ō, -āre, *get together, prepare.*

conserv-ō, -āre (conservatory), *preserve.*

corōn-a, -ae, *f.* (crown), *garland.*

firm-ō, -āre (firm), *strengthen.*

host-is, -is, *c.* (hostile), *enemy, foe.*

nāv-is, -is, *f.* (naval), *ship.*

Neptūn-us, -ī, *m., Neptune* (god of the sea).

nūb-ēs, -is, *f., cloud.*

nunti-ō, -āre (nuncio), *announce.*

orn-ō, -āre, *adorn.*

prōr-a, -ae, *f., prow.*

serv-ō, -āre, *observe.*

spect-ō, -āre (spectacle), *behold, look at, see.*

turr-is, -is, *f.* (turret), *tower.*

vall-is, is, *f., valley.*

vest-is, -is, *f.* (vest), *garment*

LESSON 15.

Learn the declension of **dens** and **imber** (p. 27). Decline throughout **nox** and **urbs**; also in the singular only **linter**.
Learn Vocabulary 15 (p. 25).

54. In the third declension the base (*i.e.* the invariable part of the word, to which endings are added) is seldom ascertainable from the form of the nominative singular, and nothing but practice will surmount the difficulty. It is therefore necessary always to learn the genitive singular as well as the nominative singular of substantives of this declension.

55. RULE.—When *place where* is expressed by the name of a town an old case called the **locative** is employed, or (if no distinctive form of the locative exists) the ablative is used instead.

The following have distinctive locative forms :—

Town-names of the 1st declension singular (termination **ae**) ;

          ,,   2nd   ,,   ,,   (,,   **ī**) ;

A few town-names of the 3rd   .,   (,,   **ī**).

Examples :—

1st declension singular :	**Rōma,** *Rome* ;	**Rōmae,** *at Rome.*
,, ,, plural :	**Athēnae,** *Athens* ;	**Athēnīs,** *at Athens.*
2nd ,, singular :	**Ephesus,** *Ephesus* ;	**Ephesī,** *at Ephesus.*
,, ,, plural :	**Gabiī,** *Gabii* ;	**Gabiīs,** *at Gabii.*

3rd decl.	singular :	**Praeneste**, *Praeneste* ;	**Praenestī**, *at Praeneste*.
,, ,,	,,	**Carthāgō**, *Carthage* ;	**Carthāginī**, *at Carthage*.
,, ,,	plural :	**Trallēs**, *Tralles* ;	**Trallibus**, *at Tralles*.

NOTE.—The above rule applies also to the name of any island small enough to be regarded as one place. With words other than names of towns and small islands a preposition is required ; e.g. *in the garden* = **in hortō** ; *in Gaul* = **in Galliā**.

VOCABULARY 15.

Athēn-ae, -ārum, *f.pl.*, *Athens*.
Corinth-us, -ī, *f.*, *Corinth*.
dens, dent-is, *m.* (dentist), *tooth*.
ēduc-ō, -āre, *educate*.
fons, font-is, *m.* (fount), *fountain*.
Gabi-ī, -ōrum, *m.pl.*, *Gabii* (a town).
Gād-ēs, -ium, *f.pl.*,*Gades* (Cadiz).
glans, gland-is, *f.* (gland), *acorn*.

incol-a, -ae, *m.*, *inhabitant*.
mons, mont-is, *m.* (mount), *mountain*.
pons, pont-is, *m.* (pontoon), *bridge*.
Rōmul-us, -ī, *m.*, *Romulus*.
Tarent-um, -ī, *n.*, *Tarentum*.
urbs, urb-is, *f.* (urban), *city*.
vor-ō, -āre (voracious), *devour*.
vulp-ēs, -is, *f.*, *fox*.

LESSON 16.

Learn the declension of **cubīle** and **animal** (p. 27). Decline throughout **sedīle** and **calcar** ; also in the singular only **mare** and in the plural only **rēte**.

Learn Vocabulary 16 (below).

56. There are some exceptions to the rule given in § 52 to the effect that imparisyllabic words with base ending in a single consonant are consonant-substantives ; the most important are—

> **mās** (base mar-), *m.*, *male*, genitive plural **marium**.
> **nix** (,, niv-), *f.*, *snow*, ,, **nivium**.
> **vis** (,, vīr-), *f.*, *force*, ,, **vīrium**.

Vis has in the singular acc. **vim**, abl. **vī**, and no gen. or dat.

VOCABULARY 16.

acūt-us, -a, -um (acute), *sharp*.
animal, animāl-is, *n.*, *animal*.
calcar, calcār-is, *n.*, *spur*.
cubīl-e, -is, *n.* (cubicle), *bed, lair*.
fess-us, -a, -um, *tired, weary*.
mar-e, -is, *n.* (marine), *sea*.

n-ō, -āre (natation), *swim*.
rēt-e -is, *n.* (reticule), *net*.
sedīl-e, -is, *n.*, *seat*.
vectīgal, vectīgāl-is, *n.*, *tax, tribute*.
violenti-a, -ae, *f.*, *violence*.

THIRD DECLENSION : I-SUBSTANTIVES.

Masculine and Feminine.

57. First Example : **nūbēs** (*f.*), *cloud.*   Base, **nūb-**.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. **nūb-ēs**	**nūb-ēs**
Acc. **nūb-em**	**nūb-ēs** or **-īs**
Gen. **nūb-is**	**nūb-ium**
Dat. **nūb-ī**	**nūb-ibus**
Abl. **nūb-e**	**nūb-ibus**

Decline also :—

caedēs, *f., slaughter.*
clādēs, *f., disaster.*
vulpēs, *f., fox.*

Second Example : **hostis** (*c.*), *enemy.*   Base, **host-**.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. **host-is**	**host-ēs**
Acc. **host-em**	**host-ēs** or **-īs**
Gen. **host-is**	**host-ium**
Dat. **host-ī**	**host-ibus**
Abl. **host-e**	**host-ibus**

Decline also :—

auris, *f., ear.*
collis, *m., hill.*
crīnis, *m., hair.*
ovis, *f., sheep.*
piscis, *m., fish.*
vallis, *f., valley.*

Obs.—The accusative plural of masculine and feminine I-substantives is generally printed with the ending **-ēs**, but the older and more correct ending **-īs** is frequently used in editions of the poets.

58. Of the I-substantives ending in **-is** in the nominative singular, a few end in **-im** in the accusative singular and in **-ī** in the ablative singular.   In some words these terminations are the only forms, in others usage varies.

Example : **clāvis** (*f.*), *key.*   Base, **clāv-**.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. **clāv-is**	**clāv-ēs**
Acc. **clāv-em** or **-im**	**clāv-ēs** or **-īs**	
Gen. **clāv-is**	**clāv-ium**
Dat. **clāv-i**	**clāv-ibus**
Abl. **clāv-e** or **-ī**	**clāv-ibus**

Decline also :—

messis, *f., harvest.*
nāvis, *f., ship.*
puppis, *f., stern.*
turris, *f., tower.*

Note.—**Sitis,** *f., thirst,* and **tussis,** *f., cough,* always have acc. sing. ending in **-im** and abl. sing. ending in **-ī**; **avis,** *f., bird,* **cīvis,** *c., citizen,* and **ignis,** *m., fire,* have abl. sing. ending in either **-e** or **-ī**.

Rhyme.—avis, cīvis, ignis, give
            either form to ablative.
            sitis, tussis both maintain
            im and ī in cases twain.
            messis, turris, puppis, nāvis
            all " turn either way " like clāvis.

THIRD DECLENSION : I-SUBSTANTIVES.
MASCULINE AND FEMININE (*continued*).

59. Here belong all imparisyllabic substantives with base ending in two consonants ; **t** or **d** at the end of the base is dropped before the **-s** of the nominative singular.

Example : **dens** (*m.*), *tooth.* Base, **den·**

Singular.	Plural.		Decline a		
N.V. **den-s**	**dent-ēs**		**ars**	(base art-), *f., art.*
Acc. **dent-em**	**dent-ēs-** or **-īs**		**arx**	(,, arc-), *f., citadel.*
Gen. **dent-is**	**dent-ium**		**mens**	(,, ment-), *f., mind.*
Dat. **dent-ī**	**dent-ibus**		**nox**	(,, noct-), *f., night.*
Abl. **dent-e**	**dent-ibus**		**sors**	(,, sort-), *f., lot.*
			urbs	(,, urb-), *f., city.*

60. A few **I**-substantives end in **-er** in the nominative singular.

Example : **imber** (*m.*), *shower.* Base, **imbr-**.

Singular.	Plural.	
N.V. **imber**	**imbr-ēs**	Decline also :—
Acc. **imbr-em**	**imbr-ēs** or **-īs**	
Gen. **imbr-is**	**imbr-ium**	**linter,** *f., boat.*
Dat. **imbr-ī**	**imbr-ibus**	
Abl. **imbr-e** or **-ī**	**imbr-ibus**	

NEUTER.

61. Of neuter **I**-substantives some retain **-e** in the nominative singular ; others with base ending in **āl** or **ār** drop **e** and shorten the preceding vowel.

First Example : **cubīle** (*n.*), *bed.* Base, **cubīl-**.

Singular.	Plural.	Decline also :—
N.V.A. **cubīl-e cubīl-ia**		**mare** (genitive plural, **marum**), *sea.*
Gen. **cubīl-is cubīl-ium**		**rēte** (ablative singular, **rēte**), *net.*
D. Abl. **cubīl-ī cubīl-ibus**		**sedīle,** *seat.*

Second Example : **animal** (*n.*), *animal.* Base, **animāl-**.

Singular.	Plural.	Decline also :—
N.V.A. **animal animāl-ia**		
Gen. **animāl-is animāl-ium**		**calcar** (base **calcār-**), *spur.*
D. Abl. **animāl-ī animāl-ibus**		**vectīgal** (base **vectīgāl-**), *tax.*

THIRD DECLENSION : CONSONANT-SUBSTANTIVES.

Masculine and Feminine.

62. In the first three examples the nominative singular is formed with the termination **s** ; in the last four no termination is in the nominative singular added to the base.

First Example : **princeps** (*c.*), *chief.* Base, **princip-.**
Base ending in **p, b,** or **m.**

	Singular.	Plural.
N.V.	princep-s	princip-ēs
Acc.	princip-em	princip-ēs
Gen.	princip-is	princip-um
Dat.	princip-ī	princip-ibus
Abl.	princip-e	princip-ibus

Decline also :—

hiems (base hiem-), *f., winter.*
trabs (,, trab-), *f., beam.*

Obs.—Often the increase in the number of syllables is accompanied by a change of vowel (e to i).

Second Example : **mīles** (*m.*), *soldier.* Base, **mīlit-.**
Base ending in **t** or **d.**

Decline also :—

	Singular.	Plural.
N.V.	mīle-s	mīlit-ēs
Acc.	mīlit-em	mīlit-ēs
Gen.	mīlit-is	mīlit-um
Dat.	mīlit-ī	mīlit-ibus
Abl.	mīlit-e	mīlit-ibus

aetās   (base aetāt-), *f., age.*
custōs   (,, custōd-), *c., guardian.*
hērēs   (,, hērēd-), *c., heir.*
lapis   (,, lapid-), *m., stone.*
obses   (,, obsid-), *c., hostage.*
sacerdōs (,, sacerdōt-), *c., priest.*
virtūs   (,, virtūt-), *f., virtue.*

Obs.—Before the final **s** of the nominative singular the **t** or **d** with which the base ends is dropped.

Third Example : **lex** (*f.*), *law.* Base, **lēg-.** Base ending in **c** or **g.**

Decline also :—

	Singular	Plural
N.V.	lex	lēg-ēs
Acc.	lēg-em	lēg-ēs
Gen.	lēg-is	lēg-um
Dat.	lēg-ī	lēg-ibus
Abl.	lēg-e	lēg-ibus

calix (base calic-), *m., cup.*
crux   (cruc-), *f., cross.*
iūdex (iūdic-), *c., judge.*
lux   (lūc-), *f., light.*
pax   (pāc-), *f., peace.*
rādix (rādic-), *f., root.*
vox   (vōc-), *f., voice.*

Obs.—For **cs** or **gs** Latin always has **x.**

THIRD DECLENSION : CONSONANT-SUBSTANTIVES.

Masculine and Feminine (continued).

Fourth Example : leō (*m.*), *lion.* Base, **leōn-.** Base ending in **n.**

In most masculine and feminine substantives with bases ending in **n**, the **n** is dropped in the nominative singular and the preceding vowel (if not an **o**) is changed to **o.**

	Singular.	Plural.		Declin
N.V.	leō	leōn-ēs		cardō (base **cardin-**), *m., hinge*
Acc.	leōn-em	leōn-ēs		flāmen (**flāmin-**), *m., priest.*
Gen.	leōn-is	leōn-um		ōrātiō (**ōrātiōn-**), *f., speech.*
Dat.	leōn-ī	leōn-ibus		ordō (**ordin-**), *m., row.*
Abl.	leōn-e	leōn-ibus		sanguis (**sanguin-**), *m., blood.*
				virgō (**virgin-**), *f., virgin.*

Fifth Example : flōs (*m.*), *flower.* Base, **flōr-.** (In bases which originally ended in **s** the **s** becomes **r** between two vowels.) Base ending in **r** (original **s**).

	Singular.	Plural.		Decline also :—
N.V.	flōs	flōr-ēs		arbor (base **arbor-**), *f., tree.*
Acc.	flōr-em	flōr-ēs		calor (,, **calōr-**), *m., heat.*
Gen.	flōr-is	flōr-um		cinis (,, **ciner-**), *m., ashes.*
Dat.	flōr-ī	flōr-ibus		honor (,, **honōr-**), *m., honour.*
Abl.	flōr-e	flōr-ibus		pudor (,, **pudōr-**), *m., shame.*
				rōs (,, **rōr-**), *m., dew.*
				tellūs (,, **tellūr-**), *f., earth.*

Sixth Example : anser (*m.*), *gander.* Base, **anser-.** Base ending in **l** or **r.**

	Singular.	Plural.		Decline also :—
N.V.	anser	anser-ēs		fūr (base **fūr-**), *c., thief.*
Acc.	anser-em	anser-ēs		imperātor (base **imperātōr-**), *m., commander.*
Gen.	anser-is	anser-um		mulier (base **mulier-**), *f., woman.*
Dat.	anser-ī	anser-ibus		sōl (base **sōl-**), *m., sun.*
Abl.	anser-e	anser-ibus		vultur (base **vultur-**), *m., vulture.*

THIRD DECLENSION : CONSONANT-SUBSTANTIVES.

Masculine and Feminine (continued).

Seventh Example : **pater** (*m.*), *father*. Base, **patr-** (see § 65).

Pater, *father,* **māter,** *mother,* **frāter,** *brother,* have **e** before **r** in the nominative and vocative singular only.

	Singular.	Plural.	
N.V.	pater	patr-ēs	Decline also :—
Acc.	patr-em	patr-ēs	
Gen.	patr-is	patr-um	frāter (base frātr-), *m., brother.*
Dat.	patr-ī	patr-ibus	māter (,, mātr-), *f., mother.*
Abl.	patr-e	patr-ibus	

Neuter.

63. First Example : **nōmen** (*n.*), *name.* Base, **nōmin-**. Base ending in **n, l,** or **r.**

	Singular.	Plural.	Decline also :—
N.V.A.	nōmen	nōmin-a	flūmen (base flūmin-), *river.*
Gen.	nōmin-is	nōmin-um	fulgur (,, fulgur-), *lightning*
Dat.	nōmin-ī	nōmin-ibus	līmen (,, līmin-), *threshold.*
Abl.	nōmin-e	nōmin-ibus	lūmen (,, lūmin-), *light.*
			sēmen (,, sēmin-), *seed.*

Second Example (with vowel change) : **opus** (*n.*), *work.* Base, **oper-.** Base ending in **n, l,** or **r.**

Here the base originally ended in **s,** which between two vowels regularly becomes **r.**

	Singular.	Plural.	Decline also :—
			corpus (base corpor-), *body.*
N.V.A.	opus	oper-a	crūs (,, crūr-), *leg.*
Gen.	oper-is	oper-um	decus (,, decor-), *ornament.*
Dat.	oper-ī	oper-ibus	genus (,, gener-), *race, kind.*
Abl.	oper-e	oper-ibus	iūs (,, iūr-), *right, law.*
			latus (,, later-), *side.*
			ōs (,, ōr-), *mouth.*
			pectus (,, pector-), *breast.*

The following are similarly declined, though their bases do not end in **n, l,** or **r** :—

caput (base **capit-**), *n., head.* | **cor** (base **cord-**), *n., heart.*
lac (base **lact-**), *n., milk.*

LESSON 17.

Learn the declension of **princeps** and **miles** (p. 28).
Decline throughout **hiems, trabs, custōs, hērēs virtūs.**
Learn Vocabulary 17 (below).

64. RULE.—The time *when* an action is performed is
expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Arabēs campōs h i e m e et aestāte peragrant	*the Arabs wander about the plains in winter and summer*

VOCABULARY 17.

aestās, aestāt-is, *f., summer.*
cīvitās, cīvitāt-is, *f.* (city), *state.*
colloc-ō, -āre (collocation), *place, put.*
Crass-us, -ī, *m., Crassus* (a Roman general).
eques, equit-is, *m.* (equestrian), *horse-soldier,* (pl.) *cavalry.*
hībern-a,-ōrum,*n.pl.* (hibernate), *winter quarters.*
hiems, hiem-is, *f., winter.*
mīles, mīlit-is, *m.* (military), *soldier.*
obtemper-ō, -āre (with dative), *obey.*
palūs, palūd-is, *f., marsh.*

pedes, pedit-is, *m.* (pedestrian), *foot-soldier,* (pl.) *infantry.*
peragr-ō, -āre, *wander about.*
praed-a, -ae, *f.* (predatory), *booty.*
princeps, princip-is, *c.* (principal), *chief.*
quass-ō, -āre, *shatter.*
rān-a, -ae, *f., frog.*
revoc-ō, -āre (revoke), *recall.*
sicc-us, -a, -um, *dry.*
tempestās, tempestāt-is, *f.* (tempest), *storm, weather.*
trabs, trab-is, *f., beam, timber.*
virtūs, virtūt-is, *f., valour, virtue.*

LESSON 18.

Learn the declension of **lex, leō, flōs, anser, pater** (pp. 28-30).

65. It is to be noted that **pater, māter, frāter,** owing to
the loss of the **e** before **r** in the base, break the rule that
parisyllabic masculines and feminines are I-substantives ;
the rule is also broken by a few other words, the most
common of which are—

canis	(base **can-**), *c., dog,*	genitive plural	**canum,**
iuvenis	(,, **iuven-**), *m., young man,*	,,	**iuvenum,**
senex	(,, **sen-**), *m., old man,*	,,	**senum,**
vātēs	(,, **vāt-**), *c., seer,*	,,	**vātum,**

all declined as consonant-substantives.

Rhyme (cp. § 51).—

> The genitive in **canis, fräter,**
> **Vätēs, senex, pater, mäter,**
> Ends in -um ; so **iuvenis.**
> But -ium ends **mās, nix,** and **vīs.**

Learn Vocabulary 18 (below).

VOCABULARY 18.

arbor, arbor-is, *f., tree.*
consul, consul-is, *m., consul* (a Roman magistrate).
dux, duc-is, *m.* (duke), *leader, general.*
flōs, flōr-is, *m.* (floral), *flower.*
grex, greg-is, *m.* (congregate), *flock.*
homō, homin-is, *c., m in, person.*
ignāvi-a, -ae, *f., cowardice.*
iūdex, iūdic-is, *m.* (judicial), *judge* (properly *juryman*).
leō, leōn-is, *m.* (leonine), *lion.*
lex, lēg-is, *f.* (legal), *law.*

mäter, mätr-is, *f.* (maternal), *mother.*
nīd-us, -ī, *m., nest.*
ōrātiō, ōrātiōn-is, *f., speech.*
ōrātor, ōrātōr-is, *m., orator.*
passer, passer-is, *m., sparrow.*
pastor, pastōr-is, *m.* (pastoral), *shepherd.*
pater, patr-is, *m.* (paternal), *father.*
pulchritūdō, pulchritūdin-is, *f., beauty.*
rām-us, -ī, *m.* (ramify), *branch.*
rex, rēg-is, *m.* (regal), *king.*
sermō, sermōn-is, *m.* (sermon), *discourse, conversation.*

LESSON 19.

Learn the declension of **nōmen** and **opus** (p. 30).   Decline throughout **fulgur, corpus, crūs** ; also in the plural only **caput, ōs.**

66. Os (base **oss-**), *n., bone,* is declined as a consonant substantive, but has genitive plural **ossium.**

Learn Vocabulary 19 (p. 33).

VOCABULARY 19.

cadăver, cadăver-is, *n.* (cadaverous), *dead body, corpse.*

caput, capit-is, *n.* (capital), *head.*

carmen, carmin-is, *n.*, *song, poem.*

celebr-ō, -āre, *celebrate.*

curv-us, -a, -um, *winding, curved.*

dēdecus, dēdecor-is, *n.*, *disgrace, infamy.*

excruci-ō, -āre (excruciate), *torment, distress.*

foedus, foeder-is, *n.* (federal), *treaty.*

frīgus, frīgor-is, *n.* (frigid), *cold.*

fulgur, fulgur-is, *n.*, *flash of lightning.*

iter, itiner-is, *n.* (itinerary), *march, journey.*

lītus, lītor-is, *n.* (litoral), *shore.*

onus, oner-is, *n.* (onerous), *burden.*

perturb-ō, -āre (perturb), *dismay, frighten.*

port-ō, -āre (portable), *carry.*

praeterit-us, -a, -um (preterite), *past.*

rūs, rūr-is, *n.* (rural), *country* (opposed to town).

scelus, sceler-is, *n.*, *crime.*

tempus, tempor-is, *n.* (temporary), *time.*

viol-ō, -āre, *violate.*

vulnus, vulner-is, *n.* (vulnerable), *wound.*

ADJECTIVES OF THE SECOND CLASS.

67. These adjectives fall into two main divisions :—

   (1) Adjectives with genitive plural in **-ium**, declined like **I**-substantives of the third declension ;

   (2) Adjectives with genitive plural in **-um**, declined like consonant-substantives of the third declension.

Obs.—Wherever in the following tables one form only is given for any case, it is used for all genders alike.

ADJECTIVES DECLINED LIKE I-SUBSTANTIVES.

68. This division consists of :—

   (*a*) Adjectives which have three forms in the nominative singular, one for each gender ;

   (*b*) Adjectives which have two forms in the nominative singular, one for the masculine and feminine, the other for the neuter ;

   (*c*) Adjectives having in the nominative singular one form which serves for all genders alike, and with base ending in a long syllable.

69. Examples : (a)   **ācer, ācris, ācre,** *sharp*.   Base, **ācr-**.
                         (b)   **tristis, triste,** *sad*.   ,,   **trist-**.
                         (c) {**fēlix,** *fortunate*.   ,,   **fēlic-**.
                              {**prūdens,** *discreet*.   ,,   **prūdent-**.

	Singular.			Plural.	
	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N.V.	ācer	ācr-is	ācr-e	ācr-ēs	ācr-ia
Acc.	ācr-em	ācr-em	ācr-e	ācr-ēs or īs	ācr-ia
Gen.		ācr-is		ācr-ium	
Dat.		ācr-ī		ācr-ibus	
Abl.		ācr-ī		ācr-ibus	

NOTE.—**Celer, celeris, celere,** *swift,* alone retains the **e** before r throughout ; it has genitive plural **celerum.**

	Singular.		Plural.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N.V.	trist-is	trist-e	trist-ēs	trist-ia
Acc.	trist-em	trist-e	trist-ēs or -īs	trist-ia
Gen.	trist-is		trist-ium	
Dat.	trist-ī		trist-ibus	
Abl.	trist-ī		trist-ibus	

	Singular.		Plural.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N.V.	fēlix		fēlic-ēs	fēlic-ia
Acc.	fēlic-em	fēlix	fēlic-ēs or īs	fēlic-ia
Gen.	fēlic-is		fēlic-ium	
Dat.	fēlic-ī		fēlic-ibus	
Abl.	fēlic-ī or -e		fēlic-ibus	

	Singular.		Plural.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N.V.	prūdens		prūdent-ēs	prūdent-ia
Acc.	prūdent-em	prūdens	prūdent-ēs or -īs	prūdent-ia
Gen.	prūdent-is		prūdent-ium	
Dat.	prūdent-ī		prūdent-ibus	
Abl.	prūdent-ī or -e		prūdent-ibus	

ADJECTIVES DECLINED LIKE CONSONANT-SUBSTANTIVES.

70. This division consists of :—
-   (*a*) Adjectives of the comparative degree ;
-   (*b*) Adjectives having in the nominative singular one form for all genders alike, and with base ending in a short syllable.

71. Examples (*a*) longior, longius, *longer* (§ 84).   Base, **longior-**.
      (*b*) **pauper,** *poor.*   ,, **pauper-.**

	Singular.		Plural.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N.V.	longior	longius	longiōrēs	longiōr-a
Acc.	longiōr-em	longius	longiōrēs	longiōr-a
Gen.	longiōr-is		longiōr-um	
Dat.	longiōr-ī		longiōr-ibus	
Abl.	longiōr-e		longiōr-ibus	

	Singular.		Plural.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N.V.	pauper		pauper-ēs	none
Acc.	pauper-em	pauper	pauper-ēs	none
Gen.	pauper-is		pauper-um	
Dat.	pauper-ī		pauper-ibus	
Abl.	pauper-e		pauper-ibus	

LESSON 20.

Learn §§ 67, 68, and the declension of **ācer** and **tristis** (p. 34).

72. EXAMPLE OF A SUBSTANTIVE OF THE FIRST DECLENSION DECLINED WITH AN ADJECTIVE OF THE SECOND CLASS.

Sagitta (*f.*), *arrow*, like **porta** (§ 13) ; **celer, celeris, celere,** *swift*, like **ācer,** but retaining **e** before **r** throughout.

	Singular.		Plural.
N.V.	sagitta	celeris	sagittae celerēs
Acc.	sagittam	celerem	sagittās celerēs (or celerīs)
Gen.	sagittae	celeris	sagittārum celerium
Dat.	sagittae	celerī	sagittīs celeribus
Abl.	sagittā	celerī	sagittīs celeribus

Decline throughout according to the above model :—

> aurīga fortis, *brave charioteer.*
> omne certāmen, *every contest.*

Learn Vocabulary 20 (below).

VOCABULARY 20.

ācer, ācr-is, ācr-e (acrid), *keen, fierce, ardent.*

alacer- alacr-is, alacr-e (alacrity), *cheerful, energetic, active.*

aurīg-a, -ae, *m., charioteer.*

brev-is, -e, *brief, short.*

Carthāgō, Carthāgin-is, *f., Carthage* (a city of Africa).

celer, celer-is, celer-e (celerity), *swift.*

certāmen,certāmin-is, *n., contest.*

Cicerō, Cicerōn-is, *m., Cicero* (a Roman orator).

dolor, dolōr-is, *m.* (dolorous), *pain, grief.*

dulc-is, dulc-e (dulcet), *sweet.*

exanim-ō, -āre, *kill.*

fidēl-is -e (fidelity), *faithful.*

fort-is, -e (fortify), *brave.*

grav-is, -e (grave), *heavy, severe.*

herī, *adv., yesterday.*

hodiē, *adv., to-day.*

Horati-us, -ī, *m., Horace* (a Roman poet).

omn-is, -e (omnibus), *all, every* ; (pl.) *everyone, everybody.*

plōr-ō, -āre (deplore), *bewail.*

sagitt-a, -ae, *f., arrow.*

trist-is, -e, *sad.*

ūtil-is, -e (utility), *useful.*

Vēi-i, -ōrum, *m.pl., Veii* (an Italian town).

LESSON 21.

Learn the declension of **fēlix** and **prūdens** (p. 34).

73. RULE.—Verbs of *calling, thinking, considering,* etc., when used in the active voice, govern an accusative of the direct object, and may take another accusative as predicate to the first to complete their sense.

> Cicerōnem ēloquentem pu-   *we consider Cicero eloquent*
> tāmus

74. RULE.—The adjectives **dignus**, *worthy,* and **indignus**, *unworthy,* are constructed with the ablative case.

> puer p r a e m i ī s indignus est   *the boy is unworthy of rewards*

Learn Vocabulary 21 (below and decline together throughout **aurīga audax.**

VOCABULARY 21.

appell-ō, -āre (appeal), *call.*

audax, *gen.* audāc-is (audacious), bold.

Caesar, Caesar-is, *m., Caesar* (a celebrated Roman general).

catēn-a, -ae, *f.* (concatenation), *chain.*

consili-um, -ī, *n.* (counsel), *plan, counsel.*

cōpi-ae, -ārum, *f.pl.* (copious), *forces, troops.*

dign-us, -a, -um (dignity), *worthy.*

fēlix, *gen.* fēlīc-is (felicity), *happy, fortunate.*

fug-ō, -āre (fugitive), *put to flight.*

indign-us, -a, -um, *unworthy.*

infēlix, *gen.* infēlīc-is (infelicity), *unhappy, unfortunate.*

infidēl-is, -e (infidel), *unfaithful.*

ingens, *gen.* ingent-is, *immense.*

laus, laud-is, *f.* (laud), *praise.*

ōner-ō, āre (onerous), *load.*

praestans, praestant-is, *excellent.*

prūdens, *gen.* prūdent-is, *wise, prudent.*

put-ō, -āre, *think, consider.*

rapax, *gen.* rapāc-is, *rapacious, greedy.*

sapiens, *gen.* sapient-is (sapient), *wise, learned.*

turp-is, -e (turpitude), *base.*

LESSON 22.

Learn the declension of **longior** and **pauper** (p. 35).

75. RULE.—In comparisons **quam** means *than,* and constructed with the same case after it as before it.

virī fortiōrēs quam fēminae sunt	*men are stronger than women*
cūr Caesarem fēlīciōrem quam Pompēium putās ?	*why do you think Caesar more fortunate than Pompeius ?*
māiōra dōna nautīs quam mīlitibus dōnāte	*give greater gifts to sailors than to soldiers*

76. RULE.—Instead of **quam** followed by a substantive in the nominative or accusative, a substantive in the ablative may express that with which the comparison is made.

virī fēminīs fortiōrēs sunt	*men are stronger than women*
cūr Caesarem Pompēiō fēlīciōrem putās ?	*why do you think Caesar more fortunate than Pompeius ?*

77. Rule.—Many adjectives implying verbal action are constructed with a genitive ; such are **memor**, *mindful* ; **immemor**, *unmindful* ; **plēnus**, *full* ; **avidus**, *greedy*.

> **Gallia est plēna c ī v i u m Rō-**   *Gaul is full of Roman citizens.*
> **mānōrum**

Learn Vocabulary 22. Decline together throughout **carmen dulcius** ; also **melior causa** in the singular and **urbs inops** in the plural.

<center>VOCABULARY 22.</center>

arm-a, -ōrum, *n.pl., arms.*

clāmor, clāmōr-is, *m.* (clamour) shout.

cūr, *adv., why ?*

dīves, *gen.* dīvit-is, *rich.*

dulcior, *gen.* dulciōr-is (dulcet), *sweeter.*

fēlīcior, *gen.* fēlīciōr-is (felicity), *happier, more fortunate.*

immemor, *gen.* immemor-is, *unmindful.*

inops, *gen.* inop-is, *helpless.*

interdum, *adv., sometimes.*

lūn-a, -ae, *f.* (lunar), *moon.*

māior, *gen.* māiōr-is (major), *greater.*

Mars, Mart-is, *m.* (martial), *Mars* (the Roman god of war).

meli-or, *gen.* meliōr-is (ameliorate), *better.*

memor, *gen.* memor-is (memory), *mindful.*

min-or, *gen.* minōr-is (minor), *less, smaller.*

nihil, indeclinable, *n.* (annihilate), *nothing.*

pauper, *gen.* pauper-is (pauper), *poor.*

sōl, sōl-is, *m.* (solar), *sun.*

superstes, *gen.* superstit-is, *surviving.*

vigil, vigil-is, *vigilant, watchful.*

<center>## LESSON 23.</center>

<center>FOURTH (OR U) DECLENSION.</center>

78. This declension contains substantives of two classes :—

   (1) Masculine (and some feminine) words, with nominative singular ending in **-us** ;

   (2) Neuter words, with nominative singular ending in **-ū.**

(1) Example : **gradus** (*m.*), *step*.   Base, **grad-.**

	Singular.	Plural.
N.V.	**grad-us**	**grad-ūs**
Acc.	**grad-um**	**grad-ūs**
Gen.	**grad-ūs**	**grad-uum**
Dat.	**grad-uī**	**grad-ibus**
Abl.	**grad-ū**	**grad-ibus**

(2) Example : **genū** (*n.*),   *knee*.   Base, **gen-.**

	Singular.	Plural.
N.V.A.	**gen-ū**	**gen-ua**
Gen.	**gen-ūs**	**gen-uum**
Dat.	**gen-ū**	**gen-ibus**
Abl.	**gen-ū**	**gen-ibus**

Obs.—Some substantives, of which the commonest are **arcus** (*bow*), **artus** (*limb*), **lacus** (*lake*), have dative and ablative plural ending in -ubus (**arcubus, artubus, lacubus**) ; some others have either -ibus or -ubus in these cases.

Learn the declension of **gradus** and **genū** (above).

Learn Vocabulary 23, and decline together throughout **portus magnus** and **cornū longum.**

<div align="center">VOCABULARY 23.</div>

ac-us, -ūs, *f., needle.*
arc-us, -ūs, *m.* (arch), *bow.*
corn-ū, -ūs, *n., horn, wing* (of an army).
cum, *prep.* (with ablative), *accompanied by, with.*
curr-us, -ūs, *m., chariot.*
dexter, dextr-a, dextr-um (dexterous), *on the right hand, right.*
exercit-us, -ūs, *m., army.*
explōrātor, explōrātōr-is, *m.* (explore), *spy.*
fīn-ēs, -ium, *m.pl., territories.*
foli-um, -ī, *n.* (foliage), *leaf.*

fruct-us, -ūs, *m., fruit.*
gen-ū, -ūs, *n.* (genuflect), *knee.*
grad-us, -ūs, *m.* (grade), *step.*
intr-ō, -āre, *enter.*
man-us, -ūs, *f.* (manual), *hand.*
numer-ō, -āre (numeration), *count.*
par-ō, -āre, *prepare.*
port-us, -ūs, *m.* (port), *harbour.*
querc-us, -ūs, *f., oak.*
umbr-a, -ae, *f.* (umbrella), *shade.*
ūtilior, *gen.* **utiliōr-is** (utility), *more useful.*
valid-us, -a, -um, *strong.*
vīs-us, -ūs, *m.* (visual), *sight.*

LESSON 24.

FIFTH (OR E) DECLENSION.

79. Example : **diēs** (m. or f. in sing., m. in pl.), *day*.
Base, **di-**.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. **di-ēs**	**di-ēs**
Acc. **di-em**	**di-ēs**
Gen. **di-ēī**	**di-ērum**
Dat. **di-ēī**	**di-ēbus**
Abl. **di-ē**	**di-ēbus**

The substantives of this declension are all feminine, except **diēs**.

Obs. 1.—Most nouns of this declension have no plural.   Only **diēs** and **rēs** (f.), *thing*, have genitive, dative, and ablative plural.

Obs. 2.—If the last letter of the base is a consonant, the genitive and dative singular end in **eī** (not **ēī**) ; *e.g.* **fid-ēs** (*f.*), *faith*, has genitive and dative singular **fid-eī**.

80. RULE.—The time over which an action extends is put in the accusative case.

multōs d i ēs pugnābāmus   *we were fighting for many days*

Learn the declension of **diēs** (above).

Learn Vocabulary 24, and decline together throughout **parva rēs**.

VOCABULARY 24.

aci-ēs, -ēī, *f., line of battle.*
ann-us, -ī, *m.* (annual), *year.*
crās, *adv., to-morrow.*
di-ēs, -ēī, *m.* or (in sing.) *f., day*
faci-ēs, -ēī, *f., face.*
fid-ēs, -eī, *f.* (fidelity), *faith, loyalty, allegiance.*

plāniti-ēs, -ēī, *f., plain.*
remedi-um, -ī, *n., remedy.*
r-ēs, -eī, *f.* (real), *thing, affair.*
segniti-ēs, -ēī, *f., sloth, apathy.*
speci-ēs, -ēī, *f.* (specious), *pretence, semblance.*
sp-ēs, -eī, *f., hope.*

LESSON 25.

This Lesson may be omitted until after Lesson 76.

SOME IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

81. The following nine adjectives of the first class have genitive singular of all genders ending in -īus (sometimes -ius), and dative singular of all genders ending in ī.

> **sōlus, sōla, sōlum,** *alone.*
> **tōtus, tōta, tōtum,** *whole.*
> **ūnus, ūna, ūnum,** *one.*
> **ullus, ulla, ullum,** *any* (after a negative).
> **nullus, nulla, nullum,** *no, none.*
> **uter, utra, utrum,** *which (of the two) ?*
> **neuter, neutra, neutrum,** *neither.*
> **alter, altera, alterum,** *the one (of two), the other (of two), the second (of two).*
> **alius, alia, aliud,** *one (of several), another (of several).*

Example : **nullus, nulla, nullum,** *no, none.* Base, **null-**.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	null-us	null-a	null-um	null-ī	null-ae	null-a
Acc.	null-um	null-am	null-um	null-ōs	null-ās	null-a
Gen.	null-īus	null-īus	null-īus	null-ōrum	null-ārum	null-ōrum
Dat.	null-ī	null-ī	null-ī	null-īs	null-īs	null-īs
Abl.	null-ō	null-ā	null-ō	null-īs	null-īs	null-īs

Obs.—**Alius** has nominative and accusative singular neuter **aliud,** and genitive singular **alīus**; the latter is rarely found. (The dative singular is **aliī**.)

NOTE.1. The quantity of -i in the genitive singular ending is, as a rule, long, except in **alterius**, genitive singular of **alter**, and the compounds of **uter**, mentioned below.

NOTE.—2. **Uter** has the following compounds, in which the second part is indeclinable, while the former part is declined just as when not compounded :—

> **utercumque, utracumque, utrumcumque,** *whichever (of the two).*
> **uterlibet, utralibet, utrumlibet,** *which (of the two) you please.*
> **uterque, utraque, utrumque,** *each (of the two).*
> **utervīs, utravīs, utrumvīs,** *which (of the two) you will.*

82. The numeral adjectives **duo**, *two*, and **trēs**, *three*, are thus declined.

	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N.V.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
Acc.	duōs or duo	duās	duo	trēs or trīs	tria
Gen.	{ duōrum or duum	duārum or duum	duōrum or duum	trium	
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	

Like **duo** decline **ambō**, *both*.

83. IDIOMS.

alter labōrābat, alter cantābat	*one of the two was working, the other was singing*
alius labōrābat, alius cantābat	*one was working, another was singing*
alterī superābant, alterī superābantur	*one party was conquering, the other party were being conquered*
alius aliud indicābat	*one was pointing out one thing, another (was pointing out) another*
alius aliā viā ambulābat	*one was walking by one road, another (was walking) by another*

Learn Vocabulary 25, and decline **ūnus homō** (together) and **duo cīvēs** (together).

VOCABULARY 25.

captīv-us, -ī, *m.*, *captive*.
conspect-us, -ūs, *m.*, *sight, spectacle*.
cre-ō, -āre, *create*.
culp-a, -ae, *f.* (culpable), *blame*.
exspect-ō, -āre, *await*.
frūment-um, -ī, *n.*, *corn*.
hōr-a, -ae, *f.*, *hour*.
mors, mort-is, *f.* (mortal), *death*.

nāvis longa, *f.*, *battle-ship, man-of-war*.
nēmō, *acc.* **nēminem**, *dat.* **nēmini** (*gen.* and *abl.* supplied by **nullus**), *no one*.
redit-us, -ūs, *m.*, *return*.
suppedit-ō, -āre, *supply*.
vestīgi-um, -ī, *n.* (vestige), *foot-print, trace, track*.

LESSON 26.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

84. Adjectives have (where their meaning admits of it) in Latin, as in English, three degrees of comparison—positive, comparative, and superlative. These degrees are generally in Latin, as often in English, denoted by means of suffixes : *e.g.* **longus**, *long* ; **longior**, *longer* ; **longissimus**, *longest*.

There is, however, this difference between the two languages in the use of the degrees of comparison, that whereas in English a standard of comparison is always expressed or distinctly understood (*e.g.* " longer than this," " longest of all "), in Latin the comparative may denote that the quality exists to a considerable or to an excessive degree, the superlative that it exists to a high degree ; thus **longior** sometimes means *somewhat long* or *too long*, and **longissimus** often means *very long*.

85. GENERAL RULE FOR THE FORMATION OF THE COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE.

To the **base** of the positive add—

-**ior** to form the nom. sing. masc. of the comparative ;
-**issimus** ,,   ,,   ,,   ,,   superlative.

All comparative adjectives are declined like **longior** (§ 71), and all superlative adjectives are declined like **bonus** (§ 36).

EXAMPLES.

Positive. (Nom.Sing.Masc.)		Base.	Comparative.	Superlative.
longus	*long*	long-	long-ior	long-issimus
tristis	*sad*	trist-	trist-ior	trist-issimus
fēlix	*fortunate*	fēlīc-	fēlīc-ior	fēlīc-issimus
prūdens	*discreet*	prūdent-	prūdent-ior	prūdent-issimus

86. IDIOM.

An English attributive adjective which serves not to identify but to describe a person is represented in Latin by a phrase in apposition.

Cicerō, vir illustrissimus, Pater Patriae vocātus est	*the illustrious Cicero was called Father of his Country*
carmina Horātiī, poētae doctissimī, ab omnibus laudantur	*the Odes of the learned poet Horace are praised by all*

Obs. 1.—A substantive agrees in **case** with that to which it is in apposition. This is known as the **third concord**.

Obs. 2.—In Latin the superlative is often used (as above), where in English the positive is preferred.

Learn Vocabulary 26, and write down the other two degrees of comparison (nominative singular masculine) of **doctus, dulcior, gravissimus, gratior, ingentior, sapientissimus, splendidus, stultior, tristissimus, utilis.**

VOCABULARY 26.

advers-us -a, -um, *adverse.*
rēs adversae, *f.pl., adversity* (lit. *adverse affairs*).
altus, -a, -um (altitude), *high.*
crūdēl-is, -e, *cruel.*
ēloquens, *gen.* **ēloquent-is,** *eloquent.*
fāg-us, -ī, f., beech.
ferr-um, -ī, n., iron.

perniciōs-us, -a, -um, *pernicious dangerous.*
prosper-us, -a, -um, *prosperous.*
rēs prosperae, *f.pl., prosperity* (lit. *prosperous affairs*).
sagax, *gen.* **sagāc-is,** *sagacious, shrewd.*

LESSON 27.

This Lesson may be omitted until after Lesson **67.**

CLASSES OF EXCEPTIONS TO THE ABOVE RULE.

87. I. The superlative of adjectives with nominative singular masculine ending in **-er** is formed by adding **-rimus** to the nominative singular masculine. (The comparative is formed by adding **-ior** *to the base* according to the rule.)

EXAMPLES.

Positive. (Nom. Sing. Masc.)		Base.	Comparative.	Superlative.
pulcher	*beautiful*	pulchr-	pulchr-ior	pulcher-rimus
tener	*tender*	tener-	tener-ior	tener-rimus
pauper	*poor*	pauper-	pauper-ior	pauper-rimus
ăcer	*sharp*	ācr-	ācr-ior	ācer-rimus
celer	*swift*	celer-	celer-ior	celer-rimus

Note also—

vetus	*old*	veter-		veter-rimus

88. II. Adjectives ending in **-dicus, -ficus,** and **-volus** form their comparative and superlative as if their positive ended in **-dīcens** (base, **dīcent-** ; cp. **dīcō,** *I say*), **-ficens** (base, **ficent-** ; cp. **faciō,** *I make*), **-volens** (base, **volent-** ; cp. **volō,** *I will*).

EXAMPLES.

Positive.	Base from which Comp. and Superl. are formed.	Comparative.	Superlative.
maledicus *slanderous*	maledīcent-	maledīcent-ior	maledīcent-issimus
magnificus *magnificent*	magnificent-	magnificent-ior	magnificent-issimus
benevolus *benevolent*	benevolent-	benevolent-ior	benevolent-issimus

Note also—

egenus *needy*	egent-	egent-ior	egent-issimus
prōvidus *foreseeing*	prōvident-	prōvident-ior	prōvident-issimus

89. III. Adjectives with base ending in a vowel (other than **u** in the combination **gu** or **qu**) have no special forms for the comparative or superlative ; the comparative is expressed by **magis,** *more,* and the superlative by **maximē,** *most,* preceding the positive.

EXAMPLES.

Positive.		Base.	Comparative.	Superlative.
pius	*dutiful*	pi-	magis pius	maximē pius
arduus	*lofty*	ardu-	magis arduus	maximē arduus
But—				
pinguis	*fat*	pingu-	pingu-ior	pingu-issimus
antiquus	*ancient*	antīqu-	antīqu-ior	antīqu-issimus

Learn Vocabulary 27.

VOCABULARY 27.

antīqu-us, -a, -um (antique), *ancient.*
ardu-us, -a, -um (arduous), *lofty.*
benevol-us, -a, -um, *benevolent.*
cerv-us, -ī, *m., stag.*
dē, *prep.* (with abl.), *concerning.*
egēn-us, -a, -um, *needy.*
fābul-a, -ae, *f.* (fable), *story.*
fräter, frātr-is, *m.* (fraternal), *brother.*
Helvēti-a, -ae, *f., Switzerland.*

inimīciti-a, -ae, *f.* (inimical), *enmity, hostility.*
inter, *prep.* (with acc.), *between.*
magnific-us, -a, -um, *magnificent, distinguished.*
maledic-us, -a, -um, *slanderous.*
pingu-is, -e, *fat.*
pi-us, -a, -um, *dutiful.*
prōvidens, prōvident-is (provident), *foreseeing.*
vetus, *gen.* veter-is (veteran), *old.*

LESSON 28.

This Lesson may be omitted until after Lesson **67.**

ADJECTIVES IRREGULARLY COMPARED.

90. I. The following six adjectives form their superlative by adding **-limus** to the base.

Positive.		Base.	Comparative.	Superlative.
facilis	*easy*	facil-	facil-ior	facil-limus
difficilis	*difficult*	difficil-	difficil-ior	difficil-limus
similis	*like*	simil-	simil-ior	simil-limus
dissimilis	*unlike*	dissimil-	dissimil-ior	dissimil-limus
gracilis	*slender*	gracil-	gracil-ior	gracil-limus
humilis	*low*	humil-	humil-ior	humil-limus

Obs.—All other adjectives in **-ilis** form the superlative in the ordinary way ; *e.g.* **fragilis,** *brittle,* **fragilissimus.**

91. II. Three indeclinable adjectives are thus compared.

Positive.		Comparative.	Superlative.
frūgī	*of worth*	frūgālior	frūgālissimus
nēquam	*worthless*	nēquior	nēquissimus
satis	*sufficient*	satius (n.), *preferable*	———

92. III. The following adjectives have a comparative and superlative not formed from the positive.

Positive.		Comparative.	Superlative.
bonus	*good*	melior	optimus
malus	*bad*	pēior	pessimus
magnus	*great*	māior	maximus
parvus	*small*	minor	minimus
dīves	*rich*	dītior	dītissimus
multus	*much*	plūrēs (pl.)	plūrimus

NOTE.—**Plūrēs** is thus declined.

	M. and F.	N.
N.V.A.	plūrēs	plūra
G.	plūrium	
D.A.	plūribus	

Plūs, *gen.* **plūris,** *more,* is a neuter substantive; the dative and ablative are not in use.   **Plūs** is also used as an adverb.

93. RULE.—**Similis,** *like,* and **dissimilis,** *unlike,* are used with a genitive or dative of that which the person or thing they refer to is like or unlike.

nihil est **m o r t ī** tam simile   *nothing is so like death as sleep*
  quam somnus

NOTE.—Instead of **mortī** above **mortis** might stand.

Learn Vocabulary 28.

VOCABULARY 28.

adūlātiō, adūlātiōn-is, *f., flattery*
amor, amōr-is, *m., love.*
Catilīn-a, -ae, *m., Catilina* (a Roman noble who conspired against the state).
difficil-is, -e, *difficult.*
dissimil-is, -e (dissimilar), *unlike.*
gracil-is, -e, *slender.*

nēquam, indeclinable, *worthless.*
opt-ō, -āre (option), *wish for.*
plēn-us, -a, -um, *full.*
recit-ō, -āre, *recite, read aloud.*
senectūs, senectūt-is, *f., old age.*
simil-is, -e, (similar), *like.*
timor, timōr-is, *m.* (timorous), *fear.*

LESSON 29.

ADJECTIVES IRREGULARLY COMPARED (continued).

This Lesson may be omitted until after Lesson 67.

94. IV. The following adjectives have no positive degree.

(Cp. **iuvenis**, *young man*)	**iūnior**	*younger*	(**nātū minimus**)
	ōcior	*swifter*	**ōcissimus**
(Cp. **senex**, *old man*)	**senior**	*older*	(**nātū maximus**)

Obs.—**Nātū** is ablative, and is a substantive used only in that case and denoting *birth.* Hence **nātū minimus, nātū maximus**, mean respectively *least* and *greatest by birth.*

95. V. The following adjectives, derived from adverbs, are irregularly compared :—

Adverb.	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
citrā, *on this side*	———	**citerior**, *nearer, hither*	**citimus**
dē, *down*		**dēterior**, *worse*	**dēterrimus**
extrā, *outside*	(**exterus**)	**exterior**, *outer*	{ **extrēmus** { **extimus**
infrā, *below*	**inferus**, *lower*	**inferior**	**infimus** or **īmus**
intrā, *within*	———	**interior**, *inner*	**intimus**
post, *after*	(**posterus**)	**posterior**, *later*	{ **postrēmus**, *last* { **postumus**, *last-*
prae, *before*		**prior**, *former*	**prīmus** [*born*
prope, *near*		**propior**, *nearer*	**proximus**
suprā, *above*	**superus**, *upper*	**superior**, *higher, previous*	{ **suprēmus**, *highest, last* { **summus**, *highest*
ultrā, *beyond*	———	**ulterior**, *farther, remoter*	**ultimus**, *farthest, last, remotest*

NOTE.—**Exterus** and **posterus** are regularly declined throughout, all forms except the nominative singular masculine being in use.

96. RULE.—Some **adjectives,** instead of qualifying as a whole the substantives of which they are the attributes, often **specify certain parts** of the persons or things denoted by those substantives. The adjectives commonly so used are :—

prīmus, *first*	**medius**, *middle*	**extrēmus**, *last*
	infimus or } *lowest*	
summus, *highest*	**īmus**, }	**reliquus**, *remaining*

They are commonly rendered by English substantives, thus : **prīmum vēr**, *the beginning of spring* ; **media urbs**, *the middle of the city* ; **extrēma ōrātiō**, *the end of the speech* ; **summus mons**, *the top of the mountain* ; **infima āra**, *the lowest part of the altar* ; **reliqua praeda,** *the rest of the booty.*

Learn Vocabulary 29.

VOCABULARY 29.

ad, prep. (with acc.), *to, until.*
aetās, aetāt-is, *f., generation, age.*
bon-um, -ī, *n., good.*
Britanni-a, -ae, *f., Britain.*
Catō, Catōn-is, *m., Cato* (a celebrated Roman).
cottīdiē, adv., *daily.*

Hispāni-a, -ae, *f., Spain.*
mūr-us, -ī, *m.* (mural), *wall.*
oppugn-ō, -āre, *besiege.*
pars, part-is, *f., part.*
prōvinci-a, -ae, *f., province.*
sacerdōs, sacerdōt-is, *c., priest, priestess.*
vēr, vēr-is, *n.* (vernal), *spring.*

LESSON 30.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

97. The personal pronouns of the first and second persons, **ego** and **tū,** are substantival and of common gender. They are thus declined :—

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. **ego,** *I*	**nōs,** *we*
Acc. **mē**	**nōs**
Gen. **meī**	{ **nostrī** { **nostrum** (partitive*)
Dat. **mihī** or **mihi**	**nōbīs**
Abl. **mē**	**nōbīs**

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. **tū,** *thou or you*	**vōs,** *ye* or *you*
Acc. **tē**	**vōs**
Gen. **tuī**	{ **vestrī** { **vestrum** (partitive*)
Dat. **tibi** or **tibī**	**vōbīs**
Abl. **tē**	**vōbīs**

* *I.e.* dependent on a word implying *part, e.g.* **multī nostrum,** *many of us.*

98. There is in Latin no pronoun of the third person exactly corresponding to the English *he, she, it*; but its place can when necessary be supplied by one of the Demonstratives (Lesson 32).

Personal Pronouns—Reflexives.

99. The personal pronouns of the first and second person serve as reflexives; *e.g.* **mē culpō,** *I blame myself.*

For the third person reflexive there is a special form, viz. **sē,** *himself, herself, itself, themselves,* which is thus declined for both numbers and all genders :—

<div align="center">

Singular and Plural.

Acc.	**sē** or **sēsē**
Gen.	**suī**
Dat.	**sibi** or **sibī**
Abl.	**sē** or **sēsē**

</div>

100. RULE.—The nominative of the personal pronoun is used when it is emphatic or when a contrast is expressed.

ego saltō, tū natās   *I am dancing, you are swimming*

101. RULE.—A composite **subject** (*i.e.* a subject consisting of two or more substantives or pronouns) has its **verb in the plural**; and if the members of the composite subject are of different persons, the verb agrees with the "**prior**" **person**, the first person being reckoned prior to the second, and the second to the third.

ego et Marcus errāmus   *Marcus and I are wrong*
tū et Tullia errātis   *you and Tullia are wrong*

Learn Vocabulary 30.

Vocabulary 30.

amīc-us, -a, -um, *friendly.*
argent-um, -ī, *n., silver, money.*
cār-us, -a, -um, *dear.*
condemn-ō, -āre, *condemn.*
expugn-ō, -āre, *storm, take by*

improb-us, -a, -um, *dishonourable.*
natō, -āre (natation), *swim.*
nōt-us, -a, -um, *known, well known.*

LESSON 31.
POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

102. These are formed from the personal and reflexive pronouns, singular and plural :—

From Singular Pronouns.	From Plural Pronouns.
meus, mea, meum, *my*.	noster, nostra, nostrum, *our*.
tuus, tua, tuum, *thy*.	vester, vestra, vestrum, *your*.
suus, sua, suum, *his, her, its*.	suus, sua, suum, *their*.

NOTE.—When the above adjectives are used otherwise than as attributes, they are rendered by *mine, thine, hers, ours, yours, theirs,* instead of by *my, thy, her, our, your, their*.

103. **Meus, tuus,** and **suus** are declined like **bonus,** except that **meus** has vocative singular masculine **mī** ; **noster** and **vester** are declined like **niger** (§ 36).

104. **Suus,** being formed from the reflexive **sē,** is generally used (except, of course, in the nominative) of something belonging to the subject of the sentence. Hence, if *his* in a principal sentence refers to something belonging to the subject of the sentence, we must render it by **su-us, -a, -um** ; otherwise we must use **ēius** (genitive of **is, ea, id,** § 110) ; *e.g.* **Patrem suum necāvit,** *He killed his (own) father* ; **Patrem ēius necāvit,** *He killed his (someone else's) father*.

105. RULE.—Verbs and adjectives denoting **nearness** or **approach** are often constructed with a **dative.**

o p p i d ō appropinquāmus	*we are approaching a town*
Belgae proximī sunt G e r - m ā n ī s	*the Belgae are nearest to the Germani*

Learn Vocabulary 31.

VOCABULARY 31.

aes, aer-is, *n., bronze, money.*
aliēn-us, -a, -um (alien), *belonging to another.*
aes aliēnum, *n., debt.*
appropinqu-ō, āre, *approach.*
fām-a, -ae, *f., fame, rumour, report.*
glauc-us, -a, -um, *gray.*

inimīc-us, -a, -um, *hostile.*
līber-ō, -āre, *free.*
marīt-us, ī, *m.* (marital), *husband.*
nox, noct-is *f.* (nocturnal), *night.*
Poen-us, -a, -um (Punic). *Carthaginian.*
studi-um, -ī, *n., pursuit, study.*
Vergīni-us, -ī, *m., Verginius.*

LESSON 32.

This Lesson may be omitted until after Lesson 64.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

106. The demonstrative pronouns are those given below and in Lesson 33.

(1) **hīc** (or **hic**), **haec**, **hōc**, *this* ; used of that which belongs to, or is near, the speaker.

(2) **iste, ista, istud**, *that* (*of yours*) ; used of that which belongs to, or is near, the person spoken to.

(3) **ille, illa, illud**, *that* (*yonder*) used of that which belongs to, or is near, neither the speaker nor the person spoken to.

107. The above pronouns are thus declined.

	Singular.				Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom.	hīc or hic	haec	hōc		hī	hae	haec
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hōc		hōs	hās	haec
Gen.		hūius			hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.		huic				hīs	
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc			hīs	

	Singular.				Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom.	iste	ista	istud		istī	istae	ista
Acc.	istum	istam	istud		istōs	istās	ista
Gen.		istīus			istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dat.		istī				istīs	
Abl.	istō	istā	istō			istīs	

	Singular.				Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ille	illa	illud		illī	illae	illa
Acc.	illum	illam	illud		illōs	illās	illa
Gen.		illīus			illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.		illī				illīs	
Abl.	illŏ	illā	illŏ			illīs	

108. The Latin demonstrative pronouns are used both substantivally and adjectivally, just as in English we may say either " this (*substantival*) is true," or " this (*adjectival*) statement is true."

109. RULE.—The ablative of a substantive *accompanied by an adjective* often forms an adjectival phrase known as the **ablative of description.**

Catilīna fuit ingeniō malō prāvōque

Catilina was (a man) of an evil and corrupt disposition

Learn Vocabulary 32.

<p style="text-align:center">VOCABULARY 32.</p>

eximi-us, -a, -um, *extraordinary, remarkable.*

Graec-us, -a, -um, *Greek.*

ingeni-um, -ī, *n., genius, ability, disposition.*

iuven-is, -is, *m.* (juvenile), *young man.*

magnopere, adv., *greatly.*

mens-a, -ae, *f.,* table.

mox, adv., *soon.*

pōcul-um, -ī, *n., cup,*

prāv-us, -a, -um (depraved), *cor·rupt.*

tant-us, -a, -um (tantamount), *so great.*

uxor, uxōr-is, *f.* (uxorious), *wife.*

<p style="text-align:center">LESSON 33.</p>

<p style="text-align:center">*This Lesson may be omitted until after Lesson* 64.</p>

<p style="text-align:center">DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS (*continued*).</p>

110. The remaining demonstrative pronouns are—

(4) **is, ea, id,** *that* ; used of what has just been mentioned, and (when used substantivally) often to be translated *he, she, it.*

NOTE.—Īdem, eadem, idem, *the same,* is formed from **is, ea, id,** and the particle -dem. Its declension is given in full after that of **is** on p. 54.

(5) **ipse, ipsa, ipsum,** *self,* or *himself, herself, itself.*

NOTE.—Ipse has a superlative form **ipsissim-us, -a, -um,** *very self,* declined like **bonus** (§ 36).

111.

	Singular.				Plural.	
	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom.	is	ea	id		eī or iī	eae	ea
Acc.	eum	eam	id		eōs	eās	ea
Gen.		ēius			eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.		eī				eīs or iīs	
Abl.	eō	eā	eō			eīs or iīs	

	Singular.				Plural.	
	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom.	īdem	eadem	idem		īdem or eīdem	eaedem	eadem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem		eosdem	easdem	eadem
Gen.		ēiusdem			eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.		eīdem				isdem or eisdem	
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem			isdem or eisdem	

	Singular.				Plural.	
	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum		ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum		ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Gen.		ipsīus			ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.		ipsī				ipsīs	
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō			ipsīs	

112. RULE.—The ablative may be used to express **manner,** and must then (except in the case of a very few words) be accompanied (1) by the preposition **cum,** or (2) by an adjective.

$$\text{Caesar} \begin{cases} \text{cum celeritāte} \\ \text{magnā celeritāte} \end{cases} \text{urbī appropinquat}$$

Caesar is approaching the city $\begin{cases} \text{with speed.} \\ \text{with great speed} \end{cases}$

Learn Vocabulary 33.

<div style="text-align:center">VOCABULARY 33.</div>

celeritās, celeritāt-is, *f.* (celerity), *speed.*

dīligenti-a, -ae, *f., diligence.*

equester, equestr-is, equestr-e, *equestrian.*

fīnitim-us, -a, -um, *near, bordering on.*

flūmen, flūmin-is, *n., river.*

māiōr-ēs, -um, *m.pl., ancestors.*

mod-us, -ī, *m.* (mode), *manner.*

regiō, regiōn-is, *f., region.*

soror, sorōr-is, *f., sister.*

summ-us, -a, -um (summit), *highest, greatest.*

LESSON 34.

This Lesson may be omitted until after Lesson 64.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

113. The relative pronouns are three in number, viz. :—

Quī, quae, quod, *who, which, that* (generally substantival) ;

Quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *whoever, whatever* (substantival or adjectival) ;

Quisquis, quidquid, *whoever, whatever* (substantival or adjectival).

114.

	Singular.				M.	Plural. F.	N.
	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod		quī	quae	quae
Acc.	quem	quam	quod		quōs	quās	quae
Gen.	cūius				quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui				quibus		
Abl.	quō	quā	quō		quibus		

115. In the declension of **quīcumque** the ending **-cumque** is invariable, and the first part of the word is declined like the simple relative **quī,** *e.g.* :—

	M.	F.	N.
Sing. nom.	**quīcumque**	**quaecumque**	**quodcumque**
,, acc.	**quemcumque**	**quamcumque**	**quodcumque**
	etc.	etc.	etc.

116. Of **quisquis** the only forms in common use are :—

Sing. nom. masc. **quisquis,** neut. **quidquid** or **quicquid**
,, abl. masc. and neut. **quōquō.**

117. The word denoting that to which a relative pronoun *relates* or refers is called the antecedent. The relative is regularly of the same **gender** and **number** and **person** as its antecedent, but its **case** is determined by its own clause.

sōl, q u ī terrārum flammīs	*sun, that visitest with thy beams*
opera omnia lustrās	*all the actions of the world*

Obs.—In the above example **sōl** is a masculine substantive in the vocative singular and of the second person ; the relative **quī** is the subject of its clause and is therefore nominative, but its gender (masculine), number (singular), and person (second) are determined by its antecedent **sōl.**

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

118. The interrogative pronoun is **quis, quae, quid,** *who?*
which? what?   It is used both substantivally and adjecti-
vally, except in the forms **quī** (nominative singular mascu-
line) and **quod** (nominative and accusative singular neuter),
which are adjectival only.

Examples :   **quis venit?** *who is coming?* (substantival).
         quī mīles venit? *what soldier is coming?* (adjectival).
         quid vidēs? *what do you see?* (substantival).
         quod animal vidēs? *what animal do you see?* (adjec-
            tival).

		Singular.			M.	Plural. F.	N.
Nom.	{ quis } { quī }	quae	/ quid \ \ quod /		quī	quae	quae
Acc.	quem	quam	/ quid \ \ quod /		quōs	quās	quae
Gen.		cūius			quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.		cui				quibus	
Abl.	quō	quā	quō			quibus	

Obs.—Except in the forms **quis, quid,** the interrogative pronoun is
identical with the relative.

NOTE 1.—**Quisnam, quaenam, quidnam,** *who, pray? what, pray?*
is an emphatic interrogative formed by adding the invariable particle
-nam to the simple interrogative.

NOTE 2.—*Which (of the two)?* is expressed by **uter** (§ 81).

Learn Vocabulary 34.

VOCABULARY 34.

fals-us, -a, -um, *false.*

immortāl-is, -e, *immortal.*

molest-us, -a, -um, *troublesome,*
  burdensome, annoying.

redintegr-ō, -āre, *renew.*

umquam, adv., *ever.*

LESSON 35.

This Lesson may be omitted until after Lesson 64.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

119. The indefinite pronouns are **quis, qua, quid,** *any,* and its compounds. Like the interrogative, the indefinite **quis** has the adjectival forms **quī** (nominative singular masculine) and **quod** (nominative and accusative singular neuter).

	Singular.				M.	Plural. F.	N.
	M.	F.	N.				
Nom.	{ quis } { quī }	qua	{ quid } { quod }		quī	quae	qua
Acc.	quem	quam	{ quid } { quod }		quōs	quās	qua
Gen.	cūius				quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui				quibus		
Abl.	quō	quā	quō		quibus		

Obs. 1.—Except in the nominative singular feminine and the nominative and accusative plural neuter, the indefinite **quis** is identical with the interrogative.

Obs. 2.—**Quis** is most commonly used after **sī,** *if*; **nisi,** *unless*; **nē,** *lest* (§§ 198, 235); **num** (§ 153).

120. Three indefinite pronouns refer to *all* the individuals belonging to a class, taken one by one :—

> **quisque,** *each*; **quīlibet,**[1] *any you please, any*;
> **quīvīs,**[2] *any you will, any.*

121. Indefinite pronouns referring in the singular to a single individual and in the plural to several are :—

> **quīdam,** *a certain one*;   **aliquis,** *some one.*

Obs.—The force of **aliquis** is best remembered by means of a word which is often used instead of **aliquis,** viz. **nonnullus** (lit. *not none*).

122. A negative or a comparative commonly procedes

> **quisquam,** *any.*

Obs.—**Quisquam,** unlike the other indefinite pronouns, is substantival only; its adjectival equivalent is **ullus** (§ 81).

---

[1] **libet** = *it pleases,* § 268.   [2] **vīs** = *you will,* § 254.

123. Quīdam is declined thus :—

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam / quoddam	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
Acc.	quemdam	quamdam	quiddam / quoddam	quosdam	quasdam	quaedam
Gen.		cūiusdam		quōrumdam	quārumdam	quōrumdam
Dat.		cuidam			quibusdam	
Abl.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam		quibusdam	

124. Quīlibet and **quīvīs** are declined like **quīdam,** the endings **-libet** and **-vīs** remaining unchanged throughout.

125. Quisquam is thus declined in the singular (the plural is not in use) :—

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quisquam	quaequam	quidquam or quicquam
Acc.	quemquam	quamquam	quidquam
Gen.		cūiusquam	
Dat.		cuiquam	
Abl.	quōquam	quāquam	quōquam

126. Quisque is declined like **quisquam,** and has also in the nominative and accusative singular neuter the adjectival form **quodque.**

127. The declension of **aliquis** (adjectival **aliquī**) is the same as that of the indefinite **quis,** except that the nominative singular feminine **aliqua** is adjectival only.

128. The following examples illustrate the use of these indefinite pronouns :—

sī quis fortiter pugnat, laudātur	*if any one fights bravely, he is praised*
quisque facta sua narrābat	*each man was telling of his own deeds*
praedam aliquam ex illā pugnā comparāvērunt	*they got some booty from that battle*
puella quaedam mihī haec narrāvit	*a certain girl told me this*
nec quisquam eā arte nōs superābit	*nor will any one excel us in that art*

Learn Vocabulary 35 (p. 59).

Vocabulary 35.

bon-a, **-ōrum,** *n.pl., goods,*
  property.
condiciō, condiciōn-is, *f., con-*
  dition ; pl. *terms.*
hūc, adv., *hither.*

nec, conj., *nor, and . . . not.*
pax, pāc-is, *f., peace.*
rog-ō, -āre (interrogative), *ask.*
sī, conj., *if.*
super-ō, -āre, *overcome, excel.*

LESSON 36.

Learn the conjugation of **sum,** pp. 62, 63.

This verb, though irregular, is given before the regular verbs, as it serves as an auxiliary in the conjugation of the latter.

The only meanings of the subjunctive of **sum** which are to be learnt now are those given in this Lesson (§ 130) ; the meanings on p. 63 will be explained later on.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

129. The usages of the subjunctive are very various and cannot all be mastered at once. The present Lesson deals only with wishes, exhortations, and commands.

WISHES.

130. In the expression of wishes the subjunctive is usually introduced by **utinam,** *O would that . . . . !* Three tenses are used, the present tense expressing a wish with regard to the future, the imperfect tense expressing a wish with regard to the present, the pluperfect tense expressing a wish with regard to the past.

sim,	*would that I might be*	**sīmus,**	*would that we might be*
sīs,	*would that thou might-est be*	**sītis,**	*would that ye might be*
sit,	*would that he might be*	**sint,**	*would that they might be*
essem,	*would that I were*	**essēmus,**	*would that we were*
essēs,	*would that thou wert*	**essētis,**	*would that ye were*
esset,	*would that he were*	**essent,**	*would that they were*
fuissem,	*would that I had been*	**fuissēmus,**	*would that we had been*
fuissēs,	*would that thou hadst been*	**fuissētis,**	*would that ye had been*
fuisset,	*would that he had been*	**fuissent,**	*would that they had been*

EXHORTATIONS AND COMMANDS.

| *let him be* | **sīmus,** | *let us be* |
| | **sint,** | *let them be* |

131. In wishes, exhortations, and commands, *not* is expressed by **nē.**

132. Exhortations and commands in the second person are expressed by the imperative, except that in the case of prohibitions (*i.e.* negative exhortations and commands) **nē** and the present imperative cannot be used in prose, but **nōlī** (singular) or **nōlīte** (plural) with the present infinitive is substituted; *e.g.* **nōlī ignāvus esse** or **nōlīte ignāvī esse,** *do not be cowardly*, lit. *be unwilling* (§ 254) *to be cowardly.*

133. The present imperative is the tense generally used in affirmative commands; the future imperative is characteristic of the formal language of laws and treaties.

Learn Vocabulary 36.

VOCABULARY 36.

cupid-us, -a, -um (cupidity), *greedy (of), desirous (of).*
glōriōs-us, -a, -um, *boastful.*
ignāv-us, -a, -um, *indolent, cowardly.*
loquax, *gen.* **loquāc-is,** *loquacious, talkative.*
Lutēti-a, -ae, *f.,* a town, now Paris.
mendax, *gen.* **mendāc-is,** *mendacious, untruthful.*

prōditor, prōditōr-is, *m., traitor, betrayer.*
quondam, adv., *formerly.*
tāl-is, -e, *such, of such a kind.*
temerāri-us, -a, -um, *rash.*
vāt-ēs, -is, *c.* (gen. pl. **vātum**), *prophet.*
vēr-us, -a, -um (verity), *true.*

REMARKS ON THE REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

134. A Latin verb is conjugated by endings added to one or other of its **three bases,** viz. the present base, the perfect base, and the supine base.

From the **present base** are formed the present infinitive active and passive, the present participle active, and the present, imperfect, and future in finite moods, active and passive ; also the gerund and gerundive.

From the **perfect base** are formed the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect active.

From the **supine base** are fomed the supines, future participle active, and perfect participle passive, including, of course, the tenses of the verb conjugated with the help of these forms.

135. The present base is ascertained by cutting off the ending of the present infinitive active. This in the 1st conjugation is **-āre,** thus : **am-ō,** infinitive **am-āre,** present base **am-.**

The perfect base is found by cutting off **-ī** from the 1st person singular perfect indicative active, thus : **amō,** perfect **amāvī,** perfect base **amāv-.**

The supine base is found by cutting off **-um** from the accusative supine, thus : **amō,** supine **amātum,** supine base **amāt-.**

The endings which are to be added to these bases are shown in the Table of Conjugations (pp. 64-81).

136. In the 1st conjugation the perfect base is nearly always formed by the addition of **-āv-** to the present base, and the supine base by adding **-āt-** to the present base. This rule may be assumed to hold good in all verbs of the 1st conjugation in the vocabularies, unless the perfect and supine are there given.

137. The above mentioned four forms—present indicative active (1st person singular), present infinitive active, perfect indicative active (1st person singular), and accusative supine—are known as the **principal parts** of a verb. In the 2nd and 4th conjugations (as in the 1st), most verbs form these principal parts like the model verbs given in §§ 139, 140, 142. In the 3rd conjugation the principal parts have to be learned for each verb separately.

§ 138. THE VERB **SUM**.

PRINCIPAL PARTS (§ 137): **sum, esse, fu-ī,** (*no supine*).

PARTICIPLES * { PRESENT : *none*
{ FUTURE : **futūrus, futūra, futūrum**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

sum,	*I am*	**sumus,**	*we are*
es,	*thou art*	**estis,**	*ye are*
est,	*he is*	**sunt,**	*they are*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

eram,	*1 was*	**erāmus,**	*we were*
erās,	*thou wast*	**erātis,**	*ye were*
erat,	*he was*	**erant,**	*they were*

FUTURE TENSE.

erō,	*I shall be*	**erimus,**	*we shall be*
eris,	*thou wilt be*	**eritis,**	*ye will be*
erit,	*he will be*	**erunt,**	*they will be*

PERFECT TENSE.

fu-ī,	*I was* or *I have been*	**fu-imus,**	*we were* or *we have been*
fu-istī,	*thou wast* or *thou hast been*	**fu-istis,**	*ye were* or *ye have been*
fu-it,	*he was* or *he has been*	**fu-ērunt** or **fu-ēre** }	*they were* or *they have been*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

fu-eram,	*I had been*	**fu-erāmus,**	*we had been*
fu-erās,	*thou hadst been*	**fu-erātis,**	*ye had been*
fu-erat,	*he had been*	**fu-erant,**	*they had been*

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

fu-erō,	*I shall have been*	**fu-erimus,**	*we shall have been*
fu-eris,	*thou wilt have been*	**fu-eritis,**	*ye will have been*
fu-erit,	*he will have been*	**fu-erint,**	*they will have been*

* In this and other tables of the conjugation of verbs the participles are given first, as some parts of the verb are formed by means of a participle and the auxiliary.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.   IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES

PRESENT TENSE.

sim,	*I should be*	
sīs,	*thou wouldst be*	*(if) I were to be*
sit,	*he would be*	*(in order that) I may be*
sīmus,	*we should be*	*(so that) I am*
sītis,	*ye would be*	*(although) I am*
sint,	*they would be*	

IMPERFECT TENSE.

essem *or* **forem,**	*I should be*	
essēs *or* **forēs,**	*thou wouldst be*	
esset *or* **foret,**	*he would be*	*(if) I were*
essēmus *or* **forēmus**	*we should be*	*(in order that) I might be*
		(so that) I was
essētis *or* **forētis**	*ye would be*	*(when, although, etc.) I was*
essent *or* **forent,**	*they would be*	

PERFECT TENSE.

fu-erim		
fu-eris		*(if) I were to have been*
fu-erit	rare in principal	*(so that) I was* or *have been*
fu-erimus	sentences	
fu-eritis		*(although) I have been*
fu-erint		

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

fu-issem,	*I should have been*	
fu-issēs,	*thou wouldst have been*	
fu-isset,	*he would have been*	*(if) I had been*
fu-issēmus,	*we should have been*	*(when, although, etc.) I*
fu-issētis,	*ye would have been*	*had been*
fu-issent,	*they would have been*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

es,	*be (thou)*	**este,**	*be (ye)*

FUTURE TENSE.

estō,	*thou shalt* or *must be*	**estōte,**	*ye shall* or *must be*
estō,	*he shall* or *must be*	**suntō,**	*they shall* or *must be*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT : **esse,** *to be*
PERFECT : **fu-isse,** *to have been*
FUTURE : **fore** *or* **futūr-us esse,**
　　　　to be about to be

GERUND.

None.

SUPINE.

None.

For compounds of **sum** see § 248.

§ 139. FIRST (OR A) CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

MODEL : **amō**, *I love, I like.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS : **am-āre, amāv-ī, amāt-um.**

BASES : **am-** (present) ; **amāv-** (perfect) ; **amāt-** (supine).

PARTICIPLES
{ PRESENT : **am-ans** (gen. **amant-is**), *loving*
{ FUTURE : **amāt-ūrus, amāt-ūra, amāt-ūrum**, *about to love*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

am-ō,	*I love*	**am-āmus,**	*we love*
am-ās,	*thou lovest*	**am-ātis,**	*ye love*
am-at,	*he loves*	**am-ant,**	*they love*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

am-ābam,	*I was loving*	**am-ābāmus,**	*we were loving*
am-ābās,	*thou wast loving*	**am-ābātis,**	*ye were loving*
am-ābat,	*he was loving*	**am-ābant,**	*they were loving*

FUTURE TENSE.

am-ābō,	*I shall love*	**am-ābimus,**	*we shall love*
am-ābis,	*thou wilt love*	**am-ābitis,**	*ye will love*
am-ābit,	*he will love*	**am-ābunt,**	*they will love*

PERFECT TENSE.

amāv-ī,	*I loved or have loved*	**amāv-imus,**	*we loved or have loved*
amāv-istī,	*thou lovedst or hast loved*	**amāv-istis,**	*ye loved or have loved*
amāv-it,	*he loved or has loved*	**amāv-ērunt** or **amāv-ēre** }	*they loved or have loved*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

amāv-eram,	*I had loved*	**amāv-erāmus,**	*we had loved*
amāv-erās,	*thou hadst loved*	**amāv-erātis,**	*ye had loved*
amāv-erat,	*he had loved*	**amāv-erant,**	*they had loved*

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

amāv-erō,	*I shall have loved*	**amāv-erimus,**	*we shall have loved*
amāv-eris,	*thou wilt have loved*	**amāv-eritis,**	*ye will have loved*
amāv-erit,	*he will have loved*	**amāv-erint,**	*they will have loved*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.   IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

am-em,	*I should love*	
am-es,	*thou wouldst love*	*(if) I were to love*
am-et,	*he would love*	*(in order that) I may love*
am-ēmus,	*we should love*	*(so that) I love*
am-ētis,	*ye would love*	*(although) I love*
am-ent,	*they would love*	

IMPERFECT TENSE.

am-ărem,	*I should be loving*	*(if) I were loving*
am-ărēs,	*thou wouldst be loving*	*(in order that) I might*
am-ăret,	*he would be loving*	*love*
am-ărēmus,	*we should be loving*	*(so that) I loved*
am-ărētis,	*ye would be loving*	*(when, although, etc.) I*
am-ărent,	*they would be loving*	*was loving*

PERFECT TENSE.

amāv-erim		
amāv-eris		*(if) I were to have loved*
amāv-erit	rare in principal	*(so that) I loved or have*
amāv-erimus	sentences	*loved*
amāv-eritis		*(although) I have loved*
amāv-erint		

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

amāv-issem,	*I should have loved*	
amāv-issēs,	*thou wouldst have loved*	*(if) I had loved*
amāv-isset,	*he would have loved*	*(when, although, etc.) I*
amāv-issēmus,	*we should have loved*	*had loved*
amāv-issētis,	*ye would have loved*	
amāv-issent,	*they would have loved*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

am-ā,	*love (thou)*	**am-āte,**	*love (ye)*

FUTURE TENSE.

am-ātō,	*thou shalt or must love*	**am-ātōte,**	*ye shall or must love*
am-ātō,	*he shall or must love*	**am-antō,**	*they shall or must love*

INFINITIVE.	GERUND.
PRESENT : am-āre, *to love*	(*Nom.* am-andum)
PERFECT : amāv-isse, *to have loved*	*Acc.* am-andum, *loving*
	Gen. am-andī
FUTURE : amātūr-us esse, *to be about to love*	*Dat.* am-andō
	Abl. am-andō

SUPINE.

Acc. amāt-um, *to love*	*Abl.* amāt-ū, *in loving*

§ 140.   Second (or E) Conjugation.—Active Voice.

Model: moneō, *I advise.*

Principal Parts: **mon-ēre, monu-ī, monit-um.**

Bases: **mon-** (present); **monu-** (perfect); **monit-** (supine).

Participles { Present: **mon-ens** (gen. **monentis**), *advising*
Future: **monit-ūrus, monit-ūra, monit-ūrum,** *about to advise*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

mon-eō,	*I advise*	**mon-ēmus,**	*we advise*
mon-ēs,	*thou advisest*	**mon-ētis,**	*ye advise*
mon-et,	*he advises*	**mon-ent,**	*they advise*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

mon-ēbam,	*I was advising*	**mon-ēbāmus,**	*we were advising*
mon-ēbās,	*thou wast advising*	**mon-ēbātis,**	*ye were advising*
mon-ēbat,	*he was advising*	**mon-ēbant,**	*they were advising*

FUTURE TENSE.

mon-ēbō,	*I shall advise*	**mon-ēbimus,**	*we shall advise*
mon-ēbis,	*thou wilt advise*	**mon-ēbitis,**	*ye will advise*
mon-ēbit,	*he will advise*	**mon-ēbunt,**	*they will advise*

PERFECT TENSE.

monu-ī,	*I advised or have advised*	**monu-imus,**	*we advised or have advised*
monu-istī,	*thou advisedst or hast advised*	**monu-istis,**	*ye advised or have advised*
monu-it,	*he advised or has advised*	**monu-ērunt** or **monu-ēre**	*they advised or have advised*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

monu-eram,	*I had advised*	**monu-erāmus,**	*we had advised*
monu-erās,	*thou hadst advised*	**monu-erātis,**	*ye had advised*
monu-erat,	*he had advised*	**monu-erant,**	*they had advised*

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

monu-erō,	*I shall have advised*	**monu-erimus,**	*we shall* \ *have advised*
monu-eris,	*thou wilt have advised*	**monu-eritis,**	*ye will*
monu-erit,	*he will have advised*	**monu-erint,**	*they will* /

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. *(See §§ 121, 147.)*

	IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.	IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

mon-eam,	*I should advise*	*(if) I were to advise*
mon-eās,	*thou wouldst advise*	*(in order that) I may advise*
mon-eat,	*he would advise*	
mon-eāmus,	*we should advise*	*(so that) I advise*
mon-eātis,	*ye would advise*	*(although) I advise*
mon-eant,	*they would advise*	

IMPERFECT TENSE.

mon-ērem,	*I should be advising*	*(if) I were advising*
mon-ērēs,	*thou wouldst be advising*	*(in order that) I might advise*
mon-ēret,	*he would be advising*	
mon-ērēmus,	*we should be advising*	*(so that) I advised*
mon-ērētis,	*ye would be advising*	*(when, although, etc.) I was advising*
mon-ērent,	*they would be advising*	

PERFECT TENSE.

monu-erim		
monu-eris		*((if) I were to have advised*
monu-erit	rare in principal	*(so that) I advised or have advised*
monu-erimus	sentences	
monu-eritis		*(although) I have advised*
monu-erint		

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

monu-issem,	*I should have advised*	
monu-issēs,	*thou wouldst have advised*	*(if) I had advised*
monu-isset,	*he would have advised*	*(when, although, etc.) I had advised*
monu-issēmus,	*we should have advised*	
monu-issētis,	*ye would have advised*	
monu-issent,	*they would have advised*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

mon-ē,   *advise (thou)* | **mon-ēte,**   *advise (ye)*

FUTURE TENSE.

mon-ētō, *thou shalt* or *must advise* | **mon-ētōte,** *ye shall* or *must advise*
mon-ētō, *he shall* or *must advise* | **mon-entō,** *they shall* or *must advise*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT : **mon-ēre,** *to advise*
PERFECT : **monu-isse,** *to have advised*
FUTURE : **monitūr-us esse,** *to be about to advise*

GERUND.

(*Nom.* **mon-endum**)
Acc. **mon-endum,** *advising*
Gen. **mon-endī**
Dat. **mon-endō**
Abl. **mon-endō**

SUPINE.

Acc. **monit-um,** *to advise* | *Abl.* **monit-ū,** *in advising*

§ 141. Third (or Consonant) Conjugation.—Active Voice.

Model : regō, *I rule.*

Principal Parts : reg-ere, rex-ī, rect-um.

Bases : **reg-** (present) ; **rex-** (perfect) ; **rect-** (supine).

Participles { Present : **reg-ens** (gen. **regent-is**), *ruling*
            { Future : **rect-ūrus, rect-ūra, rect-ūrum,** *about to rule*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

reg-ō,	*I rule*	**reg-imus,**	*we rule*
reg-is,	*thou rulest*	**reg-itis,**	*ye rule*
reg-it,	*he rules*	**reg-unt,**	*they rule*

Imperfect Tense.

reg-ēbam,	*I was ruling*	**reg-ēbāmus,**	*we were ruling*
reg-ēbās,	*thou wast ruling*	**reg-ēbātis,**	*ye were ruling*
reg-ēbat,	*he was ruling*	**reg-ēbant,**	*they were ruling*

Future Tense.

reg-am,	*I shall rule*	**reg-ēmus,**	*we shall rule*
reg-ēs,	*thou wilt rule*	**reg-ētis,**	*ye will rule*
reg-et,	*he will rule*	**reg-ent,**	*they will rule*

Perfect Tense.

rex-ī,	*I ruled or have ruled*	**rex-imus,**	*we ruled or have ruled*
rex-istī,	*thou ruledst or hast ruled*	**rex-istis,**	*ye ruled or have ruled*
rex-it,	*he ruled or has ruled*	**rex-ērunt** or **rex-ēre** }	*they ruled or have ruled*

Pluperfect Tense.

rex-eram,	*I had ruled*	**rex-erāmus,**	*we had ruled*
rex-erās,	*thou hadst ruled*	**rex-erātis,**	*ye had ruled*
rex-erat,	*he had ruled*	**rex-erant,**	*they had ruled*

Future-Perfect Tense.

rex-erō,	*I shall have ruled*	**rex-erimus,**	*we shall have ruled*
rex-eris,	*thou wilt have ruled*	**rex-eritis,**	*ye will have ruled*
rex-erit,	*he will have ruled*	**rex-erint,**	*they will have ruled*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.	IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

reg-am,	*I should rule*	
reg-ās,	*thou wouldst rule*	*(if) I were to rule*
reg-at,	*he would rule*	*(in order that) I may rule*
reg-āmus,	*we should rule*	
reg-ātis,	*ye would rule*	*(so that) I rule*
reg-ant,	*they would rule*	*(although) I rule*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

reg-erem,	*I should be ruling*	
reg-erēs,	*thou wouldst be ruling*	*(if) I were ruling*
reg-eret,	*he would be ruling*	*(in order that) I might rule*
reg-erēmus,	*we should be ruling*	
reg-erētis,	*ye would be ruling*	*(so that) I ruled*
reg-erent,	*they would be ruling*	*(when, although, etc.) I was ruling*

PERFECT TENSE.

rex-erim		
rex-eris		*(if) I were to have ruled*
rex-erit	rare in principal	*(so that) I ruled or have ruled*
rex-erimus	sentences	
rex-eritis		*(although) I have ruled*
rex-erint		

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

rex-issem,	*I should have ruled*	
rex-issēs,	*thou wouldst have ruled*	
rex-isset,	*he would have ruled*	*(if) I had ruled*
rex-issēmus,	*we should have ruled*	*(when, although, etc.) I had ruled*
rex-issētis,	*ye would have ruled*	
rex-issent,	*they would have ruled*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

reg-e,	*rule (thou)*	reg-ite,	*rule (ye)*

FUTURE TENSE.

reg-itō,	*thou shalt or must rule*	reg-itōte,	*ye shall or must rule*
reg-itō,	*he shall or must rule*	reg-untō,	*they shall or must rule*

INFINITIVE.	GERUND.

PRESENT : **reg-ere,** *to rule*

PERFECT : **rex-isse,** *to have ruled*

FUTURE : **rectūr-us esse,** *to be about to rule*

(Nom.	reg-endum)
Acc.	reg-endum, *ruling*
Gen.	reg-endī
Dat.	reg-endō
Abl.	reg-endō

SUPINE.

Acc. rect-um, *to rule*	*Abl.* rect-ū, *in ruling*

§ 142. FOURTH (OR I) CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

MODEL: audiō, *I hear.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: aud-īre, audīv-ī, audīt-um.

BASES: aud- (present); audīv- (perfect); audīt- (supine).

PARTICIPLES {
PRESENT: aud-iens (gen. audient-is), *hearing*
FUTURE: audīt-ūrus, audīt-ūra, audīt-ūrum, *about to hear*
}

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

aud-iō,	*I hear*	aud-īmus,	*we hear*
aud-īs,	*thou hearest*	aud-ītis,	*ye hear*
aud-it,	*he hears*	aud-iunt,	*they hear*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

aud-iēbam,	*I was hearing*	aud-iēbāmus,	*we were hearing*
aud-iēbās,	*thou wast hearing*	aud-iēbātis,	*ye were hearing*
aud-iēbat,	*he was hearing*	aud-iēbant,	*they were hearing*

FUTURE TENSE.

aud-iam,	*I shall hear*	aud-iēmus,	*we shall hear*
aud-iēs,	*thou wilt hear*	aud-iētis,	*ye will hear*
aud-iet,	*he will hear*	aud-ient,	*they will hear*

PERFECT TENSE.

audīv-ī,	*I heard or have heard*	audīv-imus,	*we heard or have heard*
audīv-istī,	*thou heardest or hast heard*	audīv-istis,	*ye heard or have heard*
audīv-it,	*he heard or has heard*	audīv-ērunt *or* audīv-ēre	*they heard or have heard*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

audīv-eram,	*I had heard*	audīv-erāmus,	*we had heard*
audīv-erās,	*thou hadst heard*	audīv-erātis,	*ye had heard*
audīv-erat,	*he had heard*	audīv-erant,	*they had heard*

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

audīv-erō,	*I shall have heard*	audīv-erimus,	*we shall have heard*
audīv-eris,	*thou wilt have heard*	audīv-eritis,	*ye will have heard*
audīv-erit,	*he will have heard*	audīv-erint,	*they will have heard*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.   IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

aud-iam,	*I should hear*	*(if) I were to hear*
aud-iās,	*thou wouldst hear*	*(in order that) I may hear*
aud-iat,	*he would hear*	
aud-iāmus,	*we should hear*	*(so that) I hear*
aud-iātis,	*ye would hear*	*(although) I hea:*
aud-iant,	*they would hear*	

IMPERFECT TENSE.

aud-īrem,	*I should be hearing*	*(if) I were hearing*
aud-īrēs,	*thou wouldst be hearing*	*(in order that) I might hear*
aud-īret,	*he would be hearing*	
aud-īrēmus,	*we should be hearing*	*(so that) I heard*
aud-īrētis,	*ye would be hearing*	*(when, although, etc.) I was hearing*
aud-īrent,	*they would be hearing*	

PERFECT TENSE.

audīv-erim		
audīv-eris		*(if) I were to have heard*
audīv-erit	rare in principal	*(so that) I heard or have heard*
audīv-erimus	sentences	
audīv-eritis		*(although) I have heard*
audīv-erint		

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

audīv-issem,	*I should have heard*	
audīv-issēs,	*thou wouldst have heard*	*(if) I had heard*
audīv-isset,	*he would have heard*	*(when, although, etc.) I had heard*
audīv-issēmus,	*we should have heard*	
audīv-issētis,	*ye would have heard*	
audīv-issent,	*they would have heard*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

aud-ī,	*hear (thou)*	aud-īte,	*hear (ye)*

FUTURE TENSE.

aud-ītō,	*thou shalt* or *must hear*	aud-ītōte,	*ye shall* or *must hear*
aud-ītō,	*he shall* or *must hear*	aud-iuntō,	*they shall* or *must hear*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: aud-īre, *to hear*
PERFECT: audiv-isse, *to have heard*
FUTURE: audītūr-us esse, *to be about to hear*

GERUND

(*Nom.* aud-iendum)
Acc. aud-iendum, *hearing*
Gen. aud-iendī
Dat. aud-iendō
Abl. aud-iendō

SUPINE.

Acc. audīt-um, *to hear*		*Abl.* audīt-ū, *in hearing*

§ 143.   First (or **A**) Conjugation.—Passive Voice.

Model: **amō**, *I love, I like.*

Bases: **am-** (present); **amāv-** (perfect); **amāt-** (supine).

Participles {
Perfect: **amāt-us, amāt-a, amāt-um**, *loved or having been loved.*
Gerundive: **am-andus, am-anda, am-andum**, *fit to be loved*
}

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

am-or,	*I am loved*	**am-āmur,**	*we are loved*
am-āris,	*thou art loved*	**am-āminī,**	*ye are loved*
am-ātur,	*he is loved*	**am-antur,**	*they are loved*

Imperfect Tense.

am-ābar,	*I was being loved*	**am-ābāmur,**	*we were being loved*
am-ābāris or **am-ābāre**	*thou wast being loved*	**am-ābāminī,**	*ye were being loved*
am-ābātur,	*he was being loved*	**am-ābantur,**	*they were being loved*

Future Tense.

am-ābor,	*I shall be loved*	**am-ābimur,**	*we shall be loved*
am-āberis or **am-ābere,**	*thou wilt be loved*	**am-ābiminī,**	*ye will be loved*
am-ābitur,	*he will be loved*	**am-ābuntur,**	*they will be loved*

Perfect Tense.

amāt-us sum,	*I was or have been loved*	**amāt-ī sumus,**	*we were or have been loved*
amāt-us es,	*thou wast or hast been loved*	**amāt-ī estis,**	*ye were or have been loved*
amāt-us est,	*he was or has been loved*	**amāt-ī sunt,**	*they were or have been loved*

Pluperfect Tense.

amāt-us eram,	*I had*	**amāt-ī erāmus,**	*we had*
amāt-us erās,	*thou hadst* been loved	**amāt-ī erātis,**	*ye had* been loved
amāt-us erat,	*he had*	**amāt-ī erant,**	*they had*

Future-perfect Tense.

amāt-us erō,	*I shall*	**amāt-ī erimus,**	*we shall*
amāt-us eris,	*thou wilt* have been loved	**amāt-ī eritis,**	*ye will* have been loved
amāt-us erit,	*he will*	**amāt-ī erunt,**	*they will*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.   IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

am-er,	*I should be loved*	
am-ēris *or* am-ēre	*thou wouldst be loved*	*(if) I were to be loved* *(in order that) I may be loved*
am-ētur,	*he would be loved*	
am-ēmur,	*we should be loved*	*(so that) I am loved*
am-ēminī,	*ye would be loved*	*(although) I am loved*
am-entur,	*they would be loved*	

IMPERFECT TENSE.

am-ārer,	*I should be loved*	
am-ārēris *or* am-ārēre	*thou wouldst be loved*	*(if) I were being loved* *(in order that) I might be loved*
am-ārētur,	*he would be loved*	
am-ārēmur,	*we should be loved*	*(so that) I was loved*
am-ārēminī,	*ye would be loved*	*(when, although, etc.) I was being loved*
am-ārentur,	*they would be loved*	

PERFECT TENSE.

amāt-us sim		*(if) I were to have been loved*
amāt-us sīs		
amāt-us sit	rare in principal	*(so that) I was loved or have been loved*
amāt-ī sīmus	sentences	
amāt-ī sītis		*(although) I have been loved*
amāt-ī sint		

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

amāt-us essem,	*I should have been loved*	
amāt-us essēs,	*thou wouldst have been loved*	
amāt-us esset,	*he would have been loved*	*(if) I had been loved*
amāt-ī essēmus,	*we should have been loved*	*(when, although, etc.) I had been loved*
amāt-ī essētis,	*ye would have been loved*	
amāt-ī essent,	*they would have been loved*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

am-āre,	*be (thou) loved*	am-āminī, *be (ye) loved*

FUTURE TENSE.

am-ātor,	*thou shalt or must be loved*	
am-ātor,	*he shall or must be loved*	am-antor, *they shall or must be [loved*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT :	am-ārī,	*to be loved*
PERFECT :	amāt-us esse,	*to have been loved*
FUTURE :	amātum īrī,	*to be about to be loved*

§ 158. SECOND (OR E) CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.
MODEL: moneō, *I advise.*

BASES: **mon-** (present); **monu-** (perfect); **monit-** (supine).

PARTICIPLES {
PERFECT: **monit-us, monit-a, monit-um,** *advised or having been advised*
GERUNDIVE: **mon-endus, mon-enda, mon-endum,** *fit to be advised*
}

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

mon-eor,	*I am advised*	**mon-ēmur,**	*we are advised*
mon-ēris,	*thou art advised*	**mon-ēminī,**	*ye are advised*
mon-ētur,	*he is advised*	**mon-entur,**	*they are advised*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

mon-ēbar,	*I was being* ⎫	**mon-ēbāmur,**	*we were being* ⎫
mon-ēbāris or } **mon-ēbāre** }	*thou wast being* ⎬ *advised*	**mon-ēbāminī,**	*ye were being* ⎬ *advised*
mon-ēbātur,	*he was being* ⎭	**mon-ēbantur,**	*they were being* ⎭

FUTURE TENSE.

mon-ēbor,	*I shall be advised*	**mon-ēbimur,**	*we shall be advised*
mon-ēberis or } **mon-ēbere** }	*thou wilt be advised*	**mon-ēbiminī,**	*ye will be advised*
mon-ēbitur,	*he will be advised*	**mon-ēbuntur,**	*they will be advised*

PERFECT TENSE.

monit-us sum,	*I was or have been advised*	**monit-ī sumus,**	*we were or have been advised*
monit-us es,	*thou wast or hast been advised*	**monit-ī estis,**	*ye were or have been advised*
monit-us est,	*he was or has been advised*	**monit-ī sunt,**	*they were or have been advised*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

monit-us eram,	*I had been* ⎫	**monit-ī erāmus,**	*we had been* ⎫
monit-us erās,	*thou hadst been* ⎬ *advised*	**monit-ī erātis,**	*ye had been* ⎬ *advised*
monit-us erat,	*he had been* ⎭	**monit-ī erant,**	*they had been* ⎭

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

monit-us erō, *I shall* ⎫	*have*	**monit-ī erimus,** *we shall* ⎫	*have*
monit-us eris, *thou wilt* ⎬	*been*	**monit-ī eritis,** *ye will* ⎬	*been*
monit-us erit, *he will* ⎭	*advised*	**monit-ī erunt,** *they will* ⎭	*advised*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.   IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

mon-ear,	*I should be advised*	
mon-eāris *or* mon-eāre	*thou wouldst be advised*	(*if*) *I were to be advised* (*in order that*) *I may* *be advised*
mon-eātur,	*he would be advised*	(*so that*) *I am advised*
mon-eāmur,	*we should be advised*	(*although*) *I am advised*
mon-eāminī,	*ye would be advised*	
mon-eantur,	*they would be advised*	

IMPERFECT TENSE.

mon-ērer,	*I should be advised*	
mon-ērēris *or* mon-ērēre	*thou wouldst be advised*	(*if*) *I were being advised* (*in order that*) *I might* *be advised*
mon-ērētur,	*he would be advised*	(*so that*) *I was advised*
mon-ērēmur,	*we should be advised*	(*when, although, etc.*) *I*
mon-ērēminī,	*ye would be advised*	*was being advised*
mon-ērentur,	*they would be advised*	

PERFECT TENSE.

monit-us sim		(*if*) *I were to have been*
monit-us sīs		*advised*
monit-us sit	rare in principal	(*so that*) *I was advised*
monit-ī sīmus	sentences	*or have been advised*
monit-ī sītis		(*although*) *I have been*
monit-ī sint		*advised*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

monit-us essem,	*I should have been advised*	
monit-us essēs,	*thou wouldst have been*	(*if*) *I had been ad-*
monit-us esset,	*he would have been*	*vised*
monit-ī essēmus,	*we should have been*	(*when, although, etc.*)
monit-ī essētis,	*ye would have been*	*I had been advised*
monit-ī essent,	*they would have been*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

mon-ēre,   *be (thou) advised* | **mon-ēminī**, *be (ye) advised*

FUTURE TENSE.

mon-ētor,	*thou must be advised*
mon-ētor,	*he must be advised*	**mon-entor,** *they must be advised*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT : **mon-ērī,**   *to be advised*
PERFECT : **monit-us esse,** *to have been advised*
FUTURE :   **monitum īrī**   *to be about to be advised*

§ 145. THIRD (OR CONSONANT) CONJUGATION.—
PASSIVE VOICE.

MODEL : **regō,** *I rule.*

BASES : **reg-** (present) ; **rex-** (perfect) ; **rect-** (supine).

PARTICIPLES { PERFECT : **rect-us, rect-a, rect-um,** *ruled* or *having been ruled*

GERUNDIVE : **reg-endus, reg-enda, reg-endum,** *fit to be ruled*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

reg-or,	*I am ruled*	**reg-imur,**	*we are ruled*
reg-eris,	*thou art ruled*	**reg-iminī,**	*ye are ruled*
reg-itur,	*he is ruled*	**reg-untur,**	*they are ruled*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

reg-ĕbar,	*I was being ruled*	**reg-ĕbāmur,**	*we were being ruled*
reg-ĕbāris *or* **reg-ĕbāre**	*thou wast being ruled*	**reg-ĕbāminī,**	*ye were being ruled*
reg-ĕbātur,	*he was being ruled*	**reg-ĕbantur,**	*they were being ruled*

FUTURE TENSE.

reg-ar,	*I shall be ruled*	**reg-ēmur,**	*we shall be ruled*
reg-ēris *or* **reg-ēre**	*thou will be ruled*	**reg-ēminī,**	*ye will be ruled*
reg-ētur,	*he will be ruled*	**reg-entur,**	*they will be ruled*

PERFECT TENSE.

rect-us sum,	*I was or have been ruled*	**rect-ī sumus,**	*we were or have been ruled*
rect-us es,	*thou wast or hast been ruled*	**rect-ī estis,**	*ye were or have been ruled*
rect-us est,	*he was or has been ruled*	**rect-ī sunt,**	*they were or have been ruled*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

rect-us eram,	*I had*		**rect-ī erāmus,**	*we had*
rect-us erās,	*thou hadst*	*been ruled*	**rect-ī erātis,**	*ye had*
rect-us erat,	*he had*		**rect-ī erant,**	*they had*

(*been ruled*)

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

rect-us erŏ,	*I shall*	*have been ruled*	**rect-ī erimus,**	*we shall*
rect-us eris,	*thou wilt*		**rect-ī eritis,**	*ye will*
rect-us erit,	*he will*		**rect-ī erunt,**	*they will*

(*have been ruled*)

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.	IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

reg-ar,	*I should be ruled*	
reg-āris *or* reg-āre	*thou wouldst be ruled*	(*if*) *I were to be ruled*
reg-ātur,	*he would be ruled*	(*in order that*) *I may be ruled*
reg-āmur,	*we should be ruled*	(*so that*) *I am ruled*
reg-āminī,	*ye would be ruled*	(*although*) *I am ruled*
reg-antur,	*they would be ruled*	

IMPERFECT TENSE.

reg-erer,	*I should be ruled*	
reg-erēris *or* reg-erēre	*thou wouldst be ruled*	(*if*) *I were being ruled*
reg-erētur,	*he would be ruled*	(*in order that*) *I might be ruled*
reg-erēmur,	*we should be ruled*	(*so that*) *I was ruled*
reg-erēminī,	*ye would be ruled*	(*when, although, etc.*) *I was being ruled*
reg-erentur,	*they would be ruled*	

PERFECT TENSE.

rect-us sim		(*if*) *I were to have been ruled*
rect-us sīs		
rect-us sit	rare in principal	(*so that*) *I was ruled or have been ruled*
rect-ī sīmus	sentences	
rect-ī sītis		(*although*) *I have been ruled*
rect-ī sint		

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

rect-us essem,	*I should have been ruled*	
rect-us essēs,	*thou wouldst have been ruled*	
rect-us esset,	*he would have been ruled*	(*if*) *I had been ruled*
rect-ī essēmus,	*we should have been ruled*	(*when, although, etc.*) *I had been ruled*
rect-ī essētis,	*ye would have been ruled*	
rect-ī essent,	*they would have been ruled*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

reg-ere,	*be (thou) ruled*	**reg-iminī,**	*be (ye) ruled*

FUTURE TENSE.

reg-itor,	*thou must be ruled*		
reg-itor,	*he must be ruled*	**reg-untor,**	*they must be ruled*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT :	**reg-ī,**	*to be ruled*
PERFECT :	**rect-us esse,**	*to have been ruled*
FUTURE :	**rectum īrī,**	*to be about to be ruled*

§ 146. FOURTH (OR I) CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

MODEL: audiō, *I hear.*

BASES: aud- (present); audīv- (perfect); audīt- (supine).

PARTICIPLES {
PERFECT: audīt-us, audīt-a, audīt-um, *heard or having been heard*
GERUNDIVE: aud-iendus, aud-ienda, aud-iendum, *fit to be heard*
}

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

aud-ior,	*I am heard*	aud-īmur,	*we are heard*
aud-īris,	*thou art heard*	aud-īmini,	*ye are heard*
aud-ītur,	*he is heard*	aud-iuntur,	*they are heard*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

aud-iēbar,	*I was being heard*	aud-iēbāmur,	*we were being* ⎫
aud-iēbāris *or* ⎱	*thou wast being*	aud-iēbāmini,	*ye were being* ⎪ ᵇᵉᵃʳᵈ
aud-iēbāre ⎰	*heard*		⎬
aud-iēbātur,	*he was being heard*	aud-iēbantur,	*they were being* ⎭

FUTURE TENSE.

aud-iar,	*I shall be heard*	aud-iēmur,	*we shall be heard*
aud-iēris *or* ⎱ aud-iēre ⎰	*thou wilt be heard*	aud-iēmini,	*ye will be heard*
aud-iētur,	*he will be heard*	aud-ientur,	*they will be heard*

PERFECT TENSE.

audīt-us sum,	*I was or have been heard*	audīt-ī sumus,	*we were or have been heard*
audīt-us es,	*thou wast or hast been heard*	audīt-ī estis,	*ye were or have been heard*
audīt-us est,	*he was or has been heard*	audīt-ī sunt,	*they were or have been heard*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

audīt-us eram,	*I had* ⎫	audīt-ī erāmus,	*we had* ⎫
audīt-us erās,	*thou hadst* ⎬ *been heard*	audīt-ī erātis,	*ye had* ⎬ *been heard*
audīt-us erat,	*he had* ⎭	audīt-ī erant,	*they had* ⎭

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

audīt-us erŏ,	*I shall* ⎫ *have*	audīt-ī erimus,	*we shall* ⎫ *have*
audīt-us eris,	*thou wilt* ⎬ *been*	audīt-ī eritis,	*ye will* ⎬ *been*
audīt-us erit,	*he will* ⎭ *heard*	audīt-ī erunt,	*they will* ⎭ *heard*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.	IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

aud-iar,	*I should be heard*	
aud-iāris *or* aud-iāre	*thou wouldst be heard*	(*if*) *I were to be heard* (*in order that*) *I may* *be heard*
aud-iātur,	*he would be heard*	
aud-iāmur,	*we should be heard*	(*so that*) *I am heard*
aud-iāminī,	*ye would be heard*	(*although*) *I am heard*
aud-iantur,	*they would be heard*	

IMPERFECT TENSE.

aud-īrer,	*I should be heard*	
aud-īrēris *or* aud-īrēre	*thou wouldst be heard*	(*if*) *I were being heard* (*in order that*) *I might* *be heard*
aud-īrētur,	*he would be heard*	
aud-īrēmur,	*we should be heard*	(*so that*) *I was heard*
aud-īrēminī,	*ye would be heard*	(*when, although,* etc.)
aud-īrentur,	*they would be heard*	*I was being heard*

PERFECT TENSE.

audīt-us sim		
audīt-us sīs		(*if*) *I were to have been* *heard*
audīt-us sit	rare in principal	(*so that*) *I was heard*
audīt-ī sīmus	sentences	*or have been heard*
audīt-ī sītis		(*although*) *I have been*
audīt-ī sint		*heard*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

audīt-us essem,	*I should have been heard*	
audīt-us essēs,	*thou wouldst have been heard*	(*if*) *I had been heard*
audīt-us esset,	*he would have been heard*	(*when, although,* etc.)
audīt-ī essēmus,	*we should have been heard*	*I had been heard*
audīt-ī essētis,	*ye would have been heard*	
audīt-ī essent,	*they would have been heard*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

aud-īre,	*be (thou) heard*	aud-īminī,	*be (ye) heard*

FUTURE TENSE.

aud-ītor,	*thou must be heard*
aud-ītor,	*he must be heard* aud-iuntor, *they must be heard*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT :	aud-īrī,	*to be heard*
PERFECT :	audīt-us esse,	*to have been heard*
FUTURE :	audītum īrī,	*to be about to be heard*

THIRD CONJUGATION, WITH THE SHORT-I FORMS
OF THE FOURTH.

§ 147. MODEL: cap-iō, *I take*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: cap-iō, cēp-ī, capt-um.

BASES: cap- (present); cēp- (perfect); capt- (supine).

PARTI- ⎧ PRESENT : cap-iens (gen. capient-is), *taking*
CIPLES ⎩ FUTURE : capt-ūrus, capt-ūra, capt-ūrum, *about to take*

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.		SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
PRESENT. (*I take.*)		**PRESENT.** (*I should take.*)	
cap-iō	cap-imus	cap-iam	cap-iāmus
cap-is	cap-itis	cap-iās	cap-iātis
cap-it	cap-iunt	cap-iat	cap-iant
IMPERFECT. (*I was taking.*)		**IMPERFECT.** (*I should be taking.*)	
cap-iēbam	cap-iēbāmus		
cap-iēbās	cap-iēbātis	cap-erem	cap-erēmus
cap-iēbat	cap-iēbant	cap-erēs	cap-erētis
FUTURE. (*I shall take.*)		cap-eret	cap-erent
cap-iam	cap-iēmus	**PERFECT.**	
cap-iēs	cap-iētis	cēp-erim	cēp-erimus
cap-iet	cap-ient	cēp-eris	cēp-eritis
PERFECT. (*I took* or *have taken.*)		cēp-erit	cēp-erint
cēp-ī	cēp-imus	**PLUPERFECT.** (*I should have taken.*)	
cēp-istī	cēp-istis		
cēp-it	cēp-ērunt *or* cēp-ēre	cēp-issem	cēp-issēmus
PLUPERFECT. (*I had taken.*)		cēp-issēs	cēp-issētis
cēp-eram	cēp-erāmus	cēp-isset	cēp-issent
cēp-erās	cēp-erātis	IMPERATIVE MOOD.	
cēp-erat	cēp-erant	**PRESENT.** (*Take.*)	
FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have taken.*)		cap-e	cap-ite
		FUTURE. (*Thou shalt or must take.*)	
cēp-erō	cēp-erimus		
cēp-eris	cēp-eritis	cap-itō	cap-itōte
cēp-erit	cēp-erint	cap-itō	cap-iuntō

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFINITIVE.	GERUND.
PRESENT : cap-ere, *to take*	(*Nom.* cap-iendum)
PERFECT : cēp-isse, *to have taken*	*Acc.* cap-iendum, *taking*
FUTURE : captūr-us esse, *to be about to take*	*Gen.* cap-iendī
	Dat. cap-iendō
	Abl. cap-iendō

SUPINE

Acc. capt-um, *to take*	*Abl.* capt-ū, *in taking*

PASSIVE VOICE.

PARTICI-PLES {

PERFECT : **capt-us, capt-a, capt-um,** *taken* or *having been taken*

GERUNDIVE : **cap-iendus, cap-ienda, cap-iendum,** *fit to be taken*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I am taken.*)

cap-ior	cap-imur
cap-eris	cap-imini
cap-itur	cap-iuntur

IMPERFECT. (*I was being taken.*)

cap-iēbar	cap-iēbāmur
cap-iēbāris or	
cap-iēbāre	cap-iēbāminī
cap-iēbātur	cap-iēbantur

FUTURE. (*I shall be taken.*)

cap-iar	cap-iēmur
cap-iēris or	
cap-iēre	cap-iēminī
cap-iētur	cap-ientur

PERFECT. (*I was taken or have been taken.*)

capt-us sum	capt-ī sumus
capt-us es	capt-ī estis
capt-us est	capt-ī sunt

PLUPERFECT. (*I had been taken.*)

capt-us eram	capt-ī erāmus
capt-us erās	capt-ī erātis
capt-us erat	capt-ī erant

FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have been taken.*)

capt-us erō	capt-ī erimus
capt-us eris	capt-ī eritis
capt-us erit	capt-ī erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I am or may be taken.*)

cap-iar	cap-iāmur
cap-iāris or	
cap-iāre	cap-iāminī
cap-iātur	cap-iantur

IMPERFECT. (*I was or might be taken.*)

cap-erer	cap-erēmur
cap-erēris or	
cap-erēre	cap-erēminī
cap-erētur	cap-erentur

PERFECT.

capt-us sim	capt-ī sīmus
capt-us sīs	capt-ī sītis
capt-us sit	capt-ī sint

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have been taken.*)

capt-us essem	capt-ī essēmus
capt-us essēs	capt-ī essētis
capt-us esset	capt-ī essent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Be taken.*)

cap-ere	cap-iminī

FUTURE. (*Thou shalt* or *must be taken.*)

cap-itor	
cap-itor	cap-iuntor

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT : **cap-ī,** *to be taken*
PERFECT : **capt-us esse,** *to have been taken*
FUTURE : **captum īrī,** *to be about to be taken*

All verbs of the third conjugation (*i.e.* with pres. inf. act. ending in -ere) which in the pres. indic. act. end in -iō are conjugated like **capiō,** as also are deponents of the third conjugation ending in -ior. A list of these verbs is given in §§ 325, 330.

Obs. **Capiō** is conjugated like **audiō** in those parts in which the i of **audiō** is followed by a vowel, *i.e.* in which the i is short ; in other parts **capiō** is conjugated like **regō.**

§ 148.   Deponent Verbs.—First Conjugation.

Model: hortor, *I exhort.*

Principal Parts: hort-ārī, hortāt-us sum.

Bases: hort- (present); hortāt- (supine).

PARTICIPLES

Present: hort-ans (gen. hortant-is), *exhorting*
Future: hortāt-ūrus, hortāt-ūra, hortāt-ūrum, *about to exhort*
Perfect: hortāt-us, hortāt-a, hortāt-um, *having exhorted*
Gerundive: hort-andus, hort-anda, hort-andum, *fit to be exhorted*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.   (*I exhort.*)

hort-or	hort-āmur
hort-āris *or* -āre	hort-āminī
hort-ātur	hort-antur

Imperfect.   (*I was exhorting.*)

hort-ābar	hort-ābāmur
hort-ābāris *or*	
hort-ābāre	hort-ābāminī
hort-ābātur	hort-ābantur

Future.   (*I shall exhort.*)

hort-ābor	hort-ābimur
hort-āberis *or*	
hort-ābere	hort-ābiminī
hort-ābitur	hort-ābuntur

Perfect.   (*I exhorted* or *have exhorted.*)

hortāt-us sum	hortāt-ī sumus
hortāt-us es	hortāt-ī estis
hortāt-us est	hortāt-ī sunt

Pluperfect.   (*I had exhorted.*)

hortāt-us eram	hortāt-ī erāmus
hortāt-us erās	hortāt-ī erātis
hortāt-us erat	hortāt-ī erant

Future-Perfect.   (*I shall have exhorted.*)

hortāt-us erō	hortāt-ī erimus
hortāt-us eris	hortāt-ī eritis
hortāt-us erit	hortāt-ī erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.   (*I should exhort.*)

hort-er	hort-ēmur
hort-ēris *or*	
hort-ēre	hort-ēminī
hort-ētur	hort-entur

Imperfect.   (*I should be exhorting.*)

hort-ārer	hort-ārēmur
hort-ārēris *or*	
hort-ārēre	hort-ārēminī
hort-ārētur	hort-ārentur

Perfect.

hortāt-us sim	hortāt-ī sīmus
hortāt-us sīs	hortāt-ī sītis
hortāt-us sit	hortāt-ī sint

Pluperfect.   (*I should have exhorted.*)

hortāt-us essem	hortāt-ī essēmus
hortāt-us essēs	hortāt-ī essētis
hortāt-us esset	hortāt-ī essent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present.   (*Exhort.*)

hort-āre	hort-āminī

Future.   (*Thou shalt* or *must exhort.*)

hort-ātor	
hort-ātor	hort-antor

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFINITIVE.

Present: hort-ārī, *to exhort*
Perfect: hortāt-us esse, *to have exhorted*
Future: hortātūr-us esse, *to be about to exhort*

GERUND.

(*Nom.* hort-andum)
Acc. hort-andum, *exhorting*
Gen. hort-andī
Dat. hort-andō
Abl. hort-andō

SUPINE.

Acc. hortāt-um, *to exhort* | *Abl.* hortāt-ū, *in exhorting*

§ 149.　DEPONENT VERBS.—SECOND CONJUGATION.

MODEL: **vereor,** *I fear.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **ver-ērī, verit-us sum.**

BASES: **ver-** (present); **verit-** (supine).

PRESENT:	**ver-ens** (gen. **verent-is**), *fearing*	
FUTURE:	**verit-ûrus, verit-ûra, verit-ûrum,** *about to fear*	
PERFECT:	**verit-us, verit-a, verit-um,** *having feared*	
GERUNDIVE:	**ver-endus, ver-enda, ver-endum,** *fit to be feared*	

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I fear.*)

ver-eor,	**ver-ēmur**
ver-ēris *or* **ver-ēre**	**ver-ēminī**
ver-ētur	**ver-entur**

IMPERFECT. (*I was fearing.*)

ver-ēbar	**ver ēbāmur**
ver-ēbāris *or*	
ver-ēbāre	**ver-ēbāminī**
ver-ēbātur	**ver-ēbantur**

FUTURE. (*I shall fear.*)

ver-ēbor	**ver-ēbimur**
ver-ēberis *or*	
ver ēbere	**ver-ēbiminī**
ver-ēbitur	**ver-ēbuntur**

PERFECT. (*I feared* or *have feared.*)

verit-us sum	**verit-ī sumus**
verit-us es	**verit-ī estis**
verit-us est	**verit-ī sunt**

PLUPERFECT. (*I had feared.*)

verit-us eram	**verit-ī erāmus**
verit-us erās	**verit-ī erātis**
verit-us erat	**verit-ī erant**

FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have feared.*)

verit-us erō	**verit-ī erimus**
verit-us eris	**verit ī eritis**
verit-us erit	**verit-ī erunt**

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I should fear.*)

ver-ear	**ver-eāmur**
ver-eāris *or*	
ver-eāre	**ver-eāminī**
ver-eātur	**ver-eantur**

IMPERFECT. (*I should be fearing.*)

ver-ērer	**ver-ērēmur**
ver-ērēris *or*	
ver-ērēre	**ver-ērēminī**
ver-ērētur	**ver-ērentur**

PERFECT.

verit-us sim	**verit-ī sīmus**
verit-us sīs	**verit-ī sītis**
verit-us sit	**verit-ī sint**

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have feared.*)

verit-us essem	**verit-ī essēmus**
verit-us essēs	**verit-ī essētis**
verit-us esset	**verit-ī essent**

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Fear.*)

ver-ēre	**ver-ēminī**

FUTURE. (*Thou shalt* or *must fear.*)

ver-ētor	
ver-ētor	**ver-entor**

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: **ver-ērī,** *to fear*
PERFECT: **verit-us esse,** *to have feared*
FUTURE: **veritûr-us esse,** *to be about to fear*

GERUND.

(*Nom.* **ver-endum**)
Acc. **ver endum,** *fearing*
Gen. **ver-endī**
Dat. **ver-endō**
Abl. **ver-endō**

SUPINE.

Acc. **verit-um,** *to fear*　|　*Abl.* **verit-û,** *in fearing*

§ 150.   DEPONENT VERBS.—THIRD CONJUGATION.

MODEL: **loquor,** *I speak.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **loquī, locūt-us sum.**

BASES: **loqu-** (present); **locūt-** (supine).

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT:	**loqu-ens** (gen. **loquent-is**), *speaking*
FUTURE:	**locūt-ūrus, locūt-ūra, locūt-ūrum,** *about to speak*
PERFECT:	**locūt-us, locūt-a, locūt-um,** *having spoken*
GERUNDIVE:	**loqu-endus, loqu-enda, loqu-endum,** *fit to be spoken*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.   (*I speak.*)

loqu-or	loqu-imur
loqu-eris *or*	
loqu-ere	loqu-iminī
loqu-itur	loqu-untur

IMPERFECT.   (*I was speaking.*)

loqu-ēbar	loqu-ēbāmur
loqu-ēbāris *or*	
loqu-ēbāre	loqu-ēbāminī
loqu-ēbātur	loqu-ēbantur

FUTURE.   (*I shall speak.*)

loqu-ar	loqu-ēmur
loqu-ēris *or*	
loqu-ēre	loqu-ēminī
loqu-ētur	loqu-entur

PERFECT.   (*I spoke or have spoken.*)

locūt-us sum	locūt-ī sumus
locūt-us es	locūt-ī estis
locūt-us est	locūt-ī sunt

PLUPERFECT.   (*I had spoken.*)

locūt-us eram	locūt-ī erāmus
locūt-us erās	locūt-ī erātis
locūt-us erat	locūt-ī erant

FUTURE-PERFECT.   (*I shall have spoken.*)

locūt-us erō	locūt-ī erimus
locūt-us eris	locūt-ī eritis
locūt-us erit	locūt-ī erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.   (*I should speak.*)

loqu-ar	loqu-āmur
loqu-āris *or*	
loqu-āre	loqu-āminī
loqu-ātur	loqu-antur

IMPERFECT.   (*I should be speaking.*)

loqu-erer	loqu-erēmur
loqu-erēris *or*	
loqu-erēre	loqu-erēminī
loqu-erētur	loqu-erentur

PERFECT.

locūt-us sim	locūt-ī sīmus
locūt-us sīs	locūt-ī sītis
locūt-us sit	locūt-ī sint

PLUPERFECT.   (*I should have spoken.*)

locūt-us essem	locūt-ī essēmus
locūt-us essēs	locūt-ī essētis
locūt-us esset	locūt-ī essent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.   (*Speak.*)

loqu-ere	loqu-iminī

FUTURE.   (*Thou shalt or must speak.*)

loqu-itor	
loqu-itor	loqu-untor

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT : **loqu-ī,** *to speak*
PERFECT : **locūt-us esse,** *to have spoken*
FUTURE : **locūt-ūr-us esse,** *to be about to speak*

GERUND.

(*Nom.*	**loqu-endum**)
Acc.	**loqu-endum,** *speaking*
Gen.	**loqu-endī**
Dat.	**loqu-endō**
Abl.	**loqu-endō**

SUPINE.

Acc. **locūt-um,** *to speak* | *Abl.* **locūt-ū,** *in speaking*

§ 151.   DEPONENT VERBS.—FOURTH CONJUGATION.

MODEL: **partior,** *I divide.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **part-īrī, partīt-us sum.**

BASES: **part-** (present); **partīt-** (supine).

PARTICIPLES		
PRESENT :	**part-iens** (gen. **partient-is**), *dividing*	
FUTURE :	**partīt-ūrus, partīt-ūra, partīt-ūrum,** *about to divide*	
PERFECT :	**partīt-us, partīt-a, partīt-um,** *having divided*	
GERUNDIVE:	**part-iendus, part-ienda, part-iendum,** *fit to be divided*	

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I divide*).

part-ior	part-īmur
part-īris *or*	
part-īre	part-īminī
part-ītur	part-iuntur

IMPERFECT. (*I was dividing.*)

part-iēbar	part-iēbāmur
part-iēbāris *or*	
part-iēbāre	part-iēbāminī
part-iēbātur	part-iēbantur

FUTURE. (*I shall divide.*)

part-iar	part-iēmur
part-iēris *or*	
part-iēre	part-iēminī
part-iētur	part-ientur

PERFECT. (*I divided* or *have divided.*)

partīt-us sum	partīt-ī sumus
partīt-us es	partīt-ī estis
partīt-us est	partīt-ī sunt

PLUPERFECT. (*I had divided.*)

partīt-us eram	partīt-ī erāmus
partīt-us erās	partīt-ī erātis
partīt-us erat	partīt-ī erant

FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have divided.*)

partīt-us erō	partīt-ī erimus
partīt-us eris	partīt-ī eritis
partīt-us erit	partīt-ī erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.   (*I should divide.*)

part-iar	part-iāmur
part-iāris *or*	
part-iāre	part-iāminī
part-iātur	part-iantur

IMPERFECT. (*I should be dividing.*)

part-īrer	part-īrēmur
part-īrēris *or*	
part-īrēre	part-īrēminī
part-īrētur	part-īrentur

PERFECT.

partīt-us sim	partīt-ī sīmus
partīt-us sīs	partīt-ī sītis
partīt-us sit	partīt-ī sint

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have divided.*)

partīt-us essem	partīt-ī essēmus
partīt-us essēs	partīt-ī essētis
partīt-us esset	partīt-ī essent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.   (*Divide.*)

part-īre	part-īminī

FUTURE.   (*Thou shalt* or *must divide.*)

part-ītor	
part-ītor	part-iuntor

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT : **part-īrī,** *to divide*
PERFECT : **partīt-us esse,** *to have divided*
FUTURE : **partītūr-us esse,** *to be about to divide*

GERUND.

(*Nom.* **part-iendum**)
Acc. **part-iendum,** *dividing*
Gen. **part-iendī**
Dat. **part-iendō**
Abl. **part-iendō**

SUPINE.

Acc. **partīt-um,** *to divide*   *Abl.* **partīt-ū,** *in dividing*

LESSON 37.

THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

Learn the indicative and imperative active of **amō** (p. 64); also the present and imperfect subjunctive active (p. 65).

Read over what is said on pp. 60, 61 about the Four Regular Conjugations.

QUESTIONS.

152. A question may be introduced in Latin as in English by some interrogative adjective, pronoun, or adverb; *e.g.* **quantus ?** *how great ?* **quis ?** *who ?* **cūr ?** *why ?*

cūr templa spoliātis ?   *why are you pillaging the temples?*

153. If no such interrogative word is used to introduce the question, Latin employs an **interrogative particle** :

> **nonne,** expecting the answer " yes " ;
> **num,** expecting the answer " no " ;
> **-ne,** simply asking for information.

num barbarōrum Rōmulus rex fuit ?   *Romulus was not a king of barbarians, was he ?*

nonne Rōmānōrum Rōmulus rex fuit ?   *was not Romulus king of the Romans ?*

154. The particle -ne is enclitic, *i.e.* it cannot stand by itself (cp. -que, Vocabulary 8, *Obs.*), but is appended to the first word in the sentence or clause. This word must be that on which emphasis is laid in asking the question.

superāvitne Caesar Nerviōs ?   *did Caesar overcome the Nervii ?*

Caesarne Nerviōs superāvit ?   *was it Caesar who overcame the Nervii ?*

Nerviosne superāvit Caesar ?   *was it the Nervii whom Caesar overcame ?*

NOTE.—For the purpose of accentuation (§ 4) -ne is regarded as forming part of the word to which it is appended ; *e.g.* **superāvi'tne.**

Learn Vocabulary 37 (p. 87).

VOCABULARY 37.

ēmend-ō, -āre, *amend, correct.*
lēgātiō, lēgātiōn-is, *f., embassy.*
lēgāt-us, -ī, *m.* (legate), *ambassador, lieutenant.*
mercātor, mercātōr-is, *m., merchant.*
mōs, mōr-is, *m., manner, custom ;* pl. *morals, manners, character.*

ōrātiō, ōrātiōn-is, *f., oration, speech.*
popul-us, -ī, *m.* (popular), *people.*
quāl-is, -e, (quality), *what kind of ?*
regn-ō, -āre, *reign.*
repudi-ō, -āre, *reject.*
suppedit-ō, -āre, *supply, provide.*

LESSON 38.

Revise the present and imperfect subjunctive active of **amō** (p. 65).

DEPENDENT QUESTIONS.

155. A dependent question is not a question that is then and there asked, but one that is reported or mentioned. The question-clause is in dependence on a principal sentence which may be a statement, a question, or a command.

156. The left-hand column below gives examples of sentences containing dependent questions ; the right-hand column gives the same questions in a direct or independent form :—

I know *what he is doing.*   What is he doing ?
Can you guess *which book I am reading ?*   Which book am I reading ?
Tell me *when they will arrive.*   When will they arrive ?
He asked me *if I was well.*   Are you well ?
It is impossible to say *whether he is at home or no.*   Is he at home or no ?

From the above examples it will be seen that direct questions which are introduced by some interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb (e.g. *what ? which ? when ?*) retain this interrogative word when they become dependent ; other questions when they become dependent are introduced by *if* or *whether*. If the principal verb is in a past tense, the verb in the dependent question is also past.

157. It is often impossible to tell by the form of the dependent clause whether it is a dependent question or no, as a relative or conditional clause may be of exactly the same form as a dependent question ; compare the following with the sentences given in § 156 :—

> I don't approve of *what he is doing.*
> I will let you see the book *which I am reading.*
> Go to meet them *when they arrive.*
> I used always to walk *if I was well.*
> Have you made up your mind to call *whether he is at home or no ?*

In order to distinguish between dependent questions and clauses such as the above, it is well to consider the character of the principal sentence : a dependent question usually depends on some expression of *wondering, enquiring, knowing,* or *telling.*

Note.—Occasionally, however, it may happen that neither the nature of the principal verb nor the form of the dependent clause enables us to decide whether the latter is a dependent question or a relative clause.   Take for instance the sentence

> I saw *what he had in his basket.*

If the meaning is " I saw that which he had in his basket," the clause is relative ; if the meaning is " I got to know what he had in his basket," the clause is a dependent question (direct form, " what has he in his basket ? ").

158. In Latin a dependent question is introduced either (*a*) by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or (*b*) by one of the particles **-ne, num** (*if* or *whether*), **nonne** (*if* or *whether . . . not*).   Of these, **num** is the commonest, and in a dependent question does not imply that a negative answer is expected.

159. In **dependent questions** in Latin the verb stands in the **subjunctive** mood.   In deciding which tense of the subjunctive to use the choice between imperfect and perfect must be made in accordance with the rule as to the sequence of tenses given on the next page ; beyond this the meaning will afford sufficient guidance.

160. For the purposes of the rule given in § 161 tenses are divided into two classes : **primary** tenses and **historic** tenses :—

<div align="center">PRIMARY.</div>

Indicative and Imperative.	Subjunctive.
Present.	Present.
Future.	Perfect.
Perfect (with Present- Perfect meaning).	
Future-Perfect.	

<div align="center">HISTORIC.</div>

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Imperfect.	Imperfect.
Perfect (with past meaning).	Pluperfect.
Pluperfect.	

Obs.—The perfect indicative is said to be used with " present perfect " meaning when it answers to the English present-perfect, *e.g.* **amāvī,** *I have loved,* and is said to be used with a " past " meaning when, as is usually the case, it answers to the English past tense, *e.g.* **amāvī,** *I loved.* Even when used with present-perfect meaning it often has historic sequence.

161. RULE.—A primary tense in the principal sentence requires a primary tense of the subjunctive in the dependent clause, and an historic tense in the principal sentence requires an historic tense of the subjunctive in the dependent clause.

162. Examples of dependent questions representing a direct question in which the verb is in the **present** tense.

Direct question—

aedificantne Gallī oppidum ?   *are the Gauls building a town ?*

(*a*) Primary sequence : dependent verb in present **sub-junctive.**

rogō, *I ask*	
rogābō, *I shall ask*	
rogāvī, *I have asked* ·	**num Gallī oppidum aedificent.**
rogāverō, *I shall have asked*	*whether the Gauls are building a town.*
rogā, *ask*	
rogēmus, *let us ask*	

(b) Historic sequence : dependent verb in **imperfect** subjunctive.

rogābam, *I was asking* ⎫ num Gallī oppidum aedificārent.
rogāvī, *I asked*   ⎬ *whether the Gauls were building a town.*
rogāveram, *I had asked* ⎭

Learn Vocabulary 38.

VOCABULARY 38.

aegrōt-ō, -āre, *be ill.*
Gallic-us, -a, -um, *Gallic.*
ignōr-ō, -āre (ignorant), *not to know, be unaware.*
labor, labōr-is, m., *labour.*
obses, obsid-is, c., *hostage.*

quandō, adv., *when ?*
quant-us, -a, -um, *how great ?*
quō, adv., *whither ?*
rog-ō, -āre, *ask.*
ubi or ubī, adv., *where ?*

LESSON 39.

Learn the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive active of amō ; also the future participle (p. 65).

DEPENDENT QUESTIONS (*continued*).

163. Examples of dependent questions representing a direct question in which the verb is in a past tense.

Direct question—

vastābantne Gallī agrōs ?   *were the Gauls laying waste the fields ?*

vastāvēruntne Gallī agrōs ?   *did the Gauls lay waste* ⎫
                                  have the Gauls laid ⎬ *the fields*
                                  waste ⎭

(a) Primary sequence : dependent verb in **perfect sub-**junctive.

rogō, *I ask*   ⎫
rogābō, *I shall ask*   ⎪ num Gallī agrōs vastāverint.
rogāvī, *I have asked*   ⎪ *whether the Gauls were laying*
rogāverō, *I shall have asked* ⎬ *waste, laid waste, or have laid*
rogā, *ask*   ⎪ *waste the fields.*
rogēmus, *let us ask*   ⎭

(b) Historic sequence : dependent verb in **pluperfect** subjunctive.

rogābam, *I was asking* ⎫ num Gallī agrōs vastāvissent.
rogāvī, *I asked*   ⎬ *whether the Gauls had been laying waste*
rogāveram, *I had asked* ⎭ *or had laid waste the fields.*

164. Examples of dependent questions representing a direct question in which the verb is in the **future** tense.

Direct question—

quandō Caesar Gallōs superābit ?   *when will Caesar overcome the Gauls ?*

(*a*) Primary sequence : dependent verb expressed by **future participle** and **present subjunctive of sum.**

rogō, *I ask*
rogābō, *I shall ask*
rogāvī, *I have asked*   **quandō Caesar Gallōs superātūrus**
rogāverō, *I shall have asked*   **sit.**
rogā, *ask*   *when Caesar will overcome the*
rogēmus, *let us ask*   *Gauls.*

(*b*) Historic sequence : dependent verb expressed by **future participle** and **imperfect subjunctive of sum.**

rogābam, *I was asking*   **quandō Caesar Gallōs superātūrus esset.**
rogāvī, *I asked*
rogāveram, *I had asked*   *when Caesar would overcome the Gauls.*

Learn Vocabulary 39.

VOCABULARY 39.

conclām-ō, -āre, *shout (together).*
coniūr-ō, -āre, *conspire.*
dēplōr-ō, -āre, *deplore, lament.*
dīmic-ō, -āre, *fight a pitched battle.*
fortiter, adv., *bravely.*
hiem-ō, -āre, *pass the winter,*
iact-ō, -āre, *throw, hurl.*

lapis, lapid-is, *m.* (lapidary), *stone.*
lībertās, lībertāt-is, *f., liberty.*
monstr-ō, -āre (demonstrate), *show.*
reciper-ō, -āre, *recover, regain.*
sign-um, -ī, *n., sign, standard.*

LESSON 40.
THE INFINITIVE.

Learn the infinitive active of **amō** (p. 65).

165. The infinitive, being a verbal substantive, may stand as the subject of a sentence.

ambulāre aestāte grātum est   *walking is pleasant in summer,* or *in summer it is pleasant to walk*

166. The infinitive, being a verbal form, is modified by an adverb.

lentē ambulāre aestāte grātum est   *it is pleasant to walk slowly in summer*

DEPENDENT STATEMENTS.

167. A dependent statement is not one that is then and there made, but one that is reported or mentioned. The principal sentence which introduces the dependent statement may be a statement, a question, or a command, just as was seen to be the case with a principal sentence introducing a dependent question.

168. The left-hand column below gives examples of sentences containing dependent statements ; the right-hand column gives the same statements in a direct or independent form :—

I know (that) he is doing nothing.	He is doing nothing.
You told me (that) they would arrive soon.	They will arrive soon.
He said (that) he was quite well, but had been very ill.	I am quite well, but have been very ill.
Do you think (that) we shall win ?	We shall win.
Did you think (that) we should win ?	We shall win.
Tell him (that) you will go.	I will go.
Let us suppose (that) this is so.	This is so.

169. A dependent statement usually depends on some verb or phrase* denoting *feeling, seeing, thinking, knowing, saying, promising, threatening* ; also verbs of *hoping*.

170. The dependent statement may or may not be preceded by the conjunction *that* ; but even if this conjunction is used the clause is not necessarily a dependent statement. The following sentences, for instance, do NOT contain dependent statements :—

> Take care *that you do not make a mistake.*
> Many work *that they may grow rich.*
> Some work so hard *that they have no leisure.*

---

* Among such phrases all impersonal constructions such as the following are included : " it is said," " it is certain," " it is probable," " it is agreed."

171. A dependent statement may be recognised as such (i) by its being possible to reproduce from it the corresponding direct statement, and (ii) by the principal sentence serving to report or mention this statement.

172. In Latin a dependent statement is expressed by means of the construction known as the **accusative and infinitive,** in which the subject is in the accusative case and the verb in the infinitive mood.

Thus, just as in English, instead of saying " I consider (that) he is an honourable man " we may say " I consider **him to be** an honourable man." so in Latin we must always say **putō hunc honestum esse.**

173. (*a*) The **present infinitive** is used when the action of the dependent statment is **contemporaneous** with that of the introductory verb, *i.e.* when the **present** tense would be used in the direct statement.

Direct Statement $\begin{cases} \textbf{Caesar appropinquat.} \\ \textit{Caesar is approaching} \text{ or } \textit{approaches.} \end{cases}$

Sentence containing Dependent Statement.

nuntiant, *they announce*
nuntiābunt, *they will announce* $\left.\right\}$ **Caesarem appropinquāre.**
nuntiāvērunt, *they have announced*   *that Caesar is approaching*
nuntiāverint, *they will have announced*   or *approaches.*

nuntiābant, *they were announcing* $\left.\right\}$ **Caesarem appropinquāre.**
nuntiāvērunt, *they announced*   *that Caesar was approaching*
nuntiāverant, *they had announced*   or *approached.*

(*b*) The **perfect infinitive** is used when the action of the dependent statement is **prior** to that of the introductory verb, *i.e.* when a **past tense** would be used in the direct statement.

Direct Statement.

Caesar appropinquābat   *Caesar was approaching*
                    or
Caesar appropinquāvīt   *Caesar (has) approached*

Sentence containing Dependent Statement.

nuntiant, *they announce*
nuntiābunt, *they will announce* $\left.\right\}$ **Caesarem appropinquāvisse.**
nuntiāverunt, *they have announced*   *that Caesar has approached.*
nuntiāverint, *they will have announced*

nuntiābant, *they were announcing* ⎫ **Caesarem appropinquāvisse.**
nuntiāvērunt, *they announced* ⎬
nuntiāverant, *they had announced* ⎭ *that Caesar had approached.*

(c) The **future infinitive** is used when the action of the dependent statement is **subsequent** to that of the introductory verb, *i.e.* when the **future** tense would be used in the direct statement.

DIRECT STATEMENT ⎰ **Caesar appropinquābit.**
                   ⎱ *Caesar will approach.*

SENTENCE·CONTAINING DEPENDENT STATEMENT.

nuntiant, *they announce* ⎫ **Caesarem appropinquātū-**
nuntiābunt, *they will announce* ⎬   **rum esse.**
nuntiāvērunt, *they have announced* ⎬
nuntiāverint, *they will have announced*⎭*that Caesar will approach.*

nuntiābant, *they were announcing* ⎫ **Caesarem appropinquātūrum**
nuntiāvērunt, *they announced* ⎬   **esse.**
nuntiāverant, *they had announced* ⎭ *that Caesar would approach.*

174. The rule that the **tense** of the infinitive is present, perfect, or future according as a present, past, or future tense of the indicative would have been used in the corresponding direct statement must be carefully borne in mind in translating into Latin such sentences as " He said (that) he was quite well, but had been very ill," because in English a present or present-perfect tense in the direct form (" I am quite well, but have been very ill ") becomes past or past-perfect in the dependent form if the principal verb is past : **no such change of tense** occurs in Latin.

Learn Vocabulary 40.

<div align="center">VOCABULARY 40.</div>

audacter, adv., *boldly.*
cert-us, -a, -um, *certain.*
crēdibil-is, -e, *credible.*
dictit-ō, -āre, *say frequently.*
facil-is, -e (facility), *easy.*

mund-us, -ī, *m.* (mundane), *world.*
neg-ō, -āre (negative), *deny, say . . . not.*
vērīsimil-is, -e (verisimilitude), *probable.*

LESSON 41.
THE GERUND.

Learn the gerund of **amō** (p. 65).

175. The **gerund** is an abstract substantive of neuter gender declined in the singular only ; it expresses the action denoted by the verb, *e.g.* **amandum,** *loving,* i.e. *the act of loving,* and corresponds to the English gerund, a verbal noun in *-ing* (*e.g.* " I take exercise by *walking* "), which originally ended in *-ung,* and so was distinct in form from the present participle which ended in *-ende* and with which the gerund is now often confused.

Obs.—The nominative of the gerund is not, as a rule, found except in the case of intransitive verbs ; it is therefore included in brackets ( ) in the tables of the regular conjugations.

NOTE.—The gerund, being a verbal form, is modified by an adverb, and in the case of transitive verbs the genitive and ablative gerund (but not the accusative or dative) may govern a direct object in the accusative case ; cp. the first example in § 177.

176. RULE.—The **gerund** of an **intransitive** verb is used with **est, erat,** etc., in the nominative singular to express *duty* or *necessity.* The person concerned is put in the dative case.

nōbīs ambulandum est   *we must walk*

177. RULE.—The **genitive** of the **gerund** is frequently used in dependence on substantives and adjectives expressing *fondness* or *desire,* and with the ablatives **grātiā, causā,** *for the sake of, on account of.*

equitēs c u p i d ī sunt agrōs lātē v a s t a n d ī	*the horsemen are desirous of laying waste the fields far and wide*
Catilīna regnandī grātiā peccāvit	*Catilina sinned for the sake of reigning*

Learn Vocabulary 41.

VOCABULARY 41.

ars, art-is, *f., art.*
caus-ā, abl. (with gen.), *for the sake of, on account of.*
cupīdō, cupīdin-is, *f., desire.*

grāti-a, -ae, *f., favour.*
grātiā, abl. (with gen.), *for the sake of, on account of.*
salūtār-is, -e, *salutary, beneficial.*

LESSON 42.

ACTIVE PARTICIPLES.

Learn the active participles of **amō** (p. 65).

178. There are two active participles in Latin : (*a*) the **present** participle, declined like **prūdens**, § 69 ; (*b*) the **future** participle, declined like **bonus**, § 36.

Obs. 1.—The perfect participle active is wanting in the Latin verb.

Obs. 2.—In translating English into Latin the learner must use participles with caution, and in accordance with the rules given here and elsewhere in this book : an English participle (especially a present participle) is often rendered in Latin by some other part of the verb.

179. The present participle is sometimes used to express a class of persons ; *e.g.* **aegrōtantēs**, *people who are ill.*

180. The future participle is combined with some parts of the verb **sum**, and is then variously translated ; *e.g.* **pugnātūrus sum**, *I am about to fight, I purpose to fight, I am likely to fight, I am destined to fight.*

Learn Vocabulary 42.

VOCABULARY 42.

advent-ō, āre (advent), *be on the point of arriving.*
ardor, ardōr-is, *m.* (ardour), *heat.*
cōgit-ō, -āre (cogitate), *meditate.*
for-um, -ī, *n., market-place.*
hūmān-us, -a, -um, *human.*
impet-us, -ūs, *m., attack.*
integrātiō, integrātiōn-is, *f., renewal.*

īr-a, -ae, *f., anger.*
iterum, adv. (iterate), *again, a second time.*
ōti-um, -ī, *n., ease, rest.*
sollicitūdō, sollicitūdin-is, *f.* (solicitous), *anxiety.*
tēlum, -ī, *n., weapon, javelin.*
trucīd-ō, -āre, *butcher.*

LESSON 43.

Learn the present and imperfect indicative active and the imperative active of **moneō** (pp. 66, 67).

181. Just as the first conjugation is also called the **A** conjugation, on account of its characteristic vowel, so the second conjugation is known as the **E** conjugation.   It will be noticed that in the present and imperfect indicative (except in the first person singular of the present), the second conjugation differs from the first only in the vowel immediately following the base.   The same remark applies to the future indicative, to the imperfect subjunctive, to the imperative, and to the present infinitive, present participle, and gerund.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

182. A conditional sentence consists of two parts : (1) a dependent clause usually introduced by *if* in English and by **sī** in Latin, stating the condition and called the **protasis** ; and (2) the principal sentence, called the **apodosis**, relating to some action the occurrence of which is to be regarded as depending on the fulfilment of the condition.   The apodosis may be either a statement, a question, or a command, thus—

If it rains, { I shall stop at home.
{ will you stop at home ?
{ stop at home.

183. A negative protasis may be introduced by **sī . . . nōn**, *if not*, or by **nisi**, *unless*.

184. When neither of the auxiliaries *should, would* is used in the apodosis in English, the verb in both parts of the sentence is in the **indicative** mood in Latin, or (if the sense requires it) the imperative is used in the apodosis.

sī peccāvī, insciens peccāvī	*if I sinned* (or *have sinned*), *I sinned unwittingly*
sī putās mē aegrōtāre, errās	*if you think that I am ill, you are wrong*
sī tibī placet, huic aliquid dōnā	*if you please* (lit. *if it pleases you*), *give this man something*

J. L. C.

185. Note the tense of the infinitive in—

patrī pārēre dēbēs	*you ought to obey your father*
patrī pārēre dēbēbās	*you ought to have obeyed your father*

The irregularity here is not in the Latin, but in the English. *Ought* being a past form used with a present meaning, past time has to be expressed in English by the use of the present-perfect infinitive.

Learn Vocabulary 43.

VOCABULARY 43.

N.B.—In the case of verbs of which the infinitive ending only (-āre, -ēre) is given, it is to be assumed that they are conjugated throughout like **amō** or **moneō**; if a verb is defective (as **valeō**, below) or irregular in its principal parts, the fact is indicated.

abstin-eō, -ēre, abstinu-ī, abstent-um, *abstain.*

coerc-eō, -ēre (coerce), *control, curb.*

corpus, corpor-is, *n.* (corpse), *body.*

dēb-eō, -ēre (debit), *owe, ought.*

hab-eō, -ēre (habit), *have, hold, consider.*

ōrātiōnem habeō, *make a speech.*

insciens, inscient-is, *unwitting, unknowing.*

interrog-ō, -āre, *interrogate, question.*

lingu-a, -ae, *f.* (linguist), *tongue,*

mon-eō, -ēre, *warn, admonish.*

noc-eō, -ēre, *do harm, injure* (with dat.).

parens, parent-is, *c., parent.*

pār-eō, -ēre, *be obedient, obey* (with dat.).

plac-eō, -ēre, *be pleasing, please* (with dat.).

supplici-um, -ī, *n., punishment.*

tac-eō, -ēre (tacit), *be silent.*

terr-eō, -ēre, *terrify.*

val-eō, -ēre, valu-ī, —, (valid), *be well* or *strong.*

LESSON 44.

Learn the future, perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect indicative active of **moneō** (p. 66).

186. It will be seen that (as pointed out in § 181) in the future indicative of **moneō** the endings resemble those of the corresponding tense of **amō,** except that the characteristic vowel immediately following the base is **e,** not **a.**

The remaining tenses of the indicative are given in full in order that the learner may have the second conjugation before him complete. All that has to be remembered, however, is that the perfect base of the second conjugation is found by adding -u- to the present base (thus : infinitive **monēre**, present base **mon-**, perfect base **monu-**), unless otherwise stated ; **the personal endings of the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect tenses are the same for all verbs.**

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (*continued*).

187. Consider carefully the following—

sī hōc negābis, errābis	*if you deny this, you will be wrong*
sī hostēs superāveritis, vōbīs praemia dōnābō	*if you overcome the enemy, I will give you rewards*

In the case of the first sentence, the time of the *denying* is evidently future, although the English tense is the present ; in the case of the second sentence the *overcoming* not only belongs to future time, but must be accomplished before the rewards are given. Therefore the use of the future **negābis** and of the future-perfect **superāveritis** is natural and accurate ; the **English** use of the **present** tense in such sentences is **merely idiomatic** and must not be reproduced in Latin.

188. RULE.—Certain verbs like **doceō,** *I teach,* **rogō,** *I ask,* **cēlō,** *I keep in ignorance,* are often constructed with two accusatives, one of the person taught, asked, or kept in ignorance, the other of that which he is taught, for which he is asked, or about which he is kept in ignorance.

ōtium deōs rogō	*I ask the gods for leisure*
puerōs elementa docēbō	*I shall teach the boys their letters*
nōn cēlāvī tē sermōnem Titī	*I did not keep you in ignorance as to Titus' conversation*

Learn Vocabulary 44 (p. 100).

VOCABULARY 44.

cĕl-ō, -āre (conceal), *keep in igno-rance concerning.*

contin-eō, -ēre, continu-ī, con-tent-um, *contain, keep (in a place).*

dignitās, dignitāt-is, *f., dignity.*

doc-eō, -ēre, docu-ī, doct-um (doctor), *teach.*

eg-eō, -ēre, egu-ī, —, *need, be in need of* (with abl. or gen.).

ēloquenti-a, -ae, *f., eloquence.*

exerc-eō, -ēre, *exercise.*

Latīn-us, -a, -um, *Latin.*

mer-eō, -ēre, *merit, deserve.*

min-ae, -ārum, *f. pl., threats.*

offici-um, -ī, *n., duty.*

quōmodo, *adv., how ? by what means ?*

rēs publica, reī publicae, *f., state, commonwealth.*

retin-eō, -ēre, retinu-ī, retent-um, *retain.*

sustin-eō, -ēre, sustinu-ī, sus-tent-um, *sustain.*

tim-eō, -ēre, timu-ī, —, (timid), *fear.*

vix, *adv., scarcely, with difficulty.*

LESSON 45.

Learn the present and imperfect subjunctive active of **moneō** (p. 67).

It should be noted that the imperfect subjunctive active (first person singular) may always be found by adding **m** to the present infinitive active : *e.g.* **amāre, amārem ; monēre, monērem.**

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (*continued*).

189. Two kinds of conditional sentences have one or other of the auxiliaries *should* and *would* in the apodosis in English and either the present or imperfect subjunctive in both protasis[1] and apodosis in Latin.   Thus—

if you were to deny this, you would be wrong	**sī hōc negēs, errēs**
if I feared the enemy, I should not be fighting	**sī hostēs timērem, pugnārem**

[1] Occasionally the sense may admit the pluperfect subjunctive in the protasis (cp. § 192) ; *e.g.* **Sī tacuissem, ubī hodiē essēs?**   *If I had held my tongue, where would you be to-day ?*

190. In these conditional sentences, in which the apodosis in English has either *should* or *would*—

... the **present subjunctive** is used in Latin if the condition is represented as open to fulfilment (of course in the future), *e.g.* " If you were (at any time) to deny this, you would be wrong " ;

... the **imperfect subjunctive** is used in Latin if the condition is represented as unfulfilled in the present ; *e.g.* " If I (now) feared the enemy (but I do not fear them), I should not be fighting."

Learn Vocabulary 45.

Vocabulary 45.

curs-us, -ūs, *m.*, *course.*
exempl-um, -ī, *n.*, *example.*
exinde, adv., *thenceforth.*
iniūri-a, -ae, *f.*, *injury, act of violence.*
iac-eō, -ēre (adjacent), *lie, lie dead.*
iuss-um, -ī, *n.*, *command, order.*
mōt-us, -ūs, *m.*, *rising, revolt.*
pall-eo, -ēre, pallu-ī, —, *be pale.*

Pompēi-us, -ī, *m.*, *Pompeius, celebrated Roman general).*
praeb-eō, -ēre, *furnish, show, set.*
praedō, praedōn-is, *m.*, *robber, pirate.*
rub-eō, -ēre, rubu-ī, —, (ruby), *blush.*
ten-eō, -ēre, tenu-ī, tent-um, *hold.*
cursum teneō, *hold on one's course.*

LESSON 46.

Learn the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive active of **moneō** (p. 67).

It should be noted that the perfect subujnctive active is alway.; (except in the first person singular) identical in form with the future-perfect indicative active.

191. As in the indicative, so in the subjunctive, the perfect and pluperfect tenses have the same personal endings in all verbs. It should be noted that the pluperfect subjunctive active (first person singular) may always be found by adding **m** to the perfect infinitive active. *e.g.* **amāvisse, amāvissem ; monuisse, monuissem.**

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (*concluded*).

192. Conditional sentences having either of the auxiliaries *should have* or *would have* in the apodosis in English require the **pluperfect subjunctive** in both protasis[1] and apodosis in Latin. Thus—

<div style="margin-left:2em">

if I had feared the enemy, I   **sī hostēs t i m u i s s e m , nōn**
   should not have fought.   **pugnāvissem.**

</div>

Learn Vocabulary 46.

VOCABULARY 46.

clār-us, -a, -um, *famous, illustrious, renowned.*
displic-eō, -ēre, *displease* (w. dat.).
gubernātor, gubernātōr-is, *m.* (governor), *pilot.*
incolum-is, -e, *unhurt, safe and sound.*
insons, insont-is, *innocent.*
iūment-um, -i, *n.,baggage-animal.*
lat-eō, -ēre, latu-ī, —, (latent), *hide.*

litter-ae, -ārum, *f.pl., letters, literature.*
perterr-eō, -ēre, *to strike with panic.*
probr-um, -ī, *n., reproach.*
sīcāri-us, -ī, *m., assassin.*
statim, adv., *at once, immediately.*
stud-eō, -ēre, studu-ī, —, *devote oneself to* (with dat.).
stup-eō, -ēre, stupu-ī, —, *be aghast.*

LESSON 47.

Learn the infinitive, gerund, and participles active of **moneō** (p. 67.)

193. When *he, she, it,* or *they,* in a dependent statement or a dependent question refers to the subject of the principal sentence it must be translated by **sē** (§ 99) ; similarly **suus** (§ 102) is used in a dependent statement or a dependent question of that which belongs to the subject of the principal sentence, if this subject is in the third person.

<div style="margin-left:2em">

the queen denies that she (herself) is ill   **rēgīna negat sē aegrōtāre**

the merchant asked if his son was well   **mercātor rogāvit num fīlius s u u s valēret**

</div>

---

[1] Occasionally the sense may admit the imperfect subjunctive in the protasis (cp. § 189) ; *e.g.* **Nisi pater tuus essem, tacuissem,** *If I were not your father, I should have held my tongue.*

194. RULE.—Verbs of **hoping** are constructed with the **accusative and infinitive** ; and if the sense shows that the action hoped for is subsequent to the hoping, the **future** infinitive is used.

dux spērāvit sē hostēs superā-tūrum (esse).	*the general hoped to overcome the enemy.*
spērō mē ōrātiōnem habitūrum (esse).	*I hope to make a speech.*
spērō tē ōrātiōnem habitūrum (esse).	*I hope (that) you will make a speech.*
spērō tē valēre.	*I hope (that) you are well.*
spērō tē nōn doluisse.	*I hope (that) you were not grieved.*

Obs.—In the above examples **esse** is placed in brackets ( ), as it is often omitted, the future participle standing alone in place of the future infinitive active.

Learn Vocabulary 47.

VOCABULARY 47.

angu-is, -is, *m.,* snake.
appār-eō, -ēre, *appear.*
calamitās, calamitāt-is, *f.,* ca-lamity.
dēlect-us, -ūs, *m., levy* (of recruits).
dēlīber-ō, -āre, *deliberate.*
dol-eō, -ēre (dolorous), *grieve.*
flōr-eō, -ēre, flōru-ī, —, *flourish.*
fūnest-us, -a, -um, *baneful.*

Graeci-a, -ae, *f., Greece.*
laev-us, -a, -um, *left, on the left.*
molesti-ae, -ārum, *f.pl.* (molest), *annoyances.*
rīp-a, -ae, *f.* (riparian), *bank.*
senāt-us, -ūs, *m., senate.*
spēr-ō, -āre (desperate), *hope.*
vīt-ō, -āre (inevitable), *avoid.*

LESSON 48.

Learn the present and imperfect indicative and the imperative active of **regō** (pp. 68, 69).

195. The third conjugation is also known as the con-sonant conjugation, and is characterised by short vowels. In the imperfect indicative, however, **ē** is found immediately following the base, as in the second conjugation.

196. Rule.—The place whither motion is directed is expressed by the accusative with the preposition **ad,** *to,* or **in,** *into.*

Galli lēgātōs in Britanniam   *the Gauls send ambassadors to*
    mittunt   *Britain*

But no preposition is used if the goal is

    (*a*) the name of a town, or of an island small enough to be regarded as one place ;

    (*b*) the words **domum,** *home,* **rūs,** *the country* (and a few others) ;

B r u n d i s i u m ad Caesarem   *I have sent ambassadors to*
    lēgātōs mīsī   *Caesar at Brundisium* (lit. *to Brundisium to Caesar*)

Note.—If a substantive (*e.g.* **urbs,** *city,* **oppidum,** *town*) stands in apposition to the name of the town, a preposition must be used.

consul lēgātōs a d u r b e m   *the consul sent ambassadors to*
    Rōmam mīsit   *the city of Rome*

Learn Vocabulary 48.

VOCABULARY 48.

ante, prep. (with acc.), *before.*
Ariōvist-us, -i, *m., Ariovistus.*
bene, adv., *well.*
dīc-ō, -ere, dix-ī, dict-um (imperative **dīc**), (dictionary), *say.*
discēd-ō, -ere, discess-ī, discess-um, *depart.*
domum, acc. (domestic), *home.*
dūc-ō, -ere, dux-ī, duct-um (imperative **dūc**), *lead.*
epistol-a, -ae, *f.* (epistle), *letter.*
fortūn-a, -ae, *f., fortune.*
fret-um, -ī, *n., strait.*
gerō, -ere, gess-ī, gest-um, *wage.*
in, prep. (with acc.), *into, upon, against.*

intelleg-ō, -ere, intellex-ī, intellect-um (intelligent), *understand.*
iung-ō, -ere, iunx-ī, iunct-um, *join.*
mitt-ō, -ere, mīs-ī, miss-um, *send.*
nunti-us, -ī, *m., messenger.*
permitt-ō, -ere, permīs-ī, permiss-um (permit), *entrust.*
Rhēn-us, -ī, *m., Rhine.*
scrīb-ō, -ere, scrips-ī, script-um (scribe), *write.*
trans, prep. (with acc.), *across.*
vīv-ō, -ere, vix-ī, vict-um (revive), *live.*

LESSON 49.

Learn the remaining indicative tenses and the infinitive, gerund, and participles active of **regō** (pp. 68, 69).

197. RULE.—The place **whence** motion is directed is expressed by the ablative without a preposition if it is (*a*) the name of a town or of an island small enough to be regarded as one place, or (*b*) **domō**, *from home*, **rūre** *from the country*.

nuntium ad Caesarem Rōmā mīsī	*from Rome I sent a messenger to Caesar.*

NOTE.—In all other cases a preposition must be used, and also if a substantive (*e.g.* **urbs,** *city,* **oppidum,** *town*) stands in apposition to the name of the town or small island.

ab urbe Rōmā nuntium mīsī	*I sent a messenger from the city of Rome*

Learn Vocabulary 49.

VOCABULARY 49.

ag-ō, -ere, ēg-ī, act-um, *drive.*

consist-ō, -ere, constit-ī, constit-um, *settle, halt.*

contend-ō, -ere, contend-ī, content-um, *hasten.*

crēd-ō, -ere, crēdid-ī, crēdit-um (credit), *believe* (with dat.).

ex or **ē,** prep. (with abl.), *out of, from.*

excēd-ō, -ere, excess-ī, excess-um, *retire.*

impedīment-a, -ōrum, *n.pl.* (impediment), *baggage.*

irrump-o, -ere, irrūp-ī, irrupt-um (irruption), *break into.*

Massīli-a, -ae, *f., Marseilles.*

occurr-ō, -ere, occurr-ī, occursum (occur), *fall in with, fall upon* (with dat.).

parc-ō, -ere, peperc-ī, pars-um (parsimony), *be sparing, spare* (with dat.).

paulātim, adv., *gradually.*

praeceps, praecipit-is (precipitous), *headlong.*

relinqu-ō, -ere, relīqu-ī, relict-um, *relinquish, leave.*

vinc-ō, -ere, vīc-ī, vict-um (victory), *conquer.*

LESSON 50.

Learn the subjunctive active of **regō** (p. 69).
Revise § 55 (pp. 24, 25).

FINAL CLAUSES.

198. A clause which expresses the purpose or end (**fīnis**) of the action of the principal sentence is called a **final clause.** The **subjunctive** is the mood used in Latin final clauses, and the tense is the **present** subjunctive in **primary** sequence (§ 160), and the **imperfect** subjunctive in **historic** sequence.

A final clause is usually introduced by **ut** or **utī** (*that, in order that*), or **nē** (*lest, in order that . . . not*).

moneō tē nē Caesarī displiceās	*I advise you not to displease Caesar*
monuī tē nē Caesarī displicērēs	*I advised you not to displease Caesar*

NOTE.—Very frequently the English infinitive expresses purpose and must be translated by a present or imperfect subjunctive. This infinitive is especially common after verbs of commanding, advising, and striving.[1]

199. *The city of, the town of* is expressed in Latin by the name of the town (island, country, river, etc.) in apposition to the substantive **urbs, oppidum** (**insula, flūmen,** etc.).

urbs Rōma oppugnāta est	*the city of Rome was assaulted*

200. If these substantives stand in apposition to the name of a town expressing " place where " (§ 55), they are put in the ablative case preceded by the preposition **in**.

Athēnīs in urbe opulentissimā ēducātus sum	*I was educated in the wealthy city of Athens*

Learn Vocabulary 50 (p. 107).

RHYME :— With *ask, command, advise,* and *strive,*
           By **ut** translate infinitive.

VOCABULARY 50.

afflīg-ō, -ere, afflīxī, afflict-um (affliction), *dash.*

claud-ō, -ere, claus-ī, claus-um, *shut.*

contemn-ō, -ere, contemps-ī, contempt-um, *despise.*

cūr-ō, -āre, *take care.*

em-ō, -ere, ēm-ī, empt-um, *buy.*

ērump-ō, -ere, ērūp-ī, ērupt-um (eruption), *break out, sally forth.*

fīng-ō, -ere, fīnx-ī, fict-um (fiction), *feign.*

imper-ō, -āre (imperious), *command, give orders* (with dat.).

inerm-is, -e, *unarmed.*

leg-ō, -ere, lēg-ī, lect-um (legible), *read.*

ōr-ō, -āre (oration), *beg, beseech.*

pell-ō, -ere, pepul-ī, puls-um (propel), *drive.*

port-a, -ae, *f.* (portal), *gate.*

LESSON 51.

Learn the active voice of **audiō,** except the subjunctive (pp. 70, 71).

201. The ablative is used without a preposition to denote **place where** in the following expressions :—

terrā, *by land,*   dextrā, *on the right,*

marī, *by sea,*   laevā, *on the left,*

locō (usually with an adjective), *in place,*

and some less common words.

Gallōs terrā marīque superāvimus   *we have overcome the Gauls by land and sea*

202. Place where may also be expressed without a preposition if the substantive is qualified by **medius,** *middle,* or **tōtus,** *whole.*

carcerem mediā urbe aedificant   *they are building a prison in the middle of the city*

consulēs tōtā Italiā dēlectum habēbant   *the consuls were holding a levy all over Italy*

Obs.—A preposition is required in expressions denoting *place where,* except (1) in accordance with §§ 201, 202, and (2) in the case of names of towns and small islands (§ 55).

Learn Vocabulary 51 (p. 108).

VOCABULARY 51.

N.B.—In the case of verbs of which the infinitive ending only (-āre, -ēre, -īre) is given, it is to be assumed that they are conjugated throughout like **amō** or **moneō** or **audiō** ; if a verb is irregular in its principal parts, the fact is indicated.

aper-iō, -īre, aperu-ī, apert-um (aperture), *open.*
aud-iō, -īre (audience), *hear.*
comper-iō, -īre, comper-ī, compert-um, *ascertain.*
consent-iō, -īre, consens-ī, consens-um (consent), *come to an understanding* (*with*).
conven-iō, -īre, convēn-ī, convent-um (convent), *assemble.*
custōd-iō, -īre (custody), *keep, guard.*
dorm-iō, -īre (dormitory), *sleep.*
exul, exul-is, *m., exile.*
idōne-us, -a, -um, *suitable.*
inīqu-us, -a, -um (iniquity), *unfair, disadvantageous, unfavourable.*

loc-us, -ī, *m.* (local), *place.*
medi-us, -a, -um, *middle.*
mūn-iō,-īre (ammunition),*fortify.*
opulent-us, -a, -um, *opulent, flourishing.*
pōn-ō, -ere, posu-ī, posit-um, *place, pitch* (a camp).
pūn-iō, -īre, *punish.*
reper-io, -īre, repper-ī, repertum, *find.*
sc-iō, -īre (science), *know.*
sepel-iō, -īre, sepelīv -i, sepult-um (sepulture), *bury.*
ven-iō, -īre, vēn-ī, vent-um, *come*
vinc-iō, -īre, vinx-ī, vinct-um, *bind.*

LESSON 52.

Learn the subjunctive active of **audiō** (p. 71).

CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

203. A **consecutive clause** expresses the consequence or result of the action of the principal sentence. It is usually introduced in Latin by **ut** (*that, so that*), or, if the clause is negative, by **ut** followed by **nōn** or some other negative word. The principal sentence often contains a demonstrative adverb meaning *so, e.g.* **adeō, ita, sīc, tam,** or an adjective such as **tot** (indeclinable), *so many,* **tantus** (*so great*), **tālis,** *such.*

The mood of the verb in the consecutive clause is always **subjunctive,** and the rule for the sequence of tenses must be observed.

ita vīvit ut omnibus cārus sit.	*he so lives that he is dear to all.*
accidit u t numquam Rōmae essem	*it so happened that I was never at Rome*
adeō mē timet ut adhūc tacuerit	*he fears me so much that he has been silent till now*
tanta erat operis firmitūdō ut multōs annōs dūrāvisset	*such was the strength of the work that it had lasted many years*

NOTE 1.—**Nē** (§ 198) must never be used in a consecutive clause.

NOTE 2.—In consecutive clauses the perfect subjunctive is sometimes found where the rule for the sequence of tenses would require the imperfect.

Learn Vocabulary 52.

VOCABULARY 52.

accid-it, -ere, accid-it, —, verb impers. (accident), *it happens.*
adeō, adv., *so.*
adven-iō, -īre, advēn-ī, advent-um (advent), *arrive.*
anim-us, -ī, *m.* (animate), *mind.*
disert-us, -a, -um, *eloquent.*
moll-iō, -īre, *mitigate, soothe.*
multitūdō, multitūdin-is, *f. multitude.*

nondum, adv., *not yet.*
pavor, pavōr-is, *m., panic.*
praeven-iō, -īre, praevēn-ī, prae-vent-um (prevent), *get the start of.*
repentīn-us, -a, -um, *sudden.*
statiō, statiōn-is, *f.* (station), *post.*
strepit-us, -ūs, *m., uproar, din.*
tam, adv., *so.*
vox, vōc-is, *f., voice.*

LESSON 53.

Learn the active voice of **capiō** (p. 80).

204. All verbs of the third conjugation (*i.e.* with present infinitive active ending in **-ere**) which in the present indicative active end in **-iō** are conjugated like **capiō.**

Obs.—**Capiō** is conjugated like **audiō** in those parts in which the **i** of **audiō** is followed by a vowel, *i.e.* in which the **i** is short (**i**) ; in other parts **capiō** is conjugated like **regō.**

Learn Vocabulary 53 (p. 110).

VOCABULARY 53.

ad ūnum, phrase, *to a man.*
cap-iō, -ere, cēp-ī, capt-um (capture), *take.*
convent-us, -ūs, *m., assembly, council.*
conventum agō, *hold a council.*
corrip-iō, -ere, corripu-ī, correptum, *snatch up.*
cup-iō, -ere, cupīv-ī, cupīt-um (cupidity), *desire.*
curr-ō, -ere, cucurr-ī, curs-um (course), *run.*
effic-iō, -ere, effēc-ī, effect-um (efficient), *bring it about.*
fac-iō, -ere, fēc-ī, fact-um (imperative **fac**), *make, do.*

fug-a, -ae, *f., flight.*
fug-iō, -ere, fūg-ī, fugit-um, *flee.*
interfic-iō, -ere, interfēc-ī, interfect-um, *kill.*
iac-iō, -ere, iēc-ī, iact-um, *throw.*
legiō, legiōn-is, *f., legion.*
par-iō, -ere, peper-ī, part-um (parent), *bring forth, gain.*
praefic-iō, -ere, praefēc-ī, praefect-um (prefect), *set over* (with acc. and dat.).
quat-iō, -ere,—, quass-um, *shake.*
quid, *what ?* (§ 118).
salūs, salūt-is, *f., safety.*
satisfac-iō, -ere, satisfēc-ī, satisfact-um, *satisfy* (with dat.).

LESSON 54.

Learn the indicative and imperative passive of **amō** (pp. 72, 73).

205. In the case of the tenses conjugated with the help of the perfect participle it must be remembered that the forms given in the table are masculine and are to be used only if the subject is masculine ; cp. p. 20, footnote.

DOUBLE QUESTIONS.

206. RULE.—When two or more alternatives are put in the form of a question, the first is usually introduced by **utrum,** *whether,* and the second and subsequent alternatives by **an,** *or.*

utrum **Caesarem** an **Pompēium** laudās ?	*do you praise Caesar or Pompeius ?*
utrum pugnābitis an fugiētis ?	*will you fight or flee ?*
utrum fīlius meus tibī pāruit annōn?	*did my son obey you or not ?*

Learn Vocabulary 54 (p. 111).

<center>VOCABULARY 54.</center>

administr-ō, -āre, *administer,*   **căs-us, -ūs,** *m., chance.*
  carry on, manage.   **consili-um, -ī,** *n.* (counsel), *pur-*
agger, agger-is, *m., earthwork.*   *pose, design.*
amplific-ō, -āre, *amplify, extend.*   **vall-um, -ī,** *n., rampart.*

<center>## LESSON 55.</center>

Learn the subjunctive passive of **amō** (p. 73).

<center>### DEPENDENT DOUBLE QUESTIONS.</center>

207. RULE.—Double questions, like single questions, may be reported, and are then called dependent double questions. The only change is in the verb, which passes into the **subjunctive** and follows the rules already given for the sequence of tenses.

rogō u t r u m Caesarem a n Pompēium laudēs	*I ask whether you praise Caesar or Pompeius*
rogāvī u t r u m Caesarem a n Pompēium laudārēs	*I asked whether you were praising Caesar or Pompeius*

In a dependent double question *or not* is expressed by **necne** rather than by **annōn.**

208. RULE.—A verb or phrase expressing **doubt,** if preceded by a **negative,** is followed by a **subjunctive** clause introduced by **quīn,** *(but) that.* The same construction is used after **nēmō est,** *there is no one (who . . . not)* ; **nihil est,** *there is nothing (that . . . not).* Sequence of tenses is observed.

nōn dubium est q u ī n Caesar adventet	*there is no doubt (but) that Caesar is on the point of arriving*
nēmō erat quīn tibī crēderet.	*there was no one who did not believe you*

NOTE.—When used without a negative, such expressions are usually followed by a dependent question.

sapientēs dubitant u t r u m dīvitēs an pauperēs fēlīciōrēs sint	*philosophers doubt whether the rich or the poor are happier*

Learn Vocabulary 55 (p. 112).

<center>VOCABULARY 55.</center>

ancor-a, -ae, *f., anchor.*

ariēs, ariet-is, *m., ram, battering-ram.*

dēlig-ō, -āre, *fasten.*

dubi-us, -a, -um, *doubtful.*

foss-a, -ae, *f., trench.*

fraus, fraud-is, *f., fraud, craft, guile.*

fraude (abl. of manner), *by guile.*

onerāri-us, -a, -um, *burden-bearing.*

nāvis onerāria, *merchant-vessel.*

vīs (acc. **vim**, no gen. or dat., abl. **vī**), *f., force, violence.*

vīr-ēs, -ium, *f.pl.* (pl. of **vīs**), *strength.*

<center>## LESSON 56.</center>

Learn the infinitive and participles passive of **amō** (p. 73).

<center>THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE CONSTRUCTION.</center>

209. In such sentences as—

(a) *the day being fine, I took a walk* ;

(b) *all else failing, I shall trust to you* ;

(c) *all his schemes having failed, he was thrown into despair* ;

(d) *the enemy having been driven off, the British entered the town* ;

the phrase containing a participle, although it adverbially modifies the statement, is regarded as independent of the construction, and has been given the name of **nominative absolute** (absolūtus = *freed*).

210. A corresponding construction exists in Latin, but the case of the participle and of the word with which the participle agrees is **ablative**. The participles used in Latin in the **ablative absolute** construction are the **present participle active** and the **perfect participle passive**.

Obs.—The ablative is thus used as being the instrumental case. The ablative absolute expresses an action which accompanies that of the finite verb, and is sometimes known as the ablative of the attendant circumstance.

211. If neither of these is available, an English nominative absolute phrase must be rendered by a Latin clause—

temporal, conditional, or other, according to the meaning ; and such a clause is always admissible, even if the required participle exists.   Thus, in the examples given above, the nominative absolute might be represented by clauses such as—

(a) *as the day was fine* . . . (causal) ;
(b) *if all else fails* . . . (conditional);
(d) *when the enemy had been driven off* . . . (temporal).

212. The ablative absolute is, however, more used in Latin than is the nominative absolute in English, so that an English temporal or other clause may often conveniently be rendered by it ; but the form of the expression must be so altered that the participle may be either present active or perfect passive ; moreover, the substantive or pronoun with which this participle agrees must be neither the subject nor the object of the sentence.   Thus—

Sentence with dependent clause.	Sentence as rendered with ablative absolute
while the consul was saying these words, the horsemen departed	*the consul saying these words, the horsemen departed*

haec dīcente consule, equitēs discessērunt

when many had been killed, the remainder threw themselves into the river	*many having been killed, the remainder threw themselves into the river*

multīs interfectīs, reliquī sē in flūmēn praecipitāvērunt

the townsfolk, when they heard the shouts, slew the hostages	*the townsfolk, the shouts having been heard, slew the hostages*

oppidānī, clāmōribus audītīs, obsidēs interfēcērunt

Obs.—In the last sentence it should be noticed (1) that *hearing* really means *having heard*, for the slaying of the hostages followed as the result of the hearing, (2) that as Latin has no perfect participle active, the active form *having heard the shouts* is converted to the passive form *the shouts having been heard*, and, *the shouts* being neither the subject nor the object of the verb *slew*, the phrase is put in the ablative absolute.

Learn Vocabulary 56 (p. 114).

VOCABULARY 56.

apud, prep. (with acc.), *in the presence of, among*
arx, arc-is, *f., citadel.*
auxili-um, -ī, *n.* (auxiliary), *help, aid*; pl. *reinforcements.*
concili-um, -ī, *n., council.*
convoc-ō, -āre (convoke), *summon, call together.*
crem-ō, -āre, *burn, cremate.*
dēclār-ō, -āre, *declare.*

expōn-ō, -ere, exposu-ī, exposit-um, *land* (transitive).
frustrā, adv. (frustrate), *in vain.*
invād-ō, -ere, invās-ī, invās-um, *invade, seize.*
numer-us, -ī, *m., number.*
prob-ō, -āre (approbation), *approve.*
redūc-ō, -ere, redux-ī, reduct-um, *lead back.*
sententi-a, -ae, *f., opinion.*

LESSON 57.

THE GERUNDIVE.

213. The **gerundive** is an **adjective** formed from **transitive** verbs, and denotes that a person or thing is *fit* or *meet to be* the object of the verbal action ; *e.g.* **amandus,** *lovable* or *fit to be loved* ; **dēplōrandus,** *to be lamented* ; **cantandus,** *fit to be sung of* ; **arandus,** *arable* ; **narrandus,** *fit to be narrated* ; **honōrandus,** *meet to be honoured.* The person by whom the action is to be performed is expressed by a dative.

> **bonī semper a m a n d ī sunt omnibus**   *good men must always be loved by all*

Obs.—In the case of intransitive verbs, *i.e.* verbs which do not govern an accusative case, and consequently have no gerundive, the gerund (§ 176) may be used. Note the different constructions to be employed in translating into Latin the following :—

> **parentēs sunt honōrandī** (transitive)   *parents should be honoured*
>
> **parentibus est obtemperan- dum** (intransitive)   *parents must be obeyed* (lit. *there is a duty of giving way to parents*)

214. There is another use of the gerundive quite distinct from the above ; viz. that known as the **gerundive construction.** As neither the accusative nor the dative gerund

ever governs a direct object (§ 175, NOTE), its place must be supplied by this gerundive construction, the rule for which is as follows.

The substantive which would be the object of the gerund is put into the case in which the gerund would be, and the gerundive is made to agree with that object; thus instead of translating

I devote myself to correcting books

by **studeō** with dative gerund of **ēmendō** governing a direct object, we put **librī** in the dative and make the gerundive **ēmendandus** agree with it.   We thus get

studeō librīs ēmendandīs.

215. Examples are—

equitēs ad urbem oppugnandam parātī erant	*the cavalry were ready for assaulting the city*
Caesar Rōmam contendit ad auxilia comparanda	*Caesar hastens to Rome to collect reinforcements*
sunt nonnullī acuendīs puerōrum ingeniīs nōn inūtilēs lūsūs	*there are some games not unserviceable for sharpening boys' wits*

216. The gerundive construction is usually substituted for an ablative gerund with a direct object and often for a genitive gerund with a direct object.

tōtum diem in fābulīs narrandīs consūmēs	*you will spend the whole day in telling tales*
hūc vēnī fīliae exspectandae causā (or grātiā) or fīliam exspectandi causā (or grātiā)	*I came hither for the sake of awaiting (to await) my daughter*

217. From the above examples it will be seen that the gerundive construction may be used to express purpose either (*a*) in the genitive with **causā** or **grātiā**, or (*b*) in the accusative preceded by the preposition **ad.**

Learn Vocabulary 57 (p. 116).

<div align="center">VOCABULARY 57.</div>

apt-us, -a, -um (apt), *fit, adapted.*
Hannibal, Hannibal-is, *m., Hannibal* (a Carthaginian general).
imperi-um, -ī, *n., empire, rule.*
maximē, adv., *very greatly.*
occāsiō, occāsiōn-is, *f., opportunity.*
pristin-us, -a, -um (pristine), *former.*
prōnunti-ō, -āre, *proclaim.*

report-ō, -āre, *bring back.*
reserv-ō, -āre, *reserve.*
sollicit-ō, -āre, *work upon, instigate.*
summ-a, -ae, *f.* (sum), *whole, chief responsibility.*
tent-ō, -āre, *try, tempt.*
ūnivers-us, -a, -um, *universal.*
valētūdō, valētūdin-is, *f.* (valetudinarian), *health.*

<div align="center">LESSON 58.</div>

Learn the passive voice of **moneō**, except the subjunctive (pp. 74, 75).

218. The conjugation of **moneō** differs from that of **amō** in the same way in the passive as it does in the active, *i.e.* the vowel immediately following the base is **e**, not **a**, in the present, imperfect, and future indicative (except in the first person singular of the present), in the imperfect subjunctive, the imperative, present infinitive, and the gerundive (cp. § 181), but in other respects these parts are formed in the same way in the two conjugations.

<div align="center">TEMPORAL CLAUSES : PRESENT OR FUTURE TIME.</div>

219. In such sentences as—

> *when I do wrong, I get punished ;*
> *when I see you, I will tell you all about it ;*
> *as soon as I arrived, I went upstairs ;*

the clauses introduced by *when, as soon as*, or the like are called temporal, *i.e.* they define the time (**tempus**) at which the action of the principal sentence takes place, relatively to another action, viz. that of the clause.

220. In Latin temporal clauses in which the time is **present** or **future**, the mood used is **indicative**, and the tense is that which the meaning requires.

221. The English idiom, by which the present is used in the second sentence given in § 219, must not be reproduced in Latin, but the future or future-perfect must be used if the time is future.   Cp. § 187.

222. The commonest temporal conjunction in Latin is **cum**[1].

c u m permagna praemia s u n t, est causa peccandī	*when the rewards are very great, it is a reason for wrong-doing*
c u m epistolam lēgerō, re-spondēbō	*when I have read the letter, I will reply*
c u m adventābunt equitēs, fugite	*when the horsemen are on the point of arriving, flee*

Obs.—Commands naturally refer to future time.

Learn Vocabulary 58.

VOCABULARY 58.

auctōritās, auctōritāt-is, *f.*, *influence, authority*.

aug-eō, -ēre, aux-ī, auct-um, *increase* (transitive).

circum, prep. (with acc.), *around*.

clāmor, clāmōr-is, *m.*, *cheer, shout*.

comiti-a, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, *election*.

comitia habeō, *hold an election*.

commov-eō, -ēre, commōv-ī, commōt-um, *stir, move*.

dēl-eō, -ēre, dēlēv-ī, dēlēt-um, *destroy*.

ē vītā excēdō, *die*.

graviter, adv., *heavily, deeply*.

mov-eō, -ēre, mōv-ī, mōt-um, *move* (trans.) ; pass., *move* (intrans.).

obsid-eō, -ēre, obsēd-ī, ōbsess-um,

perven-iō, -īre, pervēn-ī, pervent-um, *arrive*.

tellūs, tellūr-is, *f.*, *the earth*.

undique, adv., *from all sides, on all sides*.

---

[1] Sometimes spelt quum.

LESSON 59.

Learn the subjunctive passive of **moneō** (p. 75).

TEMPORAL CLAUSES : PAST TIME.

223. In such sentences as—

> *when I was at school, I used to learn Latin ;*
> *when he had said this, he went away ;*
> *when the envoys arrived, Caesar demanded hostages ;*

in which the action of the temporal clause and that of the principal sentence belong to the **same series of events,** the Latin conjunction **cum** is followed by the **subjunctive** mood, the **imperfect** or **pluperfect** being used according to the requirements of the sense.

cum Athēnīs essem, Zēnōnem audiēbam frequenter	*when I was at Athens, I often heard Zeno's lectures*
haec cum dixisset, suōs in hostēs duxit	*when he had said this, he led his men against the enemy*
cum nostrōs fugere vīdisset, domum discessit	*when he saw that our men were fleeing, he went off home*

Obs.—In the last example the *pluperfect* subjunctive is used because the action of seeing had preceded that of departing.

NOTE.—If the action of the temporal clause is represented as in no way connected with that of the principal sentence, **cum** is followed by the indicative ; e.g. **Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, potentissimī erant Haeduī,** *When Caesar came to Gaul* (or *at the time of Caesar's coming to Gaul*), *the Haedui were very powerful.*

224. Other common temporal conjunctions are **ut** or **utī,** *when, as soon as,* **ubi** or **ubī,** *when,* followed by the **indicative.**

Pompēius, ut equitātum suum fugātum vīdit, aciē excessit	*when* (or *as soon as*) *Pompeius saw his cavalry put to flight, he left the line of battle*
ubi ea diēs quam constituerat vēnit et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, concilium convocāvit	*when the day which he had appointed had come and the ambassadors had returned to him, he summoned a meeting*

NOTE.—The perfect indicative is used after **ut** or **ubi** where, if the clause were induced by **cum**, the **pluperfect subjunctive** would stand, and the perfect indicative so used is often (as in the example last given) rendered by the English past-perfect.

225. RULE.—Verbs which in the active voice govern both an accusative of the person and an accusative of the thing (§ 188) may **retain** the **accusative** of the thing in the passive

linguam Latīnam ā magistrō docēmur	*we are taught Latin by the master*

Learn Vocabulary 59.

VOCABULARY 59.

cohib-eō, -ēre, *restrain.*
commīlitō, commīlitōn-is, *m.,* *comrade, fellow-soldier.*
consūm-ō, -ere, consumps-ī, consumpt-um, *consume, spend.*
distribu-ō, -ere, distribu-ī, distribūt-um, *distribute.*

dolor, dolōr-is, *m., grief, indigna-tion.*
impetum faciō, *charge* (military phrase).
inter, prep. (with acc.), *among.*
nec . . . nec, or **neque . . . neque,** conj., *neither . . . nor.*
revoc-ō, -āre, *call back.*

LESSON 60.

Learn the passive voice of **regō**, except the subjunctive (pp. 76, 77).

CAUSAL CLAUSES.

226. Causal clauses are introduced by the conjunctions **quod** or **quia** (*because*), **quoniam** (*since* or *seeing that*). If the cause is stated as a fact, the indicative is used.

vēnī quod mē appellāvistī	*I came because you called me*

227. RULE.—Verbs which govern the dative cannot be used personally in the passive : the **impersonal** construction must be employed.

mihī crēditur, tibī invidētur	*I am believed, you are envied* (lit. *there is a putting trust in me, there is a feeling of envy against you*)
captīvīs parcētur	*the prisoners will be spared* (lit. *there will be a showing of mercy to the prisoners*)

Learn Vocabulary 60.

VOCABULARY 60.

adduc-ō, -ere, addux-ī, adduct-um, *bring.*

commeāt-us, -ūs, *m., supplies.*

dēser-ō, -ere, dēseru-ī, dēsert-um, *desert.*

dīlig-ō, -ere, dīlex-ī, dīlect-um, *esteem.*

expell-ō, -ere, expul-ī, expulsum (expel), *drive out.*

fav-eō, -ēre, fāv-ī, faut-um, *be favourable.*

incend-ō, -ere, incend-ī, incens-um (incendiary), *burn* (trans.).

instru-ō, -ere, instrux-ī, instruct-um, *draw up.*

invid-eō, -ēre, invīd-ī, invīs-um, *be envious, envy* (with dat.).

opus est, *there is need* (with abl. of the thing needed).

praesidi-um, -ī, *n., garrison.*

subdūc-ō, -ere, subdux-ī, sub-ductum, *beach, haul up on shore*

LESSON 61.

Learn the subjunctive passive of **regō** (p. 77).

CAUSAL CLAUSES (*continued*).

228. In a causal clause introduced by **quod** (or by **quia** or **quoniam**) the subjunctive is used if the speaker does not wish to vouch for the truth of the cause assigned. The conjunction thus followed by the subjunctive may often be translated *on the ground that . . . , because* (*as he said . . .*), *because* (*so he thought*). . . .

dolēbat quod peccāvisset	*he was grieving because* (*he thought*) *he had done wrong*

229. A causal clause introduced by **cum** (*since*) is always in the **subjunctive**. The rule for the sequence of tenses (§ 160) must be observed.

quae¹ cum ita sint, domum discēdam	*and since these things are so, I shall go home*

230. Rule.—The expression **opus est**, *there is need* (lit. *there is work* to be done), is usually constructed with an **ablative** of the thing or person needed, and a **dative** of the person needing.

duce nōbīs opus est	*we have need of a leader* (lit. *there is for us work* to be done *with a leader*)

Learn Vocabulary 61.

VOCABULARY 61.

dēdūc-ō, -ere, dēdux-ī, dēduct- -um (deduct), *launch* (lit. *bring down from the shore*).

dīmitt-ō, -ere, dīmīs-ī, dīmiss-um (dismiss), *disband*.

dirim-ō, -ere, dirēm-ī, dirempt- um, *break down, destroy*.

interclūd-ō, -ere, interclūs-ī, in- terclūs-um, *cut off*.

iam, adv., *now, by this time*.

poster-us, -a, -um (posterity), *following*.

reg-ō, -ere, rex-ī, rect-um (regi- ment), *rule, govern*.

trād-ō, -ere, trādid-ī, trādit-um, *hand over, betray*.

vīc-us, -ī, *m., village*.

LESSON 62.

Learn the passive voice of **audiō**, except the subjunctive (pp. 78, 79).

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

231. Clauses introduced by conjunctions meaning *although* are called **concessive clauses**.

232. Etsī (*although, even if*) is used with the **indicative** when that which is conceded is **regarded as fact**.

etsī stultus es, sapientior es quam frāter tuus	*although you are foolish, you are wiser than your brother*

¹ quae (§ 114) = et ea (§ 111).

233. Quamquam (*although*) is always followed by the indicative.

quamquam festīnās, nōn est mora longa	*though you are in a hurry, the delay is not great*

Learn Vocabulary 62.

VOCABULARY 62.

admitt-ō, -ere, admīs-ī, admiss-um, *commit* (crime).
ars, art-is, *f.*, *art*; pl. *the arts*.
carcer, carcer-is, *m.* (incarcerate), *prison*.
effug-iō, -ere, effūg-ī, —, *escape*.
ēgregiē, adv., *admirably*.
ēmoll-iō, -īre (emollient), *refine*.

ērud-iō, -īre (erudite), *train, polish*.
līberāl-is, -e, *liberal* (*i.e.* befitting a free man).
saepissimē, adv., *very often*.
tamen, adv., *nevertheless*.
test-is, *c.* (testify), *witness*.

LESSON 63.

Learn the subjunctive passive of **audiō** (p. 79).

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES (*concluded*).

234. RULE.—Cum (*although*), **quamvīs** (*although*), **licet** (*although*), require the **subjunctive**. So too do **etsī** and **etiamsī** (*even if*), if they introduce concessions made merely for the sake of argument.

cum prīmī hostium concidissent, tamen ācriter reliquī resistēbant	*although the first ranks of the enemy had fallen, nevertheless the rest resisted vigorously*
quamvīs sīs molestus, numquam dīcam tē esse malum	*although you may be troublesome, I will never say that you are wicked*
etiamsī peccāvisset, nōn pūnītus esset	*even if he had done wrong, he would not have been punished*

Learn Vocabulary 63 (p. 123).

VOCABULARY 63.

abrip-iō, -ere, abripu-ī, abrept-um, *carry off.*

aerāri-um, -ī, *n., treasury.*

aliquandō, adv., *some day.*

barbar-us, -a, -um, *barbarous, uncivilised.*

combūr-ō, -ere, combuss-ī, combust-um, *burn* (trans.).

concid-ō, -ere, concid-ī, —, *fall.*

exhaur-iō, -īre, exhaus-ī, exhaust-um, *exhaust.*

fīn-iō, -īre, *finish, end.*

inven-iō, -īre, inven-ī, invent-um (invent), *find.*

omnīnō, adv., *altogether, wholly.*

pell-is, -is, f., *skin.*

saepius, adv., *more often, oftener.*

vest-iō, -īre (vest), *clothe.*

LESSON 64.

Learn the passive voice of **capiō** (p. 81).

235. RULE.—Verbs of **fearing** are followed by a final clause (§ 198) introduced by **nē**, *that* or *lest*, or **ut**, *that . . . not.*

timeō nē urbs capiātur	*I fear that the city will be taken*
timeō ut urbs capiātur	*I fear that the city will not be taken*

Learn Vocabulary 64.

VOCABULARY 64.

affic-iō, -ere, affēc-ī, affect-um, *affect.*

confic-iō, -ere, confēc-ī, confect-um, *finish.*

conspic-iō, -ere, conspex-ī, conspect-um (conspicuous), *behold, observe.*

dēfic-iō, -ere, dēfēc-ī, dēfect-um (deficient), *fall away, fail ;* passive (with abl.), *be lacking*

dīrip-iō, -ere, dīripu-ī, dīreptum, *pillage.*

incendi-um, -ī, *n.* (incendiary), *fire.*

mulier, mulier-is, f., *woman.*

ratiō, ratiōn-is, f. (rational), *reason.*

refic-iō, -ere, refēc-ī, refect-um, *repair.*

The learner must now study Lessons 32-35 (on the pronouns), if these were omitted before, and should write Exercises 32-35.

LESSON 65.

DEPONENT VERBS.

Learn the conjugation of **hortor** and of **vereor** (pp. 82, 83).

236. Some Latin verbs which are conjugated in the passive only are the equivalents of English active verbs; such verbs are called *deponents*, because they were considered by the old grammarians to *lay aside* (**dēpōnere**) their passive meaning.

237. It is not in all cases clear what was originally the force of the passive form in these verbs, but in many of them it was evidently reflexive, *e.g.* **amplector,** *I embrace,* i.e. *twine myself around* (from **plectō,** *I plait,* and the prefix **ambi-,** *around*), **glōrior,** *I boast,* i.e. *glorify myself.*

But whatever the origin of the deponent verbs may have been, they are for all practical purposes equivalent both in force and in usage to active verbs, either transitive (as **amplector**) or intransitive (as **glōrior**).

238. The following non-deponent parts are found in all deponent verbs :—

(1) Present Participle
(2) Future Participle (and consequently
        Future Infinitive)   active in form.
(3) Gerund
(4) Supine
(5) Gerundive   passive in meaning.

For examples, see §§ 148-151.

NOTE.—In some deponent verbs the perfect participle is sometimes passive in meaning ; *e.g.* **veneror,** *I worship,* has perfect participle **venerātus,** *worshipped* (passive) or *having worshipped* (deponent).

239. There are four conjugations of deponent verbs, resembling those of the regular passive verbs with the addition of the aforesaid forms of the corresponding active conjugations.

Three deponent verbs and their compounds (**morior, mortuus sum**, *die* ; **gradior, gressus sum**, *step* ; **patior, passus sum**, *suffer*) are conjugated like **capior** (§ 147).

240. Deponent verbs have no perfect tenses active in form, and consequently no perfect base ; all their tenses are formed from the present and supine bases in the same way as the tenses of the passive voice of regular verbs (see § 134). The supine base of deponent verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations is formed from the present base just as in active verbs ; exceptions to this rule are shown in the Vocabularies, and a full list is given in the Appendix. The supine bases of deponents of the third conjugation must be learned from the Vocabularies and (later on) from the Appendix (§§ 329, 330).

SEMI-DEPONENTS.

241. Four verbs are deponent in their perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect tenses only (including perfect infinitive and perfect participle), viz. :—

		Pres. Indic.		Pres. Inf.	Perf. Indic.
Second Conjugation	aud-eō,	*I dare*		aud-ēre	aus-us sum
	gaud-eō,	*I rejoice*		gaud-ēre	gāvīs-us sum
	sol-eō,	*I am accustomed*		sol-ēre	solit-us sum
Third Conj.	fīd-ō,	*I trust*		fīd-ere	fīs-us sum

So also the compounds **confīdō**, *I trust*, and **diffīdo**, *I distrust*.

242. RULE.—**Iubeō**, *I bid, I command*, **vetō**, *I forbid*, and **cōnor**, *I attempt*, are constructed with an infinitive.[1]

iubeō tē tacēre	*I command you to be silent*
fugere cōnābātur	*he was attempting to flee*

---

[1] Hence the rhyme given on p. 106 (footnote) will run —

> With *ask, command, advise*, and *strive*,
> By **ut** translate infinitive ;
> But not so after **iubeō**, nor
> With **vetō** or deponent **cōnor**.

243. RULE.—Verbs of **promising**, like verbs of *hoping*, are constructed with the **accusative** and **future infinitive**, with or without **esse**.

> pollicētur s ē ita f a c t ū r u m   *he promises to do so*
>   (esse)

Learn Vocabulary 65.

VOCABULARY 65.

anteā, adv., *beforehand.*

arbitr-or, -ārī, *think.*

cohort-or, -ārī, *exhort.*

commor-or, -ārī, *linger.*

confit-eor, -ērī, confess-us sum, *confess, admit.*

cōn-or, -ārī, *attempt.*

dēd-ō, -ere, dēdid-ī, dēdit-um, *surrender.*

dextr-a, -ae (sc. manus), *f., right hand.*

ēdūc-ō, -ere, ēdux-ī, ēduct-um (educe), *lead out, draw* (a sword).

ēven-iō, -īre, ēvēn-ī, ēvent-um (event), *turn out, happen.*

impuls-us, -ūs, *m., impulse, initiative.*

incert-us, -a, -um, *uncertain.*

iub-eō, -ēre, iuss-ī, iuss-um (jussive), *bid.*

longius, adv., *farther, too far.*

mor-or, -ārī, *delay* (trans. and intrans.).

pābul-or, -ārī, *forage.*

pauc-ī, -ae, -a (paucity), *few.*

pollic-eor, -ērī, *promise.*

specul-or, -ārī (speculate), *reconnoitre.*

suspic-or, -ārī, *suspect.*

tu-eor, -ērī, *watch, defend.*

vag-or, -ārī (vagabond), *wander.*

ver-eor, -ērī, *fear.*

vet-ō, -āre, vetu-ī, vetit-um, *forbid.*

LESSON 66.

Learn the conjugation of **loquor** (p. 84).

Revise the rules about the sequence of tenses and dependent questions (§§ 155-162).

244. RULE.—The verbs **ūtor**, *I use*, **abūtor**, *I misuse*, **fungor**, *I perform*, **fruor**, *I enjoy*, take an **ablative** representing the direct object of the corresponding English verbs ; an ablative is also used with **dignor**, *I deem myself worthy of*, **potior**, *I gain possession of*, **vescor**, *I feed on.*[1]

> i m p e d ī m e n t ī s et c a s t r ī s   *our men gained possession of the*
>   nostrī potītī sunt   *baggage and camp*

Learn Vocabulary 66 (p. 127).

---

[1] Rhyme :—Put ablative with **dignor, vescor, ūtor,**
                And **fungor, fruor, potior, abūtor.**

VOCABULARY 66.

abūt-or, -ī, abūs-us sum, *abuse* (with abl.).

adipisc-or, -ī, adept-us sum, *obtain.*

carō, carn-is, *f.* (carnal), *flesh.*

colloqu-or, -ī, collocūt-us sum (colloquy), *parley.*

confīd-ō, -ere, confīs-us sum, *be confident.*

ēlāb-or, -ī, ēlaps-us sum (elapse), *slip out, escape.*

expedīt-us, -a, -um (expedite), *light-armed.*

fru-or, -ī, fruct-us sum (fruition), *enjoy* (with abl.).

fung-or, -ī, funct-us sum (function), *discharge* (with abl.).

insequ-or, -ī, insecūt-us sum, *follow, pursue.*

īrasc-or, -ī, īrāt-us sum (irate), *be angry.*

lac, lact-is, *n.*, *milk.*

litter-a, -ae, *f.*, *letter (of the alphabet), character.*

loqu-or, -ī, locūt-us sum (loquacious), *speak, talk.*

persequ-or, -ī, persecūt-us sum (persecute), *follow up, pursue.*

proficisc-or, -ī, profect-us sum, *set out.*

sequ-or, -ī, secūt-us sum (sequel), *follow.*

sōlum, adv., *only.*

ūt-or, -ī, ūs-us sum, *use* (with abl.).

vesc-or, -ī,—, *feed on* (with abl.).

vīcīn-us, -a, -um (vicinity), *neighbouring.*

LESSON 67.

Learn the conjugation of **partior** (p. 85).

Revise the rules about the accusative and infinitive (§§ 167-174) and the ablative absolute (§§ 209-212).

245. Deponents are the only Latin verbs which have a perfect participle with active meaning. This participle is often used in agreement with the subject where, in the case of an ordinary verb, we should require the perfect participle passive in the ablative absolute construction or a temporal or causal clause.

Caesar, hostēs persecūtus, castra in colle posuit	*Caesar, having followed up the enemy, pitched his camp on a hill*
princeps, veritus nē ab omnibus dēsererētur, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsit	*the chief, fearing lest he should be deserted by all, sent ambassadors to Caesar*

Obs. 1.—In the first example given above the ablative absolute is inadmissible with **persecūtus**, because the participle refers to the subject of the sentence and must agree with it.   On the other hand, if for *having followed up the enemy* we substitute *having put the enemy to flight*, then, as **fugō** has no perfect participle with active meaning, we must either use a temporal clause, **cum hostēs fugāvisset,** or turn the expression into the passive and say **hostibus fugātīs,** where the ablative absolute is required because the participle refers to a word which is neither the subject nor the object of the verb **posuit.**

Obs. 2.—In the second example the *perfect* participle is rightly used because the feeling of fear preceded (and resulted in) the sending of ambassadors ; the use of the present participle in English is idiomatic.

Learn Vocabulary 67.

<div align="center">VOCABULARY 67.</div>

ador-ior,   -īrī,   adort-us   sum, *attack.*

cōg-ō, -ere, coēg-ī, coact-um, *collect.*

complex-us, -ūs, *m., embrace.*

dē imprōvīsō, *unexpectedly.*

ērip-iō, -ere, ēripu-ī, ērept-um, *tear away, snatch.*

exigu-us, -a, -um, *scanty.*

exper-ior, -īrī, expert-us sum (ex- periment), *try, put to the trial.*

hīc, adv., *here.*

ingred-ior, -ī, ingress-us sum (ingredient), *set foot in.*

mēt-ior, -īrī, mens-us sum (mete) *measure out.*

mor-ior, -ī, mortu-us sum (mor- tal), *die.*

nasc-or, -ī, nāt-us sum (nascent), *be born.*

opper-ior, -īrī, oppert-us or op- perīt-us sum, *wait.*

or-ior, -īrī, ort-us sum (orient), *arise.*

part-ior, -īrī (part), *divide.*

pat-ior, -ī, pass-us sum (patient), *suffer.*

pot-ior, -īrī, *get possession of, possess* (with abl.).

prōgred-ior. -ī, prōgress-us sum (progress), *advance.*

semel, adv., *once.*

The learner must now study Lessons 27-29 (on the compari-son of adjectives), if these were omitted before, and should write Exercises 27-29.

LESSON 68.
THE VERB *POSSUM*.

246. Possum, *I am able, I can* (consisting of the base of the adjective **pot-is**, *able*, +sum), is conjugated as follows :—

PRINCIPAL PARTS : **possum, posse, potu-ī.**

PRESENT PARTICIPLE (used as adjectives only) : **potens** (gen. **potent-is**), *powerful.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.   (*I am able.*)

pos-sum	pos-sumus
pot-es	pot-estis
pot-est	pos-sunt

IMPERFECT.   (*I was able.*)

pot-eram	pot-erāmus
pot-erās	pot-erātis
pot-erat	pot-erant

FUTURE.   (*I shall be able.*)

pot-erō	pot-erimus
pot-eris	pot-eritis
pot-erit	pot-erunt

PERFECT.[1]   (*I was or have been able.*)
    potu-ī, etc.

PLUPERFECT.   (*I had been able.*)
    potu-eram, etc.

FUTURE-PERFECT.   (*I shall have been able.*)
    potu-erō, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.   (*I should be able.*)

pos-sim	pos-sīmus
pos-sīs	pos-sītis
pos-sit	pos-sint

IMPERFECT.   (*I should be able.*)

pos-sem	pos-sēmus
pos-sēs	pos-sētis
pos-set	pos-sent

PERFECT.
    potu-erim, etc.

PLUPERFECT.   (*I should have been able.*)
    potu-issem, etc.

INFINITIVE.
PRESENT : **posse,** *to be able.*
PERFECT : **potu-isse,** *to have been able.*

Possum has no imperative, supine, or future participle.

247. RULE.—After verbs of **hindering** or **preventing** the dependent clause is introduced by **quōminus** or (if the principal sentence is negative) by **quīn.**

nāvēs ventō tenēbantur quō-minus in portum venīre possent	*the ships were being hindered by the wind from being able to reach the harbour*
Germānī retinērī nōn potuērunt quīn in nostrōs tēla conicerent	*the Germans could not be restrained from throwing darts at our men*

Learn Vocabulary 68 (p. 130).

[1] Tenses formed from the perfect or supine base of irregular verbs are conjugated regularly ; cp. § 186.

VOCABULARY 68.

comit-or, -ārī (concomitant), *accompany.*

ēdisc-ō, -ere, ēdidic-i, —, *learn by heart.*

flect-ō, -ere, flex-ī, flex-um (deflect), *bend, sway.*

obst-ō, -āre, obstit-ī, obstāt-um (obstacle) *prevent.*

persuād-eō, -ēre, persuās-ī, persuās-um, *persuade.*

prae, prep. (with abl.), *for, by reason of* (after a negative).

prohib-eō, -ēre (prohibit), *hinder, forbid.*

sine, prep. (with abl.), *without.*

vers-us, -ūs, *m., verse.*

LESSON 69.

THE COMPOUNDS OF *SUM*.

248. The following compounds of **sum** are conjugated like the simple verb (§ 138).

Present Indic.	Present Infin.	Perfect.	
ab-sum	ab-esse	āfu-ī	*am absent*
ad-sum	ad-esse	adfu-ī	*am present*
dē-sum	dē-esse	dēfu-ī	*am wanting, am neglectful*
in-sum	in-esse	infu-ī	*am in*
inter-sum	inter-esse	interfu-ī	*am in the midst*
ob-sum	ob-esse	obfu-ī	*am harmful, harm*
prae-sum	prae-esse	praefu-ī	*am in command*
prō-sum	prōd-esse	prōfui-ī	*am beneficial, do good*
sub-sum	sub-esse	subfu-ī	*am under*
super-sum	super-esse	superfu-ī	*am left*

NOTE.—**Prōsum** retains **d** (elsewhere dropped) before **e** ; *e.g.* the present indicative is

prō-sum	prō-sumus
prōd-es	prōd-estis
prōd-est	prō-sunt

249. The **compounds of sum** (except **possum**) are constructed with the **dative** case.

Caesar exercituī praeerat   *Caesar was in command of the army*

TEMPORAL CLAUSES (*continued from Lesson* 59).

250. (*a*) **Dum** meaning *as long as* (i.e. *all the time that*) is followed by the indicative, the tense being such as the sense requires.

> dum pugnābunt (cp. § 187)   *so long as they fight, we also will*
>   illī, nōs etiam pugnābimus   *fight*

251. Often the action of the principal sentence is represented as occurring within (not as extending throughout) the period referred to by the **dum**-clause ; **dum** is then idiomatically followed by the present indicative, and is rendered by *while*.

> dum Rōmānī in nāvibus   *while the Romans were wasting*
>   aedificandīs tempus terunt,   *time in building ships, the city*
>   urbs obsidēbātur   *was being besieged*

252. (*b*) **Dum**, *until*, is followed by the indicative if nothing more than time is expressed ; but by the subjunctive if it is implied that the event described in the **dum**-clause is or was purposely awaited.

> hostēs pugnāvērunt dum dux   *the enemy fought until the leader*
>   interfectus est   *was slain*
> pugnābimus dum dux hostium   *we will fight until the enemy's*
>   interficiātur   *leader is slain*

253. RULE.—The conjunctions **aut** and **vel** both mean *or*. **Aut** however presents alternatives each of which excludes the other, while **vel** leaves a choice open as to some detail.

> aut pugnandum aut vel hodiē   *we must either fight or else—*
>   vel crās moriendum est   *either to-day or to-morrow—die*

Learn Vocabulary 69.

VOCABULARY 69.

aedifici-um, -ī, *n.* (edifice), *build-ing*.

autem, conj. (to be placed after the first word), *but, however*.

custōs, custōd-is, *m.* (custody), *guard*.

Labiēn-us, -ī, *m.*, *Labienus* (a Roman commander).

paene, adv., *almost*.

tot, indecl. adj., *so many*.

II.—*VOLO, NOLO,* AND *MALO.*

§ 254. PRINCIPAL PARTS:—

    volō, velle, volu-ī, *I will, am willing.*

    nōlō (ne-, *not,* **+ volō), nolle, nōlu-ī,** *I will not, am unwilling.*

    mālō (mag-, as in **magis** *more,* **+ volō), malle, mālu-ī,** *I am more willing, prefer.*

	PRESENT PARTICIPLE.		
	volens (gen. **volent-is**), *willing.*	**nōlens** (gen. **nōlent-is**), *unwilling.*	*None.*

	INDICATIVE MOOD.		
PRESENT	(*I am willing*) **volō** **vīs** **vult** **volumus** **vultis** **volunt**	(*I am unwilling*) **nōlō** **nōn vīs** **nōn vult** **nōlumus** **nōn vultis** **nōlunt**	(*I prefer*) **mālō** **māvīs** **māvult** **mālumus** **māvultis** **mālunt**
IMPER- FECT	(*I was willing*) **volēbam** **volēbās** **volēbat** **volēbāmus** **volēbātis** **volēbant**	(*I was unwilling*) **nōlēbam** **nōlēbās** **nōlēbat** **nōlēbāmus** **nōlēbātis** **nōlēbant**	(*I was preferring*) **mālēbam** **mālēbās** **mālēbat** **mālēbāmus** **mālēbātis** **mālēbant**
FUTURE	(*I shall be willing*) **volam** **volēs** **volet** **volēmus** **volētis** **volent**	(*I shall be un- willing*) **(nōlam)** **nōlēs** **nōlet** **(nōlēmus)** **(nōlētis)** **(nōlent)**	(*I shall prefer*) **(mālam)** **(mālēs)** **(mālet)** **(mālēmus)** **(mālētis)** **(mālent)**
PERFECT	(*I was or have been willing*) **volu-ī,** etc.	(*I was or have been unwilling*) **nōlu-ī**	(*I preferred or have preferred*) **mālu-ī,** etc.
PLUPER- FECT	(*I had been willing*) **volu-eram,** etc.	(*I had been un- willing*) **nōlu-eram,** etc.	(*I had preferred*) **mālu-eram,** etc.
FUTURE- PERFECT	(*I shall have been willing*) **volu-erō,** etc.	(*I shall have been unwilling*) **nōlu-erō,** etc.	(*I shall have pre- ferred*) **mālu-erō,** etc.

	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.		
PRESENT	(*I should be will-ing*) **velim** **velīs** **velit** **velīmus** **velītis** **velint**	(*I should be un-willing*) **nōlim** **nōlīs** **nōlit** **nōlīmus** **nōlītis** **nōlint**	(*I should prefer*) **mălim** **mălīs** **mălit** **mălīmus** **mălītis** **mălint**
IMPER-FECT	(*I should be will-ing*) **vellem** **vellēs** **vellet** **vellēmus** **vellētis** **vellent**	(*I should be un-willing*) **nollem** **nollēs** **nollet** **nollēmus** **nollētis** **nollent**	(*I should prefer*) **mallem** **mallēs** **mallet** **mallēmus** **mallētis** **mallent**
PERFECT	**volu-erim,** etc.	**nōlu-erim,** etc.	**mălu-erim,** etc.
PLU-PERFECT	(*I should have been willing*) **volu-issem,** etc.	(*I should have been unwilling*) **nōlu-issem,** etc.	(*I should have preferred*) **mălu-issem,** etc
	IMPERATIVE MOOD.		
PRESENT	*None*	(*Be unwilling*) **nōlī** **nōlīte**	*None*
FUTURE	*None*	(*Thou shalt be unwilling*) **nōlītō** **nōlītō** **nōlītōte** **nōluntō**	*None*
	INFINITIVE.		
PRESENT	**velle,** *to be will-ing*	**nolle,** *to be un-willing*	**malle,** *to prefer*
PERFECT	**volu-isse,** *to have been willing*	**nōlu-isse,** *to have been unwilling*	**mălu-isse,** *to have preferred*

Obs. **Volō, nōlō,** and **mălō** have no supine or other parts which are formed from the supine base of verbs; nor have they any gerund.

NOTE.—**Nōlī** and **nōlīte** are frequently used with the present infinitive in prohibitions.

III.—*FERO* AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

§ 255. PRINCIPAL PARTS: **fer-ō, fer-re, tul-ī, lāt-um,** *I bear.*

BASES: **fer-** (present); **tul-** (perfect); **lāt-** (supine).

Obs. The perfect and supine bases of this verb are in no way connected with its present base, but are akin to **tollō,** *I raise.* The supine (tlātum) has lost an initial t.

ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT: **fer-ens** (gen. **ferent-is**), *bearing*

FUTURE: **lāt-ūrus, lāt-ūra, lāt-ūrum,** *about to bear*

PERFECT: **lāt-us, lāt-a, lāt-um,** *borne or having been borne*

GERUNDIVE: **fer-endus, fer-enda, fer-endum,** *fit to be borne*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.   (*I bear.*)

fer-ō	fer-imus
fer-s	fer-tis
fer-t	fer-unt

IMPERFECT.   (*I was bearing.*)

fer-ēbam	fer-ēbāmus
fer-ēbās	fer-ēbātis
fer-ēbat	fer-ēbant

FUTURE.   (*I shall bear.*)

fer-am	fer-ēmus
fer-ēs	fer-ētis
fer-et	fer-ent

PERFECT.   (*I bore or have borne.*)
tul-ī, etc.

PLUPERFECT.   (*I had borne.*)
tul-eram, etc.

FUTURE-PERFECT.   (*I shall have borne.*)
tul-erō, etc.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.   (*I am borne.*)

fer-or	fer-imur
fer-ris	fer-iminī
fer-tur	fer-untur

IMPERFECT.   (*I was being borne.*)

fer-ēbar	fer-ēbāmur
fer-ēbāris or -ēbāre	fer-ēbāminī
fer-ēbātur	fer-ēbantur

FUTURE.   (*I shall be borne.*)

fer-ar	fer-ēmur
fer-ēris or fer-ēre	fer-ēminī
fer-ētur	fer-entur

PERFECT.   (*I was or have been borne.*)
lāt-us sum, etc.

PLUPERFECT.   (*I had been borne.*)
lāt-us eram, etc.

FUTURE-PERFECT.   *I shall have been borne.*)
lāt-us erō, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.   (*I should bear.*)

fer-am	fer-āmus
fer-ās	fer-ātis
fer-at	fer-ant

IMPERFECT.   (*I should be bearing.*)

fer-rem	fer-rēmus
fer-rēs	fer-rētis
fer-ret	fer-rent

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.   (*I should be borne.*)

fer-ar	fer-āmur
fer-āris or fer-āre	fer-āminī
fer-ātur	fer-antur

IMPERFECT.   (*I should be borne.*)

fer-rer	fer-rēmur
fer-rēris or fer-rēre	fer-rēminī
fer-rētur	fer-rentur

ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.

<table>
<tr><td>SUBJUNCTIVE (<i>continued</i>).</td><td>SUBJUNCTIVE (<i>continued.</i>)</td></tr>
</table>

PERFECT.	PERFECT.
tul-erim, etc.	lāt-us sim, etc.
PLUPERFECT. (*I should have borne.*)	PLUPERFECT. (*I should have been borne.*)
tul-issem, etc.	lāt-us essem, etc.
IMPERATIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
PRESENT (*Bear.*)	PRESENT. (*Be borne.*)
fer fer-te	fer-re fer-iminī
FUTURE. (*Thou shalt* or *must bear.*)	FUTURE. (*Thou shalt* or *must be borne.*)
fer-tŏ fer-tŏte	fer-tor
fer-tŏ fer-untŏ	fer-tor fer-untor
VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.	VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

Active column:
INFIN. PRES. : fer-re, *to bear*
 ,,   PERF. : tul-isse, *to have borne*
 ,,   FUT. : lātūr-us esse, *to be about to bear*
GERUND : fer-endum, *bearing*, etc.
SUPINE : lāt-um, *to bear ;* lāt-ū, *in bearing*

Passive column:
INFIN. PRES : fer-rī, *to be borne*
 ,,   PERF. : lāt-us esse, *to have been borne*
 ,,   FUT. : lāt-um īrī, *to be about to be borne*

§ 236.   COMPOUNDS.

The following list shows the principal parts of the compounds of **ferō** ; they are conjugated like the simple verb both in the active and in the passive :—

Compounded with

ab :	aufer-ŏ	-re	abstul-ī	ablāt-um	*bear away*
ad :	affer-ŏ	-re	attul-ī	allāt-um	*bring*
cum :	confer-ŏ	-re	contul-ī	collāt-um	*bring together*
dis-:	differ-ŏ	-re	distul-ī	dīlāt-um	*separate*
ex :	effer-ŏ	-re	extul-ī	ēlāt-um	*bring out*
in :	infer-ŏ	-re	intul-ī	illāt-um	*bring in*
ob :	offer-ŏ	-re	obtul-ī	oblāt-um	*offer*
re-:	refer-ŏ	-re	rettul-ī (§ 270)	relāt-um	*bear back*
rĕ :	rĕfer-t (§ 233)	-re	rĕtul-it	——	*concern*
sub :	suffer-ŏ	-re	sustul-ī	sublāt-um	*endure*

Other preps. unchanged as in

dĕfer-ŏ		-re	dĕtul-ī	dēlāt-um	*bear down*

IV.—*EO* AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

§ 257. PRINCIPAL PARTS : eō, īre, īv-ī, it-um, *I go.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

PARTICIPLES { PRESENT : iens (gen. eunt-is), *going.*
{ FUTURE : it-ūrus, it-ūra, it-ūrum, *about to go.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.		SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
PRESENT. *(I go.)*		**PRESENT.** *(I should go.)*	
eō	īmus	eam	eāmus
īs	ītis	eās	eātis
it	eunt	eat	eant
IMPERFECT. *(I was going.)*		**IMPERFECT.** *(I should be going.)*	
ībam	ībāmus	īrem	īrēmus
ībās	ībātis	īrēs	īrētis
ībat	ībant	īret	īrent
FUTURE. *(I shall go.)*		**PERFECT.**	
ībō	ībimus	īv-erim *or* i-erim, etc.	
ībis	ībitis	**PLUPERFECT.** *(I should have gone.)*	
ībit	ībunt		

PERFECT. *(I went or have gone.)*
īvī *or* iī   īvimus *or* iimus
īvistī (iistī) *or* īvistis (iistis) *or*
  istī   istis
īvit, iīt (*or* īt) { īvērunt *or* iērunt
             { īvēre *or* iēre

PLUPERFECT. *(I had gone.)*
  īv-eram *or* i-eram, etc.

FUTURE-PERFECT. *(I shall have gone.)*
  īv-erō *or* i-erō, etc

īv-issem (i-issem) *or* issem, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. *(Go.)*
  ī   īte

FUTURE. *(Thou shalt or must go.)*
  ītō   ītōte
  ītō   euntō

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT : īre, *to go*
PERFECT : īvisse (iisse) *or* isse,
            to have gone
FUTURE : itūr-us esse, *to be*
            about to go

GERUND.

Nom. eundum, *going*, etc.

SUPINE.

Acc. it-um, *to go*

Obs. In the simple verb (but not in the compounds) the forms with **v** are more usual in tenses formed from the perfect base. The forms included in brackets ( ) are comparatively rare.

§ 258.   COMPOUNDS.

ab-eō	*go away*	per-eō	*perish*
ad-eō	*approach*	prae-eō	*precede*
co-eō	*come together*	prōd-eō	*go forth*
in-eō	*enter*	praeter-eō	*go past*
inter-eō	*vanish*	red-eō	*go back*
intro-eō	*go in*	sub-eō	*go up to endure*
ob-eō	*traverse, die*	trans-eō	*go across*

FIO AND *DO*.

259. Fīō, *I become, am made,* takes the place of the passive of **faciō,** *I make,* in tenses formed from the present base. The other tenses of **fīō** are supplied by the passive voice of **faciō,** of which the supine base is **fact-.**

PRINCIPAL PARTS : **fīō, fierī, fact-us sum.**

PARTICIPLES { PERFECT : **fact-us, fact-a, fact-um,** *having become.*
{ GERUNDIVE : **faciend-us, -a, -um,** *fit to become.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.		SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
PRESENT. (*I become.*)		PRESENT. (*I should become.*)	
fīō	——	**fīam**	**fīāmus**
fīs	——	**fīās**	**fīātis**
fit	**fīunt**	**fīat**	**fīant**
IMPERFECT. (*I was becoming.*)		IMPERFECT. (*I should become.*)	
fīēbam	**fīēbāmus**	**fierem**	**fierēmus**
fīēbās	**fīēbātis**	**fierēs**	**fierētis**
fīēbat	**fīēbant**	**fieret**	**fierent**
FUTURE. (*I shall become.*)		PERFECT : **fact-us sim,** etc.	
fīam	**fīēmus**	PLUPERF : **fact-us essem,** et	
fīēs	**fīētis**	IMPERATIVE MOOD.	
fīet	**fīent**	PRESENT. (*Become.*)	
PERFECT :	**fact-us sum,** etc.	**fī**	**fīte**
PLUPERF. :	**fact-us eram,** etc.	FUTURE. (*None*).	
FUT.-PERF. :	**fact-us erō,** etc.		

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT : **fierī,** *to become.* PERFECT : **fact-us esse,** *to have become.*
FUTURE : **factum īrī,** *to be about to become.*

Obs.—Except in the present infinitive and imperfect subjunctive, **fīō** follows the fourth conjugation ; it has, however, **ī** (long) in all parts except **fit, fierī,** and the imperfect subjunctive.

Compounds of **faciō** with a preposition are regularly conjugated in the passive, *e.g.* **afficiō,** *I affect* (compounded of the preposition **ad,** *to,* and **faciō**), has passive **afficior.**

260. Dō, dare, dedī, datum, *I give,* differs from a regular verb of the first conjugation in having **a** instead of **ā** after **d** (*e.g.* **damus, dabạm**), except in the second person sing. of the present indicative and imperative active, **dās, dā.**

NOTE.—**Circumdō,** *I surround, I put around,* is conjugated like **dō.**

LESSON 70.

Learn the conjugation of **volō, nōlō, mālō** (pp. 132, 133).

TEMPORAL CLAUSES (*continued*).

261. RULE.—**Postquam,** *after,* introduces a temporal clause in which the verb is in the **indicative.**

> **postquam haec audīvī, profectus sum.**
> *after I had heard* } *this, I set out.*
> *on hearing*

Obs.—The Latin perfect is usually found after **postquam,** whereas in English the natural tense is the past-perfect, or *on* with the gerund may be used.

262. RULE.—After verbs of motion, **purpose** may be expressed by the **accusative supine** instead of by a final clause.

> **dux lēgātōs mīsit pācem**   *the leader sent ambassadors to*
> **petītum**   *beg for peace*

263. RULE.—The present subjunctive is used in questions as to the course of action to be pursued, the imperfect in questions as to the course which should have been pursued. The negative is **nōn.** This is called the **deliberative** or **dubitative** subjunctive.

> **quid faciam?**   *what am I to do?*
> **quid facerem?**   *what was I to do?*

Learn Vocabulary 70.

VOCABULARY 70.

accip-iō, -ere, accēp-ī, accept-um (accept), *receive.*

consul-ō, -ere, consulu-ī, consult-um, *consult the interests of* (with dat.).

magis, adv., *rather.*

mortifer, mortifer-a, mortifer-um, *fatal, mortal.*

nocturn-us, -a, -um (nocturnal), *nightly, by night.*

regred-ior, -ī, regress-us sum, *return.*

LESSON 71.

Learn the conjugation of **ferō** and compounds (pp. 134, 135).

TEMPORAL CLAUSES (*continued*).

264. The verb in a clause introduced by the conjugation **antequam**, *before*, or its equivalent **priusquam**, is indicative when mere sequence of events is denoted ; but it is **subjunctive** if the action expressed by the clause is represented as **purposely anticipated** or (when the principal sentence is negative) **purposely awaited.**

nec p r i u s ille est relictus locus q u a m fīnis e s t pugnandī factus	*nor was that position abandoned before an end was made of fighting*
Rōmānus priusquam forēs obicerentur irrūpit	*the Roman rushed in before the gates could be shut*
Gallī nōn prius ducēs dīmīsērunt quam ab hīs esset concessum arma utī caperent	*the Gauls did not send away the chieftains before the latter had consented to take up arms*

Obs.—1. Often after **antequam** or **priusquam** the perfect indicative is more naturally rendered by the English past-perfect ; cp. § 224, NOTE.

Obs.—2. **Antequam, priusquam, postquam** may each be written as two words : **ante, prius,** or **post** is frequently placed in the principal sentence, **quam** introducing the clause. (Cp. the first and third of the above examples.)

Learn Vocabulary 71.

VOCABULARY 71.

aest-us, ūs, *m.* (estuary), *tide.*
bellum inferō, *make war upon.*
breviter, adv., *briefly.*
coor-ior, -īrī, coort-us sum, *arise.*
eōdem, adv., *to the same place.*
exstingu-ō, -ere, exstinx-ī, exstinct-um, *extinguish.*
Germān-us, -a, -um, *German.*

man-eō, -ēre, mans-ī, mans-um (mansion), *remain.*
pēs, ped-is, *m.* (pedal), *foot.*
pedem referō, *take to flight.*
solv-ō, -ere, solv-ī, solūt-um (solvent), *loose, pay.*
nāvēs solvō, *set sail.*

LESSON 72.

Learn the conjugation of **eō, fīō, dō,** and compounds (pp. 136, 137).

265. RULE.—Verbs meaning *to be appointed, to be named, to be thought,* are used with a complement (sometimes called a secondary predicate) in the same case as the subject. Such verbs are **creor,** *I am appointed* (magistrate, etc.), **appellor,** *I am called,* **videor,** *I seem.* The same rule applies to **fīō.**

Cicerō creābitur c o n s u l	*Cicero will be appointed consul*
dīcunt Cicerōnem c o n s u l e m creātum īrī	*they say that Cicero will be appointed consul*

Learn Vocabulary 72.

VOCABULARY 72.

discipul-us, -ī, *m., disciple, pupil.*
eō, adv., *thither, to that place.*
lūd-ō, -ere, lūs-ī, lūs-um (ludicrous), *play.*
mātūrius, adv., *earlier.*

ostend-ō, -ere, ostend-ī, ostent-um (ostentatious), *show.*
unde, adv., *whence.*
venia, -ae, *f.* (venial), *pardon.*
vid-eō, -ēre, vīd-ī, vīs-um, *see.*

LESSON 73.

SOME IMPERSONAL VERBS.

266. Impersonal verbs are used only in the third person singular and in the infinitive.

267.   I.—IMPERSONAL VERBS WITH AN OBJECT.

(*a*) With a direct object in the accusative, and an infinitive as subject.

dec-et, -ēre, *it beseems.*
dēdec-et, -ēre, *it misbeseems.*
dēlect-at, -āre, *it pleases.*

iuv-at, -āre, iūv-it, *it delights.*
oport-et, -ēre, *it behoves.*

oportet mē loquī, *it behoves me to speak.*

(b) With a direct object in the accusative, and a genitive as secondary object.

miser-et, -ēre, *it moves pity.*   pud-et, -ēre, *it shames.*
paenit-et, -ēre, *it repents.*   taed-et, -ēre, *it disgusts.*
pig-et, -ēre, *it causes dislike.*

    pudet mē stultitiae meae   *I am ashamed of my folly*

(c) With an indirect object in the dative, and an infinitive as subject.

        accid-it, -ere, accid-it, —, *it happens.*
        conting-it, -ere, contig-it, —, *it happens.*

        lib-et, -ēre, libitum est or libu-it, *it pleases.*
        lic-et, -ēre, licu-it or licitum est, *it is allowed.*

nōn cuivis hominī contingit   *it is not every man's luck to go to*
  adīre Corinthum.   *Corinth.*

licet tibi loquī.   *you may speak.*

Obs.—**Accidit** is commonly used for unfortunate events, **contingit** of fortunate events.

268.   II.—IMPERSONAL VERBS WITHOUT AN OBJECT.

These express natural phenomena :—

        ning-it, -ere, ninx-it, *it snows.*
        plu-it, -ere, pluit, —, *it rains.*
        ton-at, -āre, tonu-it, *it thunders.*

269. It has already been pointed out (§ 185) that, in the case of **dēbeō** with an infinitive, the time is indicated by the tense of **dēbeō**, whereas in English it is shown by that of the infinitive.   This is the case also with **possum, oportet,** and other verbs of similar meaning.

      potuī hōc facere   *I could have done this.*
      oportuit tē hōc facere   *you ought to have done this.*

Learn Vocabulary 73.

VOCABULARY 73.

avāriti-a, -ae, *f., avarice.* | **quot**, indecl. adj., *how many ?*

LESSON 74.

This Lesson may be postponed until after Lessons 75-80.

IMPERSONAL VERBS (*continued*).

270. (*a*) **Rēfert,** *it concerns,* where the English has a personal pronoun of the first or second person as object, is used with the ablative singular feminine of the corresponding possessive adjective. The same applies to the third person, when the pronoun is reflexive. With any other object, **interest** (see below) should be used.

quid hōc tuā rēfert?	*in what respect does this concern you?*
dixit illud suā rēferre	*he said it concerned himself*

(*b*) **Interest,** *it is the business of,* has the same construction as **rēfert** when the indirect object is of the first or second person, or third person reflexive; in the case of other words the genitive is used.

meā $\left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{interest} \\ \text{rēfert} \end{matrix} \right\}$ haec fierī. omnium interest haec fierī

it is $\left\{ \begin{matrix} my \\ everybody's \end{matrix} \right\}$ *interest that this should be done*

(*c*) The degree of importance is expressed by an accusative singular neuter (*e.g.* **quid,** *in what respect?* **nihil,** *in no respect*), or by **magnī** (**magnus,** *great*), **parvī** (**parvus,** *small*), **quantī** (**quantus,** *as great as*), **plūris** (**plūs,** *more*), **maximī** (**maximus,** *very great*), **minimī** (**minimus,** *very small*).

(*d*) The subject of **interest** and **rēfert** may be (i) an infinitive, (ii) a dependent question, or (iii) in the case of **interest,** a clause introduced by **ut** or **nē,** or (iv) in the case of **rēfert,** a neuter pronoun.

meā maximī interest $\left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{tē haec facere.} \\ \text{ut haec faciās.} \end{matrix} \right.$

it is of the greatest importance to me that you should do this.

quid illīus interest ubi sīs?	*what does it matter to him where you are?*

Obs.—With the exception of the use of a neuter pronoun as subject, all the constructions of **rēfert** can be used with **interest,** but not all the constructions of **interest** can be used with **rēfert.** Therefore, except with a neuter pronoun as subject, it is safer to use **interest.**

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

§ **271.** The following verbs are defective, that is to say only the parts given below are in use.

Āiō, *I say.*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE: **āiens** (gen. **āient-is**), *saying.*
INDICATIVE PRESENT: **āiō** (*I say*), **ais, ait; āiunt.**
    ,,   IMPERFECT: **āiēbam** (*I was saying*), etc. (complete).
    ,,   PERFECT: **ait**, *he said.*
SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT: **āiat**, *he would say.*

Inquam, *I say.*

INDICATIVE PRESENT: **inquam, inquis, inquit; inquimus, inquiunt**
    ,,   IMPERF. : **inquiēbat**, *he was saying.*
    ,,   FUTURE : **inquiēs** (*thou wilt say*), **inquiet.**
    ,,   PERFECT : **inquiī** (*I said* or *have said*), **inquistī, inquit.**

Fārī, *to say.* (The simple verb is only used in poetry.)

PARTICIPLE PRESENT :   **fantem** (acc.), **fantī** (dat.), *saying.*
          PERFECT :   **fāt-us, fāta**, *having said.*
          GERUNDIVE : **fand-us, -a, -um,** *fit to be said.*
INDICATIVE PRESENT :   **fātur**, *he says.*
          FUTURE :   **fābor** (*I shall say*), **fābitur.**
          PERFECT :   **fāt-us est**, *he said* or *has said.*
          PLUPERFECT: **fāt-us eram** (*I had said*), **fāt-us erat.**
IMPERATIVE PRESENT :   **fāre**, *say.* INFIN. PRESENT : **fārī**, *to say.*
GERUND : **fandī, fandō** (*saying*).   SUPINE : **fātū**, *in saying.*
  Some other parts (present, imperfect, and future indicative) of the compounds of **fārī** occur.

The following have no present base in use :—

  coep-ī, *I began*; **memin-ī**, *I remember*; **ōd-ī**, *I hate.*

They are regularly conjugated in the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect tenses, which (in the case of **meminī** and **ōdī**) are translated respectively as present, imperfect, and future. Some other parts are in use :—

From **coepī** : Perf. part. pass., **coept-us, -a, -um,** and tenses formed by it with **sum.**
 ,,   **meminī** : Imperative, **mementō** (*remember*), **mementōte.**
 ,,   **ōdī** : Future part., **ōsūr-us, -a, -um,** *about to hate.*

The following are isolated forms :—

(1) **Infit,** *he begins* (*to speak*).
(2) **Quaesō,** *I entreat;* **quaesumus** (used parenthetically like English *pray*).
(3) **Avē** or **avētō,** *hail!:* **avēte.** Infinitive, **avēre,** *to cry* "*hail.*"
(4) **Salvē,** *hail!*; **salvēte.** Ind. fut., **salvēbis.** Infin., **salvēre.**
(5) **Cedo,** *give* (imperative).

VOCABULARY 74.

aliēn-us, -a, -um (alien), *belong-*
ing to another, of others.
facultās, facultāt-is, *f.* (faculty),
opportunity.

ita, adv., *so.*
perīt-us, -a, -um, *experienced.*
prōdūc-ō, -ere, prōdux-ī, prō-
duct-um, protract.

LESSON 75.

ADVERBS.

272. Adverbs may for convenience be arranged in three classes :—

I. Adverbs expressing
  (*a*) Place, time, degree, etc. ;
  (*b*) Negation, interrogation, transition, etc.

II. Adverbs formed from pronominal roots ; *e.g.* **quō,** *whither*, from the root of **quī,** *who.*

III. Adverbs formed from adjectives ; *e.g.* **līberē,** *freely*, from **līber,** *free.*

I. (*a*) ADVERBS OF PLACE, TIME, DEGREE, ETC.

273. The following are examples :—

PLACE.

alibī, *elsewhere*
circā, \ *around*
circum, /
citrā, *on this side*
contrā, *opposite*
cōram, *face to face*
extrā, *outside*
infrā, *below*
intrā, \ *inside*
intus, /
iuxtā, *close*
nusquam, *nowhere*
passim, *hither and thither*

pōne, \ *behind.*
post, /
procul, *far*
prope, *near*
subter, *beneath*
super \ *above*
suprā, /
sursum, *upwards*
ubīque, *everywhere*
ultrā, *beyond*
undique, *from all sides*
usquam, *anywhere*
utrimque, *from both sides*
versus, *facing*

Time.

aliās, *at another time*

aliquandō, *at some time*

ante,

anteā, } *before*

cottīdiē,

quotīdiē, } *daily*

crās, *to-morrow*

dēmum, *at length*

diū, *long*

herī,

here, } *yesterday*

hodiē, *to-day*

iam, *already*

iamdūdum, } *a long time*

iamprīdem, }   *already*

intereā,

interim, } *meanwhile*

interdum, *sometimes*

iterum, *again*

māne, *in the morning*

modo, *just now*

mox, *soon*

numquam, *never*

nunc, *now*

nūper, *recently*

ōlim, *at that time*

parumper, *for a little while*

post

posteā, } *afterwards*

quandō, *when ?*

quondam, *formerly*

rursus, *again, back again*

saepe, *often*

semper, *always*

simul, *at the same time*

statim, *forthwith*

tandem, *at length*

tunc,

tum, } *then*

umquam, *ever*

Manner, Degree, etc.

adeō, *so*

aliter, *otherwise*

ceu, *like as*

clam, *secretly*

frustrā, *in vain*

ita, *so*

modo, *only*

nimium } *too much*

omnīnō, *altogether*

paene, *almost*

palam, *openly*

parum (also used as a neuter substantive nom. and acc. sing. } *too little*

praesertim, *especially*.

prope, *nearly*

quam, *as, than*

quasi, *as if*

quotiēs or quotiens, *as often as*

satis (also used as an indeclinable substantive or adjective) } *enough*

sīc, *thus*

tam, *so*

tamquam or

tanquam, } *as it were*

totiēs or totiens, *so often*

ultrō, *further*

usque, *all the way, even*

ut or utī, *as*

vix, *scarcely*

INTERROGATION, NEGATION, TRANSITION, ETC.

Interrogation, etc.

-ne (enclitic) introduces a question

nonne introduces a question expecting an affirmative answer

num introduces a question expecting a negative answer

quam, *how !*

quārē or **cūr,** *why ?*

quōmodo, *how ?*

quīn, *why not ?*

quotiēs or **quotiens,** *how often ?*

ut or **utī,** *how ?*

utrum . . . an, *whether . . . or*

utrum . . . $\begin{cases} \textbf{annōn} \\ \textbf{necne} \end{cases}$ *whether . . . or not*

Negation.

nōn, *not*

haud (rare with verbs), *not*

nē (in prohibitions), *not*

nē . . . quidem, *not even*

Transition, etc.

contrā, *on the other hand*

ergō, ⎫

ideō, ⎬ *there-*

igitur (seldom placed first), ⎭ *...*

item, *likewise*

praetereā, *besides*

proptereā, *therefore*

utinam introduces a wish

Obs.—The term enclitic applied to -ne and similar particles implies that they throw their accent back on to the words to which they are appended ; *e.g.* **vídes,** *you see* **vidésne,** *do you see ?*

II. ADVERBS FORMED FROM PRONOMINAL ROOTS.

274. Many adverbs are formed from the same roots as the demonstrative and relative pronouns ; some are included in the above lists. Others are—

hīc, *here*	**istīc,**	**illīc,**	**ibi,** *there*		**ubi,** *where*
hūc, *hither*	**istūc,**	**illūc,**	**eō,** *thither*		**quō,** *whither*
hinc, *hence*	**istinc,**	**illinc,**	**inde,** *thence*		**unde,** *whence*
hāc, *this way*		**illā,**	**eā,** *that way*		**quā,** *which way*

NOTE.—The adverbs in the right-hand column serve both as relatives and as interrogatives.

III.—ADVERBS FORMED FROM ADJECTIVES (INCLUDING PARTICIPLES).

275. From adjectives of the first class, *i.e.* those which follow the first and second declensions of substantives, adverbs are formed by the addition of -ē to the base of the adjectives.

EXAMPLES.

Adjective.	Base.	Adverb.
angustus, *narrow*	**angust-**	**angustē,** *narrowly*
ornātus, *adorned* (perf. part. passive of **ornō,** *I adorn*)	**ornāt-**	**ornātē,** *ornately*
pulcher, *beautiful*	**pulchr-**	**pulchrē,** *beautifully*
līber, *free*	**līber-**	**līberē,** *freely*

276. From some adjectives of the first class adverbs are formed by adding **-ō** to the base.

EXAMPLES.

Adjective.	Base.	Adverb.
rārus, *scanty*	**rār-**	**rārō,** *scantily*
consultus (perf. part. passive of **consulō,** *I deliberate*)	**consult-**	**consultō,** *on purpose*

277. From adjectives of the second class, *i.e.* those which follow the third declension of substantives, adverbs are formed by the addition of **-iter** to the base of the adjective ; but if the base of the adjective ends in **-nt,** then **-er** is added instead of **-iter.**

EXAMPLES.

Adjective.	Base.	Adverb.
memor, *mindful*	**memor-**	**memoriter,** *by heart*
ācer, *sharp*	**ācr-**	**ācriter,** *sharply*
brevis, *short*	**brev-**	**breviter,** *briefly*
fēlix *fortunate*	**fēlīc-**	**fēlīciter,** *fortunately*
prūdens, *discreet*	**prūdent-**	**prūdenter,** *discreetly*
amans, *loving* (prcs. active of **amō**), *I love*	**amant-**	**amanter,** *lovingly*

278. The accusative singular neuter of an adjective is often used as an adverb, sometimes even when a special form for the adverb exists.

EXAMPLES.

Adjective (Nom. Sing. Masc.)	Adjective (Acc. Sing. Neut.) **and Adverb**
multus, *much*	**multum,** *much*
dulcis, *sweet*	**dulce** (also **dulciter**), *sweetly.*
facilis, *easy*	**facile,** *easily.*
Also **plērīque** (pl.), *very many*	**plērumque,** *very frequently.*

279. The following adverbs are irregulary formed :—

	From **audax,**	*bold,*	**audacter,**	*boldly*
,,	**bonus,**	*good,*	**bene,**	*well*
,,	**citus,**	*quick,*	**cito,**	*quickly*
,,	**difficilis,**	*difficult,*	**difficulter,**	*with difficulty*
,,	**magnus,**	*great,*	**magnopere,**	*greatly*
,,	**malus,**	*bad,*	**male,**	*badly*
,,	**validus,**	*strong,*	**valdē,**	*strongly*

Obs.—**Magnopere** (also written as two words, **magnō opere**) properly means *with great labour* ; hence, *very much, greatly.*

280. RULE.—The third person singular of any tense of the passive of an **intransitive** verb modified by an adverb can be used **impersonally** to translate an English phrase containing a verbal noun and adjective.

   acerrimē pugnātum est *fierce fighting took place*

Learn Vocabulary 75.

<div align="center">VOCABULARY 75.</div>

approbō, -āre, *approve.*
certior fīō, *get information.*
col-ō, -ere, colu-ī, cult-um, *cultivate.*
discurr-ō, -ere, discurr-ī and **discucurr-ī, discurs-um,** *run (in different directions).*
longē, adv., *far.*
nōbil-is, -e, *nobly born.*
noctū, adv., *by night.*
nov-us, -a, -um (novel), *new.*

oppugnātiō, oppugnātiōn-is, *f.,* *siege.*
repente, adv., *suddenly.*
stō, stāre, stet-ī, stat-um, *stand, remain firm, persist in* (with abl.).
tum dēmum, adv., *then at length.*
utrimque, adv., *from both sides, on both sides.*
vac-ō, -āre (vacant), *have leisure* (with abl.).

LESSON 76.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

281. Adverbs formed from adjectives have (where the meaning admits of it) three degrees of comparison—positive, comparative, and superlative : *e.g.* **breviter,** *briefly* ; **brevius,** *more briefly* ; **brevissimē,** *most briefly.* Where no standard of comparison is expressed or distinctly understood, the comparative may denote " considerably " or " excessively," and the superlative " exceedingly " : *e.g.* **brevius,** *somewhat briefly* or *too briefly* ; **brevissimē,** *very briefly.*

282. A **comparative** adverb is the **accusative singular neuter** of the corresponding comparative adjective (cp. § 278).

A **superlative** adverb is formed by adding **-ē** to the base of the corresponding superlative adjective, in accordance with the rule for forming adverbs from adjectives of the first class.

These rules apply whether the comparison of the adjective is regular or irregular.

EXAMPLES.

	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Adjective.	**sanctus,** *religious*	**sanctior**	**sanctissimus**
Adverb.	**sanctē,** *religiously*	**sanctius**	**sanctissimē**
Adjective.	**ācer,** *sharp*	**ācrior**	**ācerrimus**
Adverb.	**ācriter,** *sharply*	**ācrius**	**ācerrimē**
Adjective.	**facilis,** *easy*	**facilior**	**facillimus**
Adverb.	**facile,** *easily*	**facilius**	**facillimē**
Adjective.	**bonus,** *good*	**melior**	**optimus**
Adverb.	**bene,** *well*	**melius**	**optimē**
Adjective.	**malus,** *bad*	**pēior**	**pessimus**
Adverb.	**male,** *ill*	**pēius**	**pessimē**

IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

283. The following are the only exceptions to the rules given in § 282 :—

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
magnopere, *greatly*	**magis**	**maximē**
multum, *much*	**plūs**	**plūrimum**

§ 284. Comparative and Superlative Adverbs not formed from Adjectives.

Positive.		Comparative.	Superlative.
diū,	*long*	**diūtius**	**diūtissimē**
nūper,	*recently*	——	**nūperrimē**
saepe,	*often*	**saepius**	**saepissimē**

285. Some words which are usually adverbs serve also as substantives denoting quantity and are constructed with a genitive ; *e.g.* **parum fortitūdinis,** *too little bravery* ; **satis frūmentī,** *enough corn.*

286. Rule.—The **genitive** is used with verbs of **condemning** and **accusing** to express the nature of the charge, and sometimes with verbs of **remembering** and **forgetting** to express that which is remembered or forgotten.

mē timōris arguunt   *they accuse me of fear*
numquam oblīviscar n o c t i s *I shall never forget that night*
   illīus

Obs.—With verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting* that which is remembered or forgotten is often expressed by the accusative.

Learn Vocabulary 76.

Vocabulary 76.

accūs-ō, -āre, *accuse.*
aegrē ferō, *resent bitterly* (lit. *bear with difficulty*).
ambit-us, -ūs, *m., bribery.*
argu-ō, -ere, argu-ī, argūt-um, *accuse.*
cav-eō, -ēre, cāv-ī, caut-um, *beware.*
cōpiōsē, adv., *fully.*
ferōciter, adv., *fiercely.*
impūne, adv., *with impunity.*

indulg-eō, -ēre, induls-ī, indult-um, *be indulgent, indulge* (with dat.).
mord-eō, -ēre, momord-ī, mors-um, *bite.*
oblīvisc-or, -ī, oblīt-us sum, *forget* (with gen. or acc.).
quāl-is, -e, *of what kind ? what sort of ?*
spond-eō, -ēre, spopond-ī, spons-um, *promise.*
vēnātōr, vēnātōr-is, *m., hunter.*

The learner must now study Lesson 25 (on irregular adjectives), if this was omitted before, and should write Exercise 25.

LESSON 77.
THE NUMERALS.

Learn the table of numerals (p. 153), but do not commit to memory the portions printed in lighter type.

In the table a hyphen divides the base from the variable ending of such of the numerals as are declinable.

287. (1) There is one numeral **substantive** : **mīlia** (*n.*), *thousands*.

(2) There are three series of numeral **adjectives** :—

(*a*) **Cardinal**, corresponding to the English series *one, two, three*, etc. ;

(*b*) **Ordinal,** corresponding to the English series *first, second, third*, etc. ;

(*c*) **Distributive**, denoting *one a-piece, two a-piece, three a-piece*, etc.

(3) There is a series of numeral **adverbs** denoting *once, twice, three times*, etc.

Note.—The ending of the ordinals from 18 upwards is sometimes spelt -ensim-us instead of -ēsim-us, and that of the adverbials fr~~n~~ 5 upwards -ens instead of -ēs ; *e.g.* **vīcensim-us, tricensim-us, quinquiens, sexiens.**

DECLENSION OF NUMERALS.

288. CARDINALS.—**Unus** is declined like **nullus** (§ 81). The declension of **duo** and **trēs** is given in § 82.

289. The cardinals denoting **hundreds** from 200 to 900 are declined like the plural of **bonus** (§ 36), except that they usually have genitive plural in -**um**, not in -**ōrum** or -**arum** ; *e.g.* **ducentum.**

290. The other cardinal numerals, *viz.* **4** to **20**, the **tens** up to 100, and **mille**, 1000, are indeclinable.

291. The substantive **mīlia** is declined in the plural only :—

N.V.A.	**mīlia**
Gen.	**mīlium**
Dat.	**mīlibus**
Abl.	**mīlibus**

Obs. 1.—A declinable numeral qualifying **mīlia** must, of course, be in agreement with it, and the substantive dependent on **mīlia** is put in the genitive ; *e.g.* **tria mīlia equitum,** 3000 *horsemen.*

Obs. 2.—**Mille** is an indeclinable adjective ; therefore *a thousand horsemen* (nominative) is **mille equitēs.**

292. ORDINALS AND DISTRIBUTIVES.—These are declined like **bonus** (§ 36), with the exception of **alter,** *second* (*of two*), for which see § 81, and NOTE 1.   The genitive plural of distributives generally ends in **-um,** not in **-ōrum** or **ārum** ; *e.g.* **dēnum.**

293.   ON COMPOUNDING NUMERALS.

21 to 99.—The smaller number follows the larger without **et** or precedes it with **et** ; *e.g.* **vīgintī quīnque** or **quīnque et vīgintī,** just as in English we say *twenty-five* or *five-and-twenty.*
The two numbers preceding each ten are commonly expressed by prefixing **duodē-, undē-** respectively to it ; see 28 and 29 in the table.   (**Dē** is a preposition denoting *from.*)   Such expressions as **vīgintī octo** and **octo et vīgintī** occur, but are less usual.

101 and upwards.—The larger number, as a rule, precedes the smaller, and **et** *may* be inserted (except in distributives) ; *e.g.* **duo mīlia (et) quīngentī (et) quadrāgintā equitēs** or **equitum duo mīlia (et) quīngentī (et) quadrāgintā,** 2540 *horsemen.*

Obs.—The substantive is not put in the genitive if separated from **mīlia** by numerals which do not qualify **mīlia.**

294. RULE.—The great or small **value** at which a thing is held is expressed by the **genitive singular neuter** of adjectives such as those given in § 270 (*c*).

quantī quisque sē ipse facit,	*at whatever price each values him-*
tantī fit ab amīcīs	*self, at this price he is valued by his friends*

	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.	ADVERBS.
1	ūn-us, *one*	prīm-us, *first*	singul-ī, *one a-*	semel, *once*
2	du-o	secund-us *or* alter*	bīn-ī [*piece*	bis
3	tr-ēs	terti-us	tern-ī *or* trīn-ī†	ter
4	quattuor	quart-us	quatern-ī	quater
5	quinque	quint-us	quīn-ī	quinquiēs
6	sex	sext-us	sēn-ī	sexiēs
7	septem	septim-us	septēn-ī	septiēs
8	octo	octāv-us	octōn-ī	octiēs
9	novem	nōn-us	novēn-ī	noviēs
10	decem	decim-us	dēn-ī	deciēs
11	undecim	undecim-us	undēn-ī	undeciēs
12	duodecim	duodecim-us	duodēn-ī	duodeciēs
13	tredecim	terti-us decim-us	tern-ī dēn-ī	terdeciēs
14	quattuordecim	quart-us decim-us	quatern-ī dēn-ī	quater deciēs
15	quindecim	quint-us decim-us	quīn-ī dēn-ī	quindeciēs
16	sēdecim	sext-us decim-us	sēn-ī dēn-ī	sēdeciēs
17	septemdecim	septim-us decim-us	septēn-ī dēn-ī	septiēs deciēs
18	duodēvigintī	duodēvicēsim-us	duodēvicēn-ī	duodēviciēs
19	undēvigintī	undēvicēsim-us	undēvicēn-ī	undēviciēs
20	vigintī	vicēsim-us	vicēn-ī	viciēs
21	ūn-us et vigintī *or* vigintī ūn-us	ūn-us et vicēsim-us *or* vicēsim-us prīm-us	vicēn-ī singul-ī	semel et viciēs
22	du-o et vigintī *or* vigintī du-o	alt-er et vicēsim-us *or* vicēsim-us alt-er	vicēn-ī bīn-ī	bis et viciēs
28	duodētrigintā	duodētricēsim-us	duodētricēn-ī	duodētriciēs
29	undētrigintā	undētricēsim-us	undētricēn-ī	undētriciēs
30	trigintā	tricēsim-us	tricēn-ī	triciēs
40	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsim-us	quadrāgēn-ī	quadrāgiēs
50	quinquāgintā	quinquāgēsim-us	quinquāgēn-ī	quinquāgiēs
60	sexāgintā	sexāgēsim-us	sexāgēn-ī	sexāgiēs
70	septuāgintā	septuāgēsim-us	septuāgēn-ī	septuāgiēs
80	octōgintā	octōgēsim-us	octōgēn-ī	octōgiēs
90	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsim-us	nōnāgēn-ī	nōnāgiēs
100	centum	centēsim-us	centēn-ī	centiēs
200	ducent-ī	ducentēsim-us	ducēn-ī	ducentiēs
300	trecent-ī	trecentēsim-us	trecēn-ī	trecentiēs
400	quadringent-ī	quadringentēsim-us	quadringēn-ī	quadringentiēs
500	quingent-ī	quingentēsim-us	quingēn-ī	quingentiēs
600	sescent-ī	sescentēsim-us	sescēn-ī	sescentiēs
700	septingent-ī	septingentēsim-us	septingēn-ī	septingentiēs
800	octingent-ī	octingentēsim-us	octingēn-ī	octingentiēs
900	nongent-ī	nongentēsim-us	nongēn-ī	nongentiēs
1000	mille	millēsim-us	singul-a mīl-ia	milliēs
2000	du-o mīl-ia	bis millēsim-us	bīn-a mīl-ia	bis milliēs

* Alter, *second (of two)* ; secundus, *second (of a larger number than two).*

† Trinī (not ternī) is used with substantives plural in form but singular in meaning ; *e.g.* trīnae aedēs, *three houses.*

296. RULE.—Tantī, quantī, plūris, minōris, are also used to denote the **price** at which a thing is bought or sold. In the case of all other words the price is expressed by the **ablative.**

quantī hōc emptum est? parvō	*at what price was this bought? At a small price*

297. RULE.—Extent of space is expressed by the **accusative** case.

fossam quindecim pedēs lātam perduxit	*he constructed a trench fifteen feet broad*

298. RULE.—The **predicative dative** expresses that which a person or thing **serves as,** or that in which a thing results.

maximō mihī ūsuī eris	*you will be of very great service to me*
haec tibi sunt cūrae	*these things are an anxiety to you*

Learn Vocabulary 77.

VOCABULARY 77.

angusti-ae, -ārum, *f.pl., narrowness.*

circumd-ō, -are, circumded-ī, circumdat-um, *surround.*

collaud-ō, -āre, *bestow praise on.*

conscrīb-ō, -ere, conscrips-ī, conscript-um, *enrol.*

conspic-or, -ārī, *come in sight of.*

dist-ō, -āre, —, —, *be distant.*

ēgred-ior, -ī, ēgress-us sum, *quit.*

exstru-ō, -ere, exstrux-ī, exstruct-um, *raise, construct.*

fac-iō, -ere, fēc-ī, fact-um, *make, value, esteem.*

inter sē, *among themselves, one from another.*

lāt-us, -a, -um (latitude), *wide, broad.*

nancisc-or, -ī, nact-us sum, *get.*

ōv-um, -ī, *n.* (oval), *egg.*

pass-us, -ūs, *m., pace.*

perdūc-ō, -ere, perdux-ī, perduct-um, *lead through, carry* or *construct* (a wall, trench, etc.).

praesertim, *adv., especially.*

vend-ō, -ere, vendid-ī, vendit-um (vend), *sell.*

LESSON 78.

PREPOSITIONS.

299. Most Latin prepositions (like all English ones) take the accusative case. The ablative, however, is used with some prepositions (Lesson 79), and a few take either case (Lesson 80).

300. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH SUBSTANTIVES IN THE ACCUSATIVE ONLY.

ad, *to*
adversum or ⎱ *opposite, towards*
  adversus, ⎰
ante, *before*
apud, *with* (a person), *at the house of*
circā, ⎱ *around*
circum, ⎰
circiter, *about* (of number)
cis ⎱ *this side of*
citrā, ⎰
contrā, *against*
ergā, *towards* (a person)
extrā, *outside*
infrā, *below*

inter, *between, among*
intrā, *within*
iuxtā, *close by*
ob, *because of*
penes, *in the power of*
per, *through*
pōne, *behind*
post, *after*
praeter, *beyond*
prope, *near*
propter, *near, on account of*
secundum, *following on*
suprā, *above*
trans, *across*
ultrā, *on the other side of*

301. The following lines contain the above twenty-eight prepositions, which are used with the **accusative** only :—

ante, post, cis, citrā, ultrā,   propter, ob, secundum, ergā ;
trans and per ; adversus, contrā ;   ad and apud, prope, iuxtā ;
praeter, pōne ; infrā, suprā ;   penes, inter, intrā, extrā.
circum, circiter, and circā ;

302. RULE.—The genitive of a substantive accompanied by an adjective in agreement may be used to describe some characteristic or quality, and this construction is accordingly known as the **genitive of quality.**

Titus Manlius vir erat p r i s c a e   *Titus Manlius was a man of old-*
  sevēritātis   *fashioned sternness*
Caesar quadrāgintā diērum   *Caesar advanced forty days'*
  iter prōcessit   *march*

Learn Vocabulary 78 (p. 156).

VOCABULARY 78.

altitūdō, altitūdin-is, *f.* (altitude), *height, depth.*

consist-ō, -ere, constit-ī, constit-um, *take up a position.*

equitāt-us, -ūs, *m.*, *cavalry* (collective).

incol-ō, -ere, incolu-ī, incult-um, *dwell.*

inopi-a, -ae, *f.*, *scarcity.*

invīt-us, -a, -um, *unwilling.*

opprim-ō, -ere, oppress-ī, op-press-um, *overwhelm.*

pondus,ponder-is, *n.* (ponderous), *weight.*

Rhodan-us, -ī, *m.*, *Rhone.*

sax-um, -ī, *n.*, *rock, stone.*

solum, -ī, *n.*, *soil.*

veterān-us, -a, -um, *veteran.*

LESSON 79.

PREPOSITIONS (*continued*).

Revise the rules about conditional sentences (§§ 182-192).

303. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH SUBSTANTIVES IN THE ABLATIVE ONLY.

ā (before a consonant)
ab (before a vowel or **h**) } *from,*
abs (only with **tē**, *thee* } *by*

cōram, *in the presence of*
cum, *with*
dē, *down from, concerning*
ē or ex, *out of*

palam, *in the presence of*
prae, *in front of*; with neg. *on account of*
prō, *before, instead of*
procul, *far from*
sine, *without*
tenus, *as far as*

Rhyme :—ā, ab, abs, cum, ex and ē,
cōram, palam, procul, dē,
sine, tenus, prō, and prae.

NOTE 1.- –**Tenus** is also found with the genitive case.

NOTE 2.—**Ab** (not **ā**) must be used before a vowel or **h**, and is not uncommon before some consonants. **Ex** is used before a vowel or a consonant ; **ē** before consonants only.

304. The usual place for a preposition is, of course, immediately before its substantive (or pronoun), but some prepositions are occasionally found after their substantives, **tenus** being always so placed.

305. Cum always follows the personal pronouns **mē, tē, nobīs, vobīs, sē,** and is then enclitic (Vocab. 8, *Obs.*) ; *e.g.* **mēcum,** *with me.* **Cum** is generally enclitic also with the relative pronoun (**quō, quā, quibus**), but *may* precede ; *e.g.* **quōcum** or **cum quō,** *with whom.*

Learn Vocabulary 79.

<div align="center">VOCABULARY 79.</div>

affirm-ō, -āre, *affirm.*

Collīn-us, -a, -um, *Colline* (the name of one of the gates of Rome).

crēditor, crēditōr-is, *m., creditor*

dēflu-ō, -ere, dēflux-ī, dēflux-um, *flow down.*

despic-iō, -ere, despex-ī, despect-um, *look down.*

ērudīt-iō, ērudītiōn-is, *f., learning.*

rēs gestae, *exploits.*

respond-eō, -ēre, respond-ī, respons-um, *reply.*

<div align="center">

LESSON 80.

PREPOSITIONS (*concluded*).

</div>

306. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH SUBSTANTIVES IN THE ACCUSATIVE OR ABLATIVE.

clam (rarely with abl.), *without the knowledge of*

in { with acc., *into*
{   ,,   abl., *in*

sub { with acc. (denoting motion *up to from beneath*), *up to*
{   ,,   abl. (,,   rest *under*), *below*

super (with abl. rare and mostly poetic), *over*

subter (,,   in poetry only), *under*

Rhyme :—To **super, subter, clam,** we give
    Most commonly accusative.
    If **in** and **sub** should *motion* show,
    With them accusative must go ;
    But when they mean *rest* at a place,
    The ablative's the proper case.

CONJUNCTIONS.

307. Conjunctions are of two kinds—**co-ordinating** and **subordinating**. A co-ordinating conjunction joins two words or phrases, two principal sentences, or two clauses dependent on the same principal sentence ; a subordinating conjunction joins a dependent clause to its principal sentence.

I. Co-ordinating Conjunctions.

308. The following are in common use :—

et,
-que (enclitic; Vocab. 8, *Obs.*)
āc (before a consonant only),   } *and*
atque (before any letter),
etiam
necnōn,   } *also*
quoque,
et . . . et,   } *both .*
cum (or quum) . . . tum,   } *and*
nec or neque, *nor*
nec . . . nec,
neque . . . neque,   } *neither   nor*
tamen (seldom placed first), *yet, however*

sed,
autem (not placed first),   } *but*
at,
aut,   } *or* (§ 253)
vel,
-ve (enclitic)
aut . . . aut,
vel . . . vel,   } *either .*
sīve . . . sīve, } *whether . . .*
seu . . . seu,   } *if . . . or if*
enim (not placed first),
nam,   } *for*
namque,

II. Subordinating Conjunctions.

309. The sections to which reference is made contain particulars as to the use of the conjunctions in questions.

(*With Indicative or Subjunctive.*)
sī, *if* (§§ 182-192)
nisi, *unless* (§ 183)
etsī,
etiamsī,   } *although* (§§ 232, 234)

cum,   { with indic., *when* (§ 222)
       { with subj., *when* (§ 223),
       { since (§ 229), *although*
       {   (§ 234)
antequam,   } *before that* (§ 264)
priusquam,
dum,   { with indic., *whilst, until*
       {   (§§ 250-252),
       { with subj., *until* (§ 252)
dōnec, *until*
quōd,   } *because* (§§ 226, 228)
quia,
quoniam, *since* (§§ 226, 228)

(*With Indicative only.*)
quamquam, *although* (§ 233)
ubi,
ut or utī,   } *when* (§ 224)

(*With Subjunctive Only.*)
ut or utī, *in order that, so that,*
    although (§§ 198, 203, 235)
nē, *lest* (§ 198, 235)
postquam, *after* (§ 261)
quō, *that* (*thereby*)
quōminus, *that* (*thereby*) . . . *not*
    (§ 247)
quīn, *that* (*thereby*) . . . *not, but
    that* (§§ 208, 247)
quamvīs,   } *although* (§ 234)
licet,

VOCABULARY 80.

abd-ō, -ere, abdid-ī, abdit-um, *hide* (trans.).

accēd-ō, -ere, access-ī, access-um (accession), *approach*.

admov-eō, -ēre, admōv-ī, admōt-um, *move up*.

bib-ō, -ere, bib-ī, — (bibulous), *drink*.

cad-ō, -ere, cecid-ī, cās-um (case) *fall*.

cognosc-ō, -ere, cognōv-ī, cognit-um, *recognise*.

dēscend-ō, -ere, dēscend-ī, dēscens-um, *descend*.

dīvid-o, -ere, dīvīs-ī, dīvīs-um, *divide*.

fund-ō, -ere, fūd-ī, fūs-um, *pour*; perf. part. pass., *stretched*.

immin-eō,-ēre, —, —(imminent), *overhang*.

iug-um, -ī, n., *yoke*.

moen-ia, -ium, n.pl., *walls* (of a city).

nās-us, -ī, m. (nasal), *nose*.

pet-ō, -ere, petīv-ī or peti-ī, petit-um, *seek, ask*.

profund-us, -a, -um (profound), *deep*.

recip-iō, -ere, recēp-ī, recept-um, *receive*.

ru-ō, -ere, ru-ī, rut-um, *rush*.

sin-ō, -ere, sīv-ī, sit-um, *allow*; perf. part. pass., *situated*.

spēlunc-a, -ae, f., *cave*.

spons-us, -ī, m., *betrothed, lover*.

terg-um, -ī, n., *back*.

testūdō, testūdin-is, f., *tortoise* (a defence made by interlocking shields).

vert-ō, -ere, vert-ī, vers-um (convert), *turn* (trans.)

The learner must now study Lesson 74 (on impersonal and defective verbs), if this was omitted before, and should write Exercise 74.

HINTS.

Some of these hints apply only to the latter exercises; they should there-fore be revised from time to time as the learner works through his book.

I.—On Translating Latin Sentences into English.

(1) Look for the verb, distinguishing (in a complex sentence) between the principal verb and that of a dependent clause.

(2) If the verb is in the first or second person, the termination by itself suffices instead of a subject. Sometimes this is the case also if the verb is in the third person, but with a third person verb you will usually find a subject in the form of a substantive, or an adjective used substantivally, or a pronoun—of course in the nominative case (unless the verb is in the infinitive, § 172).

(3) If the verb is transitive, look for an object in the accusative. If it is intransitive, there may be an indirect object in the dative; with copulative verbs ("to be," etc.) there will probably be a completion of the predicate in the same case as the subject.

(4) Assign adjectives and adjectival pronouns to the substantive with which they agree, and the genitives to the substantive, etc., on which they depend.

(5) Any words which still remain unaccounted for will very likely be adverbial in character, perhaps a proposition with its case, perhaps an ablative of instrument or ablative absolute. If the verb is of the second person, there may be a substantive in the vocative. The subject or object may have a substantive in apposition with it.

II.—On Translating English Sentences into Latin.

(1) Analyse the sentence.

(2) See that your verb agrees with the subject in number and person; also, if the verb is in a perfect tense passive or deponent, see that the participle is in the right number and gender. In a dependent clause be careful of the mood; and if you use the subjunctive, remember the rule for the sequence of tenses. See, too, that you use the right voice.

(3) If the Latin verb is transitive, put its object in the accusative. Beware of doing the same when you are rendering an English transitive verb (*e.g.* " obey ") by an intransitive Latin verb (e.g. *pareo*, " I am obedient ").

(4) Copulative verbs take a complement in the same case as the subject. So too with *quam*, " than," the words denoting the things compared must be in the same case.

(5) Be sure that every adjective agrees with that to which it refers either as attribute or as predicate.

(6) The *normal* Latin order is—subject, indirect object, direct object, adverb or adverbial expression, verb. An attribute other than an adjective of quantity commonly follows its substantive. In a complex sentence the dependent clause or clauses may be inserted in the principal sentence, but not in such a way as to leave a number of verbs together at the end.

EXERCISES.

EXERCISE 1.

A.—1. Saltas. 2. Vocant. 3. Cursas. 4. Errat. 5. Clamant. 6. Saltamus. 7. Erratis. 8. Vocas. 9. Ambulamus. 10. Cantat. 11. Vocatis. 12. Cursat. 13. Erras. 14. Ambulat. 15. Saltatis. 16. Erramus. 17. Voco. 18. Clamatis. 19. Cantas. 20. Saltant. 21. Clamamus. 22. Vocat. 23. Amant. 24. Erro. 25. Ambulatis. 26. Clamas. 27. Amamus. 28. Vocamus. 29. Errant. 30. Ambulas.

B.—1. You are walking. 2. You (pl.) sing. 3. He is shouting. 4. I am calling. 5. They are dancing. 6. We are mistaken. 7. They love. 8. You (pl.) dance. 9. We are calling. 10. You (pl.) shout. 11. We are walking. 12. He sings. 13. You (pl.) call. 14. I dance. 15. They shout. 16. He dances. 17. You are mistaken. 18. You (pl.) love. 19. We are shouting. 20. He walks. 21. I am singing. 22. They are calling. 23. We dance. 24. They love. 25. I am calling. 26. You are shouting. 27. They are walking. 28. We sing. 29. They are mistaken. 30. They are running to and fro.

EXERCISE 2.

A.—1. Amabit. 2. Festinabat. 3. Arabant. 4. Peccabamus. 5. Vigilabitis. 6. Saltabimus. 7. Cantabam. 8. Clamabo. 9. Errabunt. 10. Saltabas. 11. Amabamus. 12. Festinabimus. 13. Peccabitis. 14. Arabo. 15. Saltabatis. 16. Vigilabant. 17. Clamabas. 18. Cantabis. 19. Errabam. 20. Saltabit. 21. Festinabatis. 22. Amabitis. 23. Saltabunt. 24. Vigilabo. 25. Peccabant. 26. Errabis. 27. Saltabamus. 28. Clamabit. 29. Cantabat. 30. Arabas.

B.—1. They will hasten. 2. You were sinning. 3. You will shout. 4. I shall command. 5. We were dancing. 6. He will watch. 7. They were labouring. 8. You (pl.) were singing. 9. We shall plough. 10. He was watching. 11. I shall sing. 12. You will hasten. 13. He was commanding. 14. You (pl.)

were shouting. 15. They will dance. 16. You (pl.) were watching. 17. I shall plough. 18. You will labour. 19. You (pl.) will watch. 20. They were ploughing. 21. He will command. 22. You (pl.) will shout. 23. We were singing. 24. He will hasten. 25. They were dancing. 26. You (pl.) will love. 27. You will plough. 28. They were commanding. 29. They will command. 30. We were ploughing.

EXERCISE 3.

A.—1. Laudavit. 2. Clamavi. 3. Superabit. 4. Laboravistis. 5. Festinate. 6. Vulneravere. 7. Saltavisti. 8. Pugnaverunt. 9. Vigila. 10. Dubitavimus. 11. Saltabamus. 12. Pugnate. 13. Saltavistis. 14. Festinavimus. 15. Arate. 16. Clamavistis. 17. Laudavimus. 18. Laboraverunt. 19. Superate. 20. Festinaverunt. 21. Pugnavimus. 22. Salta. 23. Vulneravi. 24. Vigilate. 25. Festinavistis. 26. Dubitaverunt. 27. Aravi. 28. Ambulavisti. 29. Vulnerabimus. 30. Erravistis.

B.—1. They overcame. 2. You have wounded. 3. Watch (pl.). 4. He fought. 5. I shouted. 6. They will praise. 7. Hasten. 8. You (pl.) hesitated. 9. We have blamed. 10. You (pl.) are overcoming. 11. They have wounded. 12. I have overcome. 13. You wounded. 14. Fight (pl.). 15. We watched. 16. We shouted. 17. He will plough. 18. You (pl) hastened. 19. Hesitate. 20. You have overcome. 21. Sing. 22. You (pl.) have fought. 23. We ploughed. 24. You watched. 25. He has loved. 26. They laboured. 27. Watch. 28. You (pl.) ploughed. 29. He hesitated. 30. We have shouted.

EXERCISE 4.

A.—1. Feminae saltant. 2. Nautae filia clamavit. 3. Puella nautam amat. 4. Regina nautas laudavit. 5. Poetae, rosas amatis. 6. Puellae nautas laudabant. 7. Puellae audaciam nautarum laudabunt. 8. Sapientia nautae procellam superat. 9. Nautae, pugnas laudabatis. 10. Puellae rosas laudant. 11. Silvas amamus. 12. Turba clamavit. 13. Reginae sapientia turbam superavit. 14. Filias poetarum amamus. 15. Poeta reginam laudabit. 16. Regina, rosas amas. 17. Poeta, audaciam feminarum lauda. 18. Nautae, feminam vulneravistis. 19. Audacia turbae sapientiam reginae superavit. 20. Poetae, silvas reginae laudavistis.

B.—1. The sailor hesitated. 2. The poets were singing. 3. The queen is walking. 4. The girls are dancing. 5. The sailors

will watch. 6. We like roses. 7. You praise wisdom. 8. Bold-ness overcomes wisdom. 9. The woman wounded the sailor. 10. The poets were praising roses. 11. Poet, you loved the girl. 12. The sailors will overcome the storm. 13. The queen will praise wisdom. 14. Poets will praise wisdom. 15. The poets love woods. 16. The poet loved the queen's daughter. 17. The wisdom of the sailors will overcome the storm. 18. The queen was praising the poet's wisdom. 19. The daughters of the queen praised the bold-ness of the crowd. 20. The queen's boldness overcame the poet's wisdom.

EXERCISE 5.

A.—1. Nautae patriam* amant. 2. Nauta agricolae pecuniam donavit. 3. Puellae, reginae rosas indicate. 4. Hastis pugnavi-mus. 5. Feram hasta vulneravi. 6. Agricolae insulam habitant. 7. Audaciam poetae culpabimus. 8. Agricola reginam rosis delec-tat. 9. Puellae agricolis hastas donabunt. 10. Reginae sapientiam pecunia superabitis. 11. Insulae nautas delectabant. 12. Agri-colae audaciam nautarum laudaverunt. 13. Nauta vitam agricolae laudabat. 14. Agricolae feminis rosas donabunt. 15. Nautae, reginam audacia delectabatis. 16. Cantate, poetae ; saltate, puel-lae. 17. Regina nautis pecuniam donabit. 18. Nauta filiam poetae hasta vulneravit. 19. Nautis pecuniam donabo. 20. Poetae, audaciam turbae sapientia superate.

B.—1. The girls will dance. 2. The farmer was ploughing. 3. We inhabit an island. 4. I shall point out the boldness of the women. 5. The girl pointed out the roses to the farmer. 6. You have wounded a wild beast with *your*† spear. 7. The queen blames *her* native land. 8. I gave the girl a rose. 9. The woman gives money to the sailor. 10. Sailors delight women by *their* boldness. 11. The poet wounded the farmer with a spear. 12. You (pl.) overcame the queen by *your* wisdom. 13. The queen's daughters were praising the sailors' boldness. 14. The farmer's daughters were giving roses to the poets. 15. The queen will delight the poet by *her* wisdom. 16. The farmers wound the wild beasts with spears. 17. The poet was praising the queen's wisdom. 18. Woman, you

* The Latin for the possessive adjective *my, your, his,* etc., is often omitted if it can be easily understood ; *e.g.* here it is clear that the native land which sailors love is *their* native land, and the word *their* should be added in translating.

† Words in italics in this and following exercises need not be translated.

will give roses to *your* daughter.   19. Woman, *your* daughters will
give roses to the sailors.   20. Farmers, overcome the wild beasts of
the island with spears.

EXERCISE 6.

A.—1. Procella erit.*   2. Pugna in silva fuit.   3. Agricolae
sumus.   4. Nauta fuisti.   5. Erant in insula aquilae.   6. Regina
es.   7. Poetae filiae in Gallia sunt.   8. In Italia fuimus.   9.
Nautae in insula erunt.   10. Nautarum audacia victoriae causa
est.   11. Regina sum.   12. Poetae sumus.   13. Filiae nautarum
estis.   14. Silvae in insulis fuerunt.   15. Turba in via erat.   16.
Nautae in oris insulae sunt.   17. Columbae in insulis sunt.   18.
Agricolae in silva erunt.   19. Feminae reginae erunt.   20. Nautae,
poetae sumus.

B.—1. You have been queen.   2. I shall be a sailor.   3. Rome
is in Italy.   4. The queen's folly was the cause of the battle.   5.
There are doves in the woods.   6. The sailors are on the shore of
the island.   7. *There* were crowds in the streets.   8. The queen was
in Gaul.   9. We have been sailors.   10. You are poets.   11. *There*
were roses in the woods.   12. *There* is a crowd of sailors on the shore
of the island.   13. The queen's folly will be the cause of victory.
14. The girls were in the wood.   15. We are farmers' daughters.
16. *There* were eagles in Gaul.   17. The queen of the island is in
Italy.   18. You are farmers.   19. *There* will be wild beasts in the
woods of the island.   20. Girl, you will be queen.

EXERCISE 7.

A.—1. Nauta filium culpabat.   2. Domini filii servos laudabant.
3. Medici filio equum donabo.   4. Medicus morbos superat.   5.
Sapientia medicorum morbum non superabit.   6. Agricolarum
hortos laudavimus.   7. Medice, servi dominum vulneraverunt.
8. Amici, non inimici, sumus.   9. Filius reginae equos medici
laudebat.   10. In insula sunt tauri et equi.   11. Nauta filio gla-
dium donabit.   12. Medice, avum gladio vulneravi.   13. Filii
reginae avum gladio necavere.   14. Fluvios insulae laudabimus.
15. Dominus medicis pecuniam donabit.   16. Sapientia medico-
rum reginam delectabat.   17. Agricolae filios et nautae filias
amavimus.   18. Servi, amicos domini necavistis.   19. Medicorum
filii in horto ambulant.   20. Dominus filiae equum donavit.

* When the third person of *sum* stands as a verb of complete pre-
dication, it is often translated by *there is, there are, there was, there will
be*, etc.

B.—1. The farmer's bulls were in the island. 2. Rivers and woods delight poets. 3. The disease will overcome the doctors' wisdom. 4. The doctor's son was walking in the garden. 5. The girl loves *her* grandfather. 6. Slaves, slay your master with a sword. 7. The doctor's sons are walking in the gardens. 8. The farmer's horses will delight the lord's son. 9. I like horses and bulls. 10. The queen's sword delights the girls. 11. Slave, you have slain *your* master with a sword. 12. We were praising the rivers of the island. 13. You do not love the enemies of *your* friends. 14. The doctor's daughters are dancing in the garden. 15. The lord's sons were walking in the woods. 16. We gave money to the doctor. 17. The queen's grandfather loved (*use the imperfect*) poets. 18. Bulls and horses delight farmers. 19. Women do not fight with swords. 20. We will kill the queen's sons with a sword.

EXERCISE 8.

A.—1. Agricolae agros arabant. 2. Regina, insulam genero donabis. 3. Pueri libros, puellae rosas laudaverunt. 4. Feminae liberos culpant. 5. In agris erravi. 6. Servos ministrosque culpavisti. 7. Magistrorum libri puerum delectaverunt. 8. Agricolae apros hastis superaverunt. 9. Agricolarum agros non laudavimus. 10. Genero soceros non semper amant. 11. Ministri feram gladio necabunt. 12. Stultitiam puerorum culpavi. 13. Viri feminis pecuniam donaverunt. 14. Reginae gener liberos poetae culpavit. 15. Servi agros domini arant. 16. Puerorum libri magistrum non delectabunt. 17. Viri gladios, feminae libros laudabant. 18. Pueri apros hastis vulneraverunt. 19. Nautae in silvis errabunt. 20. Magister libros generorum laudavit.

B.—1. The boys were praising the masters' wisdom. 2. The children will dance in the garden. 3. The queen gave gardens to her servants. 4. The men wounded the wild boars with spears. 5. Farmers like fields *and* poets *like* books. 6. The Gauls slew the women and children. 7. You (pl.) will give a book to the girl *and* a horse to the boy. 8. The masters did not always praise the boys. 9. Servants, you have slain the queen's son-in-law with a sword. 10. The farmers' horses will be in the fields. 11. The wild boars overcame the servants. 12. I do not praise the fields of Gaul. 13. The queen was blaming the folly of *her* son-in-law. 14. Books do not always delight children. 15. Master, I was walking in the farmer's fields. 16. The doctor's wisdom did not overcome the carpenter's disease. ·17. Roses *delight* girls, swords delight boys. 18. I praised the woman *but* blamed the men. 19. We wounded the wild boar with a spear. 20. The queen was always giving money to her son-in-law.

EXERCISE 9.

A.—1. Oppida aedificatis. 2. Bella non laudamus. 3. Agricolae proelia non amant. 4. Reginae dona culpabas. 5. Venena
medicorum laudavi. 6. Praemia nautis donate. 7. Scuta in
templo sunt. 8. Romani oppidum spoliabunt. 9. Templum in
insula aedificabimus. 10. Stultitia saepe est initium belli. 11.
Romani oppida et templa spoliavere. 12. Aurum et argentum
reginam delectant. 13. Poetae, dona deorum laudate. 14. Scuta
gladiosque in templo dedicavimus. 15. Nauta, proelia belli narra.
16. Feminae aquam, viri vinum laudant. 17. Dona magistri
pueros delectabant. 18. Dominum veneno necabimus. 19.
Romani oppida et agros spoliabunt. 20. Viri pueris praemia
donaverunt.

B.—1. We blame wars. 2. Tell the queen's deeds, poets. 3.
We praise the joys of life. 4. You blame the gifts of the gods.
5. Boy, give the sailors wine. 6. I shall not praise the rewards
of folly. 7. We are building a town in the island. 8. Wine was
the beginning of joy. 9. You (pl.) were praising the towns of Gaul.
10. Relate the battle to *your* father-in-law. 11. Doctors overcome
diseases by drugs. 12. The queen was giving rewards to the poets.
13. The poets' joy delighted the queen. 14. The boys were handling the shields and swords of the men. 15. The servants will kill
the queen with poison. 16. You will build towns in the woods.
17. In the earth are gold and silver. 18. The queen's anger will be
the beginning of the war. 19. Pillage the temples, slay the men.
20. Farmers do not often handle swords and shields.

EXERCISE 10.

A.—1. Silvas amoenas Italiae laudavimus. 2. Verba poetae
docti turbam confirmaverunt. 3. Pueri in horto amoeno erant. 4.
Facta amicorum perfidorum culpamus. 5. Ira reginae patriae
noxia est. 6. Vitia reginae belli causa erant. 7. Verba puerorum
stultorum non laudavisti. 8. Magnae turbae in viis clamabant.
9. Viri feminas timidas multis verbis confirmavere. 10. Praemia
magna nautis bonis donabimus. 11. Romani templa magna in
multis oppidis aedificaverunt. 12. Regina, aurum multum in
templo dedicavisti. 13. Puerorum gaudium magistro gratum erit.
14. Viri verba feminarum timidarum non laudant. 15. Poeta
reginae bonae facta splendida narravit.

B.—1. I blamed the words of the treacherous sailor. 2. The
vices of the wicked lords will be the cause of the war. 3. There
were many eagles in the large island. 4. The anger of the queen

will overcome the timid sailors. 5. The drugs of the learned doctor are not pleasing to the boy. 6. Sailors, you have overcome many dangers by *your* great boldness. 7. You (pl.) do not love treacherous friends. 8. The queen encouraged the learned poet with splendid gifts. 9. I was walking in the pleasant woods. 10. In Gaul *there* are many long rivers. 11. We will build splendid temples in the towns. 12. Master, you did not blame the deeds of the bad boys. 13. The dangers of the long way were not pleasing to the timid women. 14. I will give a large sum of money to the clever doctors. 15. We were blaming the deeds of the foolish sailors.

EXERCISE 11.

A.—1. Pueri aegri sunt. 2. Puellas pulchras amamus. 3. Agnos teneros immola. 4. Aquam puellae aegrae donavi. 5. Oculi reginae pulchrae nigri sunt. 6. Amicos asperos et perfidos non amamus. 7. Agricolae tauros nigros et equos albos laudaverunt. 8. Sapientia viri docti feminas pulchras delectavit. 9. Romani agros agricolarum miserorum vastabunt. 10. Filiae nautae aegri pecuniam donavi. 11. Pericula viae asperae sunt multa. 12. Puellae, rosas albas rubrasque deae dedicavistis. 13. Nautae puellas donis pulchris delectaverunt. 14. Poetae, facta splendida reginae pulchrae narrate. 15. Servis aegris rosas donabo.

B.—1. Give red roses to the girl. 2. I have sacrificed a black bull. 3. The temple is sacred. 4. The eyes of the beautiful girls were large. 5. We blamed the rough words of the sailor. 6. The red roses and white lilies will delight the sailor's eyes. 7. Queen, you gave much gold and silver to the black slaves. 8. The rough way was hurtful to the delicate woman. 9. You will give roses to the sick woman. 10. The slaves killed the sacred doves. 11. The cold winds will be hurtful to the tender lambs. 12. The Romans are building beautiful towns and large temples. 13. Wretched farmers, you are ploughing small fields. 14. The daughters of beautiful women are not always beautiful. 15. The sailor overcame the farmer with harsh words.

EXERCISE 12.

A.—1. Vulnerabamini. 2. Culpabamur. 3. Amaris. 4. Regina laudatur. 5. Oppida spoliantur. 6. Oppida a Gallis aedificantur. 7. Praemiis splendidis a regina honorabaris. 8. A bonis non amamini. 9. Agricola a nauta superabatur. 10. Somno et cibo

recreabamini. 11. A medico docto culpamur. 12. Marce, a regina amaris. 13. Puer a nauta castigatur. 14. Puellae tenerae via longa defatigantur. 15. Apri ab agricolis hastis vulnerabantur.

B.—1. You were being chastised. 2. We are being wounded. 3. Marcus, you are blamed. 4. Towns were being built. 5. Bulls are being sacrificed. 6. The women are loved by *their* sons. 7. The splendid deeds of the beautiful queen were being narrated by the poet. 8. Boys, you are blamed by the master. 9. We were being delighted by the poet's words. 10. Sailors, you are praised by the queen. 11. The girl is being wounded by the slave with a sword. 12. You are delighted with the poet's books. 13. Marcus, you were being chastised by the master. 14. Riches are desired by the wretched farmers. 15. You are praised by women, *but* you are blamed by men.

EXERCISE 13.

A.—1. Amabimini. 2. Culpata sum. 3. Laudaberis. 4. Nautae, superabimini. 5. Oppida spoliata sunt. 6. Templa deorum a Gallis spoliabuntur. 7. Regina, a malis laudaberis, a bonis culpaberis. 8. Vita rustica ab agricolis semper laudabitur. 9. Dominus a servis necatus est. 10. Feminae benevolentia medici delectatae sunt. 11. Puer ab avo castigabitur. 12. Nautae, praemiis splendidis honorabimini. 13. Ab amicis multis culpati sumus. 14. Oppida a Gallis habitabuntur. 15. Facta reginae malae a bonis culpata sunt.

B.—1. You will be chastised. 2. We shall be praised. 3. Queen, you have been overcome. 4. The beautiful girls have been praised. 5. The bulls will be sacrificed. 6. Rewards will be given to the skilful physicians. 7. The poet was honoured by the queen's friendship. 8. Town life will never be praised by doctors. 9. The towns were pillaged by the Gauls. 10. We shall be praised by our enemies *and* blamed by our friends. 11. The danger was overcome by the queen's boldness. 12. You will be delighted with the rivers and woods of the island. 13. Girls, you will be delighted with the roses and lilies of the garden. 14. The men were overcome by the women's tears. 15. You will be wounded by a black slave.

EXERCISE 14.

A.—1. Nautae navem coronis ornabant. 2. Cives classem comparabunt. 3. Clades reginae nuntiata est. 4. Navis, cives conservavisti. 5. Oppidum turri firmabitur. 6. Cives turres aedificabant. 7. Poeta, reginae cladem nuntiabis. 8. Nautae,

nubes spectate. 9. Colles civium oculos delectant. 10. Insula vallibus et collibus abundat. 11. Naves a civibus comparabantur. 12. Puellae, vestibus pulchris delectabimini. 13. Hortos magnos civibus donavimus. 14. Cives, castra turribus firmate. 15. Oppida hostium templis splendidis ornata sunt.

B.—1. The ship will be overcome by the winds. 2. The camp will be pillaged by the enemy (pl.). 3. We dedicated the fleet to Neptune. 4. Queen, you have been wounded by a treacherous citizen. 5. Boys, you will be delighted with the hills and valleys of Gaul. 6. The citizens will get together money and garments. 7. The ships' prows have been adorned with garlands. 8. Sailor, you will be delighted with the citizens' gardens. 9. Queen, cheer the timid citizens. 10. The winds will be hurtful to the fleet. 11. We will give ships to the citizens. 12. The enemy were looking at the valleys and hills of the island. 13. The town is being strengthened by large towers. 14. The queen will be delighted with the beautiful garment. 15. Citizens, build towers.

EXERCISE 15.

A.—1. Cives, pontem turribus firmate. 2. Dentes vulpium longi et albi sunt. 3. Silvas in montibus specto. 4. Multae urbes in montibus aedificatae sunt. 5. Athenis templa splendida in montibus aedificata sunt. 6. Incolae montium glandes vorant. 7. Gadibus cives miseri glandes vorabant. 8. Aqua fontis feminas recreavit. 9. Aqua fontium frigida erat. 10. Cives, urbem pontibus et turribus firmavistis. 11. Urbes turribus firmatae sunt. 12. Romae vitam rusticam laudabam. 13. Cives templa donis splendidis ornaverunt. 14. Gabiis templa a civibus donis splendidis ornabuntur. 15. Tarenti ab incolis urbis educaberis.

B.—1. Romulus built the city. 2. The Romans are building many cities in Italy. 3. The enemy (pl.) will behold the towers of the cities. 4. The fox will wound the sailor with his teeth. 5. The citizens will strengthen the city with towers. 6. The sailors were praising the towers of the city. 7. You have beheld many mountains, sailors. 8. At Corinth you beheld many mountains. 9. At Gades the citizens are educated by the poets. 10. At Athens many fountains were dedicated to the goddess. 11. I beheld a city on the mountain. 12. At Rome you (pl.) praised temples and fountains, at Gades islands and ships. 13. Many citizens have been wounded by the teeth of the foxes. 14. At Gabii you (pl.) were delighted by mountains and valleys. 15. At Gades you will be honoured with splendid gifts.

EXERCISE 16.

A.—1. Sedilia multa in hortis reginae sunt. 2. Venti classem incitabunt. 3. Cubilia ferarum in montibus erant. 4. Nautae in mari nabant. 5. Agricolae vulpes retibus superabunt. 6. Violentia maris naves superavit. 7. Equus animal pulchrum est. 8. Vectigalia deae dedicata sunt. 9. Venti frigidi animalibus noxii erunt. 10. Nautae fessi cubilia laudaverunt. 11. Cives hortes sedilibus ornant. 12. Equus calcari incitabitur. 13. Romae animalia multa sacra erant. 14. Vulpes ab agricolis rete superabitur. 15. Gadibus mare et naves laudabas.

B.—1. I will prepare beds for the sailors. 2. The violence of the storm was hurtful to the nets. 3. The lord's spurs were sharp. 4. The boys will overcome the foxes with nets. 5. The sailor blamed the violence of the sea. 6. Many animals are swimming in the river. 7. You drive forward *your* horse with spurs. 8. We will give ships and nets to the sailors. 9. Beds will be welcome to the tired women. 10. Citizens do not like taxes. 11. The foxes overcame the farmer's net with their teeth. 12. The sailor has beheld many seas. 13. The citizens will be delighted with the seas and fountains. 14. At Corinth I used to* swim in the sea. 15. At Athens the citizens used to sacrifice many animals to Neptune.

EXERCISE 17.

A.—1. Aestate paludes siccae erunt. 2. Virtutem militum laudabimus. 3. Naves tempestate quassatae sunt. 4. Crassus pedites in hibernis collocabit. 5. Nauta tempestates hiemis culpabat. 6. Galli principibus non obtemperant. 7. Hieme urbes, castra aestate laudamus. 8. Crasse, equites revoca. 9. Trabes pontis longae sunt. 10. Filii principum Romae educabuntur. 11. Galli agros aestate peragrabant. 12. Milites, civitatem virtute conservavistis. 13. Pedites a Crasso in hibernis collocati sunt. 14. Aestate multae ranae in paludibus erunt. 15. Equites, equos calcaribus incitate.

B.—1. The storms of winter shattered the fleet. 2. The foxes wander about the woods in winter and summer. 3. We placed the booty in the marsh. 4. The chiefs of the state were treacherous. 5. The cavalry will be recalled by Crassus. 6. In winter the soldiers praised winter quarters. 7. Citizens, obey the chief.

* Use the imperfect tense : e.g. *I used to live at Rome*, Romae habitabam.

8. The city has been strengthened by marshes and mountains.
9. The infantry were wandering in the woods. 10. The soldiers'
valour was being praised by the chiefs. 11. The fleet will be
shattered by the violence of the storms. 12. The swords of the
infantry were sharp. 13. Sailor, you will not praise the sea in
winter. 14. The deeds of the cavalry will be praised by Crassus.
15. In winter we dance, in summer we walk.

EXERCISE 18.

A.—1. Puellae flores amant. 2. Crasse, sermonem oratoris
laudavisti. 3. Athenis sermonibus oratorum delectatus sum. 4.
Passeres in ramis arborum specto. 5. Leones silvas et montes
insulae habitabant. 6. Romae consules legibus non semper obtem-
perabant. 7. Dei virtutem viris, feminis pulchritudinem donave-
runt. 8. Leones gregem pastoris in montibus vorabant. 9. Viri et
feminae sunt homines. 10. Regis filii Corinthi educantur. 11.
Consul dentibus leonum vulneratus est. 12. Pueri, nidum passeris
spoliavistis. 13. Consul agros regis perfidi vastabat. 14. Aestate
pulchritudine florum delectaberis. 15. Leones a pastoribus retibus
superati sunt.

B.—1. I love *my* mother. 2. You do not always obey *your*
father and mother. 3. Soldiers, you blamed the cowardice of the
leaders. 4. In summer the flocks will wander about the fields.
5. The king's fleet has been shattered by storms. 6. The woods
abound with flowers. 7. Leaders, you have not obeyed the king.
8. We praised the beauty of the flowers. 9. The cowardice of the
cavalry will be overcome by the consul's valour. 10. Sons are
always loved by *their* mothers. 11. Treacherous shepherds, you will
be punished by the judges. 12. The leaders placed the soldiers
in winter quarters. 13. The lairs of the lions were in the moun-
tains. 14. Cavalry, you are being recalled by the consul. 15. The
orator's conversation excited the king's valour.

EXERCISE 19.

A.—1. Dux foedera violabat. 2. Nautae litora insulae per-
agrabant. 3. Pater scelera filii laudavit. 4. Carmina poetae
oratorem non delectaverunt. 5. Virtutem consulum carminibus
celebrabimus. 6. Milites periculis itineris perturbati sunt. 7.
Multa cadavera post proelium spectavimus. 8. Puellae, capita
coronis ornavistis. 9. Agricolae rus, nautae mare laudant. 10.

Foedus a rege perfido violatum est. 11. Dedecus est praemium
scelerum. 12. Frigus hiemis greges teneros excruciavit. 13.
Milites, oneribus et longo itinere excruciati estis. 14. Aestate
puellae in litore curvo saltant. 15. Regina perfida scelerum
praemiis delectata est.

B.—1. The king praised the poet's songs. 2. Judges, you did
not blame the consul's crime. 3. The leaders of the Gauls are
violating the treaties. 4. The flashes of lightning were frightening
the flocks. 5. The flocks will be frightened by the flashes of
lightning. 6. Poets, celebrate the king's deeds by *your* songs.
7. We beheld the dead bodies of the lions on the shore. 8. I shall
not praise the rewards of crimes. 9. Poet, you are always praising
past times. 10. The consuls were tortured by *their* wounds.
11. The dangers of the march frightened the soldiers. 12. The
slaves were carrying burdens on their heads. 13. The soldiers will
be overcome by cold and wounds. 14. Sailors, behold the beauty
of the winding shore. 15. The soldiers will relate to the citizens the
dangers of *their* past marches.

EXERCISE 20.

A.—1. Servi onera gravia in capitibus portabant. 2. Agricola
frigus hiemis acris culpabat. 3. Filiae agricolarum aestate alacres
sunt. 4. Carthagini vita servorum tristis erat. 5. Fulgura milites
fortes non perturbavere. 6. Horatii carmina dulcia et brevia sunt.
7. Pulchritudinem equorum celerium laudavimus. 8. Miles fortis
vulneribus gravibus exanimatus est. 9. Equi aurigarum alacrium
certamine incitati sunt. 10. Aestate fontis aqua dulcis gregibus
grata erat. 11. Omnes cives oratione acri Ciceronis hodie
incitabuntur. 12. Amici fideles tristi feminae dona utilia donabunt.
13. Omnes virtute ducis alacris conservati sumus. 14. Veiis omnes
cives facta fortia fidelis servi laudant. 15. Cicero orationibus
acribus, Horatius carminibus dulcibus Romanos delectabat.

B.—1. The winter was keen. 2. There will be a fierce contest
at Veii to-day. 3. The horse is keen and swift. 4. The sad woman
was weeping in the street. 5. Poets, you have sung sad songs. 6.
We urge forward swift horses with spurs. 7. Queen, to-day you
are cheerful, yesterday you were sad. 8. The eager soldier is
tormented by the pain of his severe wounds. 9. Farmer, you praise
long summers *and* short winters. 10. All the citizens praised the
sweet songs of Horace. 11. The eager boys will overcome the fox
with *their* swift arrows. 12. The gifts of faithful friends are always

welcome.   13. Crassus, you will overcome all the dangers of the march with *your* swift horses.   14. All the citizens will be sad at Carthage to-day.   15. Horace celebrated the joys of country life by *his* sweet songs.

EXERCISE 21.

A.—1. Reginam infelicem catenis onerabimus.   2. Leo rapax sagitta celeri superabitur.   3. Omnes Caesarem felicem appellabant.   4. Patres filiorum sapientium felices sunt.   5. Patrem filii sapientis felicem appello.   6.   Caesar Gallos vectigalibus ingentibus onerabit.   7. Rex infelix, scelera reginae catenis digna sunt.   8. Dux audax hostes rapaces fugavit.   9. Cives prudentes, oratori sapienti obtemperate.   10. Omnes pulchritudinem praestantem reginae laudabant.   11. Cadaver leonis ingentis in litore spectavimus.   12. Crasse, copias ingentes hostium fugavisti.   13. Caesar principes fideles praemiis ingentibus oneravit.   14. Filios patrum sapientium felices puto.   15. Scelera turpia militum praemiis indigna putavimus.

B.—1. A wise king will praise a wise plan.   2. Wise leaders do not blame wise plans.   3. The wise plan of the leaders are worthy of praise.   4. We thought the wise plan of the leaders worthy of praise.   5. The forces of the Gauls were immense.   6. All Caesar's plans will be bold.   7. The prudent leaders were blaming Caesar's bold plans.   8. The rapacious enemy (pl.) will be overcome by the bold soldiers.   9. Cicero's speech will be worthy of the praise of wise *men*.   10. You (pl.) loaded the unhappy leader with chains.   11. You (pl.) will be delighted by the words of the prudent orators.   12. All *men* think Cicero wise.   13. The unhappy woman gave an immense sum of money to the rapacious leader.   14. All *men* call an unfaithful friend base.   15. The songs of the greedy poet are unworthy of the queen's praise.

EXERCISE 22.

A. 1. Divites   sed   infelices   sumus.   2. Caesaris   scelerum immemor es.   3. Post proelium Galli consulem superstitem gladiis exanimaverunt.   4. Cur luna sole minor est ?   5. Urbem maiorem in monte aedificabimus.   6. Lacrimae reginae inopis regem excruciant.   7. Virtus ducum vigilum a Caesare laudabatur.   8. Caesar milites   superstites   praemiis   ingentibus   oneravit.   9. Clamores Gallorum feminam inopem perturbant.   10. Amici divitum non semper fideles sunt.   11. Divites amicorum pauperum interdum immemores sunt.   12. Maiorem laudem poetis quam militibus donamus.   13. Agri agricolarum inopum a Crasso vastabuntur.

14. Cur nautae maiora dona Neptuno quam Marti dedicant?
15. Matris laus duci dulcior erit quam reginae praemia.

B.—1. Soldiers, be watchful.   2. The sun is larger than the moon.
3. Why do you give rewards to the rich?   4. Why did you give
greater rewards to the rich than to the poor?   5. I will give better
gifts to the boy than to the girl.   6. The leaders of the Gauls put
to flight the surviving infantry.   7. The poor are sometimes happier
than the rich.   8. The watchful leaders were preparing greater
forces.   9. Give money to the helpless sailor.   10. We are not
unmindful of the queen's kindness.   11. I beheld a watchful soldier
on the tower.   12. Nothing is sweeter in summer than woods and
fountains.   13. We do not always think the life of rich *men* happy.
14. The mother of the surviving leader will dedicate the arms of her
son to Mars.   15. The soldiers were overcome by the tears of the
helpless women.

EXERCISE 23.

A.—1. Gradus turris numeravi.   2. Exploratores currus hostium
numerabunt.   3. Pericula itineris exercitui noxia erunt.   4. Dux
currus in cornu dextro collocavit.   5. Galli multos milites arcubus
vulneraverunt.   6. Umbra quercuum greges delectat.   7. Pastores,
fructibus dulcibus horti recreabimini.   8. Nauta, portus insulae
culpavisti.   9. Caesar fines Gallorum cum magno exercitu intravit.
10. Puer stultus folia quercus numerabat.   11. Genua valida
taurorum agricolis utilia sunt.   12. Sagittae manum reginae et
genu regis vulneraverunt.   13. Currus et arcus a ducibus Gallorum
parabantur.   14. Carmina Horatii in manibus omnium civium sunt.
15. Hieme Caesar exercitum in hibernis collocabat, aestate agros
hostium vastabat.

B.—1. Farmers praise oaks in summer.   2. The ships were
entering the harbour.   3. Horns are useful to bulls.   4. Rich
women praise white hands.   5. The Roman army entered the
territories of the Gauls.   6. Caesar will place the cavalry on the
wings.   7. Boy, you will be delighted by the soldier's bow.   8.
Spies, why did you not count the enemy's chariots?   9. The consul
is sacrificing a bull on the steps of the temple.   10. Boys, you will
be delighted by the fruit of the trees.   11. The girls were praising
needles, the boys were praising bows.   12. Nothing is more useful
to men than sight.   13. Caesar will give immense rewards to the
army.   14. The knees of the spy were wounded by an arrow.   15.
The farmer's bull wounded the shepherd's son with *its* horn.

EXERCISE 24.

A.—1. Spes remedium est multorum dolorum. 2. Crassi filii in acie pugnabant. 3. Milites segnitiem ducem culpabant. 4. Fide amicorum delectamur. 5. Omnes res in insula abundant. 6. Dierum praeteritorum immemor es. 7. Speciem virtutis non laudamus. 8. Exercitus in magna planitie pugnabant. 9. Multos dies agros Gallorum vastabamus. 10. Dies aestate longi, hieme breves sunt. 11. Mater faciem filiae pulchram putavit. 12. Cras planitiem intrabimus et turres urbis spectabimus. 13. Caesar animos militum spe praedae confirmavit. 14. Facie pulchra puellae delectaberis, Marce. 15. Rerum multarum immemor sum, sed non fidei militum.

B.—1. The farmer praised the long days of summer. 2. Farmers, you will be delighted by the long days of summer. 3. The king is lord of all things. 4. We have inhabited the plain *for* many years. 5. The spies beheld the enemy's line of battle. 6. The soldiers were being delighted by the hope of booty. 7. You (pl.) will never be unmindful of the loyalty of the Gauls. 8. The soldiers will blame the apathy of the leader *for* many days. 9. The consul was wounded in battle (*acies*) by the leader of the enemy. 10. Soldiers, you were praising the queen's beautiful face. 11. The treacherous citizens did not praise Cicero's loyalty. 12. The general will overcome the apathy of the soldiers by the hope of rewards. 13. The treacherous queen was delighting the citizens by a semblance of benevolence. 14. The leaders will place the cavalry on the right wing of the line. 15. We are forgetful of many things, but not of the apathy of the consuls.

EXERCISE 25.

A.—1. Alii alia clamant. 2. Mors nemini grata est. 3. Reditum alterius exploratoris exspectamus. 4. Utri consulum frumentum suppeditavistis? Neutri. 5. Boni soli felices sunt. 6. Totam noctem in turri vigilavi. 7. Alios culpamus, alios laudamus. 8. Dux duas naves longas in portu spectavit. 9. Uno solo proelio Gallos superabimus. 10. Uter foedus violavit? Neuter. 11. Caesar praemia alia aliis donabit. 12. Amicus perfidus a nullo amatur. 13. Altera puellarum pulchra, altera sapiens est. 14. Puer tria cadavera in litore spectavit. 15. Alter fratrum alterum necavit.

B.—1. Two consuls were created at Rome. 2. The leader related the disaster to the whole army. 3. Some *things* delight some *men*, others *delight* others. 4. *Only* one man-of-war is in the

harbour.   5. The sight of other captives dismayed the soldiers.
6. No one saw any traces of the contest.   7. One of the *two* chiefs
was providing corn, the other wine.   8. I was walking *for* three
hours in the woods.   9. In which wing shall we place the cavalry ?
10. The deeds of one *of the two* are worthy of praise, *those* of the other
are worthy of blame.   11. To which *of the two* shall I give the reward ?
To neither.   12. We overcame the enemy *in* two battles.   13. I see
the tracks of one horse *only*.   14. The Romans with one ship over-
came two ships of the enemy.   15. Three spies were counting the
enemy's forces.

EXERCISE 26.

A.—1. Milites pericula itineris longissimi culpabant.   2. Cur
verba oratoris eloquentissimi culpas ?   3. Cur verba prudentissima
oratorum culpavisti ?   4. Cras feliciores erimus, hodie tristissimi
sumus.   5. Dona splendidiora poetae dona.   6. Animi militum spe
rerum feliciorum confirmabuntur.   7. Milites consilia audacissima
Caesaris laudabant.   8. Ferrum auro utilius est.   9. Pueri fructibus
dulcissimis delectabantur.   10. Marcus, dux fortissimus, fines Gal-
lorum vastabat.   11. Ciceronem, oratorem eloquentissimum, lauda-
vimus.   12. Patres pueris prudentiores sunt.   13. Cives omnes
facta Ciceronis, consulis prudentissimi, laudabant.   14. Aestate
dies longissimi, noctes brevissimae sunt.   15. Cives, dona splendidis-
sima Crasso, viro fortissimo, donate.

B.—1. The teeth of the lions are very sharp.   2. The learned king
praised the poems of Horace.   3. The beeches were higher than the
oaks.   4. The cruel queen will torture the slaves.   5. Give (pl.)
more useful gifts to the poor woman.   6. The horse is a very strong
animal.   7. The boughs of the oaks were very long.   8. We praised
the very prudent words of Cicero.   9. The dangers of the march will
be very welcome to the brave leader.   10. Gold is sometimes a very
dangerous gift.   11. The learned master will chastise the very
foolish boys.   12. The brave leader Caesar was blaming the soldiers'
apathy.   13. The shrewd spies were worthy of more splendid gifts.
14. Prosperity is sometimes more dangerous than adversity.   15. We
will lay waste the territories of the Gauls, *our* cruel enemies.

EXERCISE 27.

A.—1. Milites verbis benevolentissimis reginae delectantur.
2. Galli agros agricolarum miserrimorum vastant.   3. Greges regis
pinguissimi sunt.   4. Montes Helvetiae asperrimi et maxime ardui

sunt. 5. Puella magis pia est quam trater. 6. Veterrima inimicitia inter Gallos et Romanos est. 7. Omnes viri puellas pulcherrimas laudant. 8. Aestas gratior est pauperrimis quam hiems. 9. Nihil est pulchrius rosa. 10. Fabulas maledicentissimas saepe narras. 11. Feminis egentissimis vestes donate. 12. Rex benevolentior regina erat. 13. Milites ducem, hominem miserrimum, catenis oneraverunt. 14. Vinum veterrimum amamus. 15. Dominus, vir benevolentissimus, servo aegerrimo multa donavit.

B.—1. Lilies are more beautiful than roses. 2. The stag is a very beautiful animal. 3. The Roman laws are very ancient. 4. The boy was very dutiful. 5. A very scandalous story is told about Balbus. 6. Women are more delicate than men. 7. Nothing is more beautiful than a lion. 8. The very foreseeing will never be very poor. 9. The eloquent orator was exciting the soldiers by his very eager words. 10. Farmers' daughters are more energetic in summer than in winter. 11. Give money to the needy sailor. 12. The rivers of Switzerland are very swift. 13. We think the life of slaves very wretched. 14. The dangers of the very rough way fatigue the infantry. 15. The very distinguished exploits of the leader will be related to the queen.

EXERCISE 28.

A.—1. Catilina nequissimus hominum fuit. 2. Soror fratris simillima est. 3. Nihil est difficilius virtute. 4. Minima saepe optima sunt. 5. Oppidum maximum in insula ditissima habitamus. 6. Iuniores senioribus obtemperant. 7. Agricola, vir pauperrimus, agros maiores optavit. 8. Adulatio semper pessima est. 9. Plurimi poetae senectutem laudaverunt. 10. Spes rerum meliorum pauperrimos confirmat. 11. Vinum veterrimum optimum putamus. 12. Amicus perfidus peior hoste est. 13. Caesar urbem turribus plurimis firmavit. 14. Columbae aquilarum dissimillimae sunt. 15. Nautae dona plura Neptuno quam Marti dedicaverunt.

B.— 1. The fox is more slender than the stag. 2. The largest *things* are not always the best. 3. Nothing is baser than flattery. 4. Mothers and daughters are sometimes very unlike. 5. Queen, give more *things* to the very poor (pl.) than to the very rich (pl.). 6. The fox is smaller than the lion. 7. Nothing is better than the love of friends. 8. The poet recited very many songs. 9. The elders are wiser than the younger *men*. 10. The joys of old age are very small. 11. The soldiers are dismayed by the fear of worse things. 12. A faithful friend is the best gift of the gods. 13. The

infantry are excited by the hope of very great booty.   14. The
base Catilina prepared very many forces.   15. The life of a very
rich person is full of fears.

EXERCISE 29.

A.—1. Proximo anno plurima oppida oppugnata sunt.   2. Cato
ad extremam senectutem in horto cottodie ambulabat.   3. Postu-
mus filius patris sum.   4. Superioribus proeliis hostes semper
superavistis, milites.   5. Dux Romanus in Hispania citeriore
maximas copias comparat.   6. Britannia ultima provincia est.
7. Maximae silvae in Hispania ulteriore sunt.   8. Dux ultimo die
belli vulneratus est.   9. Oppidum in summo colle aedificamus.
10. Milites in inferiore parte vallis pugnant.   11. Primo vere
agricolae tauros in agris immolant.   12. Postrema verba ducis
recita, poeta.   13. Virtus est summum bonum.   14. Inferiores
partes insulae mari propiores sunt.   15. Primus inter primos sum.

B.—1. On the first day of the year I shall sacrifice a bull to
Neptune.   2. In the previous year we overcame the Gauls.   3. I
see woods on the tops of the mountains.   4. The remotest territories
of the Gauls are near Britain.   5. In former years I used to long for
very many *things*.   6. The soldiers are fighting in the lowest part
of the valley.   7. In the beginning of spring *there* will be very many
frogs in the marshes.   8. The leader laid waste Hither Gaul.
9. The last (pl.) will be killed by the enemy's (pl.) horsemen.
10. Until extreme old age the king used to swim (impf.) daily.
11. *There* are great crowds in the higher part of the town.   12. You
will never be unmindful of very rich friends.   13. The citizens
chastised the priest on the lowest step of the temple.   14. A worse
generation wishes for riches.   15. Citizens, strengthen the outer-
most wall with towers.

EXERCISE 30.

A.—1. Caesaris consilia nobis nota erant.   2. Cives me laudant,
te culpant.   3. Cur mihi pecuniam donavistis ?   4. Homo improbus
numquam sui immemor est.   5. Duces numquam vestri immemores
erunt, milites.   6. Multi nostrum Athenis educati sumus.   7. Me
equi, libri te delectant.   8. Mihi patria, tibi vita cara est.   9. Galli
sumus, regina, ego et tu.   10. Scelera Catilinae a vobis condemnata
sunt.   11. Amicitia mihi carior est argento.   12. Tu mei numquam

immemor eris.   13. Multi vestrum Ciceronem stultum putatis.
14. Oppida Gallorum a nobis expugnata sunt.   15. Balbus, homo
stultissimus, semper se laudat.

B.—1. We were walking, you were swimming.   2. Girls, adorn
yourselves with roses.   3. All *men* love themselves.   4. I will never
be unmindful of you (pl.).   5. Many of us have fought in Gaul.
6. Queen, the words of the wise poet were pleasing to you.   7.
Marcus, the judges will condemn you.   8. My son and I have
always been very friendly to you.   9. Catilina's crimes will never be
praised by me.   10. Master, why do you chastise me ?   11. The
dishonourable Crassus will never give you money.   12. The praise
of the brave general was very pleasing to me.   13. Cicero was
praised by you (pl.) *and* blamed by me.   14. Many of you beheld
the dead body of Caesar.   15. You praise yourself *and* are blamed
by your friends.

EXERCISE 31.

A.—1. Nostri urbi appropinquant.   2. Caesar fines Gallorum
cum exercitu suo intravit.   3. Carminibus tuis, poeta, delector.
4. Totum diem in silvis tuis ambulavi.   5. Virtus vestra, milites,
patriam nostram conservavit.   6. Vita mea in manibus tuis est.
7. Filiae meae totam noctem saltaverunt.   8. Regina maritum sua
manu necavit.   9. Res prosperae patriae nostrae perniciosissimae
erunt.   10. Cur filios meos castigavisti, magister ?   11. Amici mei
aere alieno me liberaverunt.   12. Studia tua cive bono indigna sunt.
13. Oculi tui glauci, mei nigri sunt.   14. Nostri Poenorum fines
intraverunt et oppida spoliaverunt.   15. Amicis nostris, Caesar,
nimicissimus es.

B.—1. Verginius sacrificed his own daughter.   2. My plans are
known to you.   3. Our *men* will lay waste the lands of the Gauls.
4. The praise of my friends is very pleasing to me.   5. Caesar placed
his *men* in winter quarters.   6. Your very prudent words cheered
the minds of our *men*.   7. My children are dearer to me than life.
8. All *men* praise your wisdom.   9. Soldiers, I shall never be un-
mindful of your valour.   10. All *men* love their own children.
11. Your wisdom is known to us by fame.   12. Our friends will
give you very splendid gifts.   13. The treacherous leader slew the
queen with his own sword.   14. My son, I am delighted by your
deeds.   15. Gauls, our *men* will storm your towns.

EXERCISE 32.

A.—1. Cur illos pueros castigas ?   2. Hae puellae eximia pul-
chritudine erunt.   3. Fama huius cladis animos militum pertur-

bavit.   4. Cur pecuniam huic servo donavisti? 5. Multos passeres in ramis illarum arborum specto. 6. Illo die pater tuus mihi hos libros donavit. 7. Haec classis a rege comparatur. 8. Huic uxorem eximia virtute donabimus. 9. Hos libros puellae, illos puero dona. 10. Studia ista cive Romano indigna puto. 11. Haec mox consuli nuntiabuntur. 12. Spes harum rerum me confirmavit. 13. Illa pocula in hac mensa colloca. 14. Agri illius agricolae a nostris vastati sunt. 15. Haec oppida, Caesar, ab istis militibus oppugnabantur.

B.—1. The spies reported these *things* to the leader. 2. In that year this town was stormed. 3. Caesar will be greatly delighted by these things. 4. This king was *a man* of extraordinary valour. 5. I never liked that friend *of yours*. 6. I praise this, I blame that. 7. Give me those books *of yours*. 8. This island is inhabited by Greeks. 9. This poet's son was reading aloud *his* father's poems. 10. We are praised by these *and* blamed by those. 11. The daughters of those women were of extraordinary beauty. 12. After this victory we shall soon overcome those enemies *of yours*. 13. By these words the general encouraged the minds of his *men*. 14. The pursuits of that young man are unworthy of such great abilities (sing.). 15. The inhabitants of this island have always been of a corrupt disposition.

EXERCISE 33.

A.—1. Id oppidum flumini finitimum est. 2. Poeta ea facta multis carminibus celebravit. 3. Agricola et servi eius summa diligentia agros arabant. 4. Id donum tibi ipsi donabo. 5. Ipse Cicero ea non laudabit. 6. Poeta idem carmen semper recitat. 7. Eodem die Galli a Caesare proelio equestri superati sunt. 8. Eo tempore Caesar cum equitibus urbi appropinquabat. 9. Numquam eius diei immemor fui. 10. Maiores nostri ipsi eo modo pugnabant. 11. Puellae fessae sunt : vinum eis dona. 12. Amici nostri nobis cariores sunt quam ipsa vita. 13. Cur semper carmina eorundem poetarum recitas? 14. Avus meus eadem semper narrat. 15. Marcus et uxor eius filiam suam necaverunt.

B.—1. That woman does not love her own daughter. 2. The slaves slew the cruel master and his son. 3. The king himself is approaching the city with speed. 4. At that time our ancestors used to inhabit those regions. 5. We are the sons of the same father. 6. Their territories border (*say* are bordering) on Gaul. 7. The same *things* will not always be dear to the same *men*. 8. On the same day Caesar overcame the enemy (pl.) in a cavalry engagement. 9. That is the dead body of a lion. 10. A brave man will

never tell his own exploits himself. 11. We ourselves beheld those *things*. 12. The Germans themselves and their wives were fighting with the greatest valour. 13. The queen and her son are getting together forces with the greatest diligence. 14. I love my friends and am dear to them. 15. The same woman slew her sister and her *sister's* daughter.

EXERCISE 34.

A.—1. Quid exploratores duci nuntiaverunt? 2. Quod donum optas? 3. Cur hodie eos culpas quos heri laudabas? 4. Exploratores ea quae spectaverunt Caesari nuntiaverunt. 5. Quis umquam scelera tanta laudabit? 6. Is est cui pecuniam donavisti. 7. Poeta cuius carmina laudas pauperrimus est. 8. Urbes quarum turres spectavimus a Graecis habitantur. 9. A quo vulneratus est? Ab amico quem semper amavit. 10. Is qui doctus est dives est. 11. Carmina quae poeta recitavit non laudavimus. 12. Oppidum quod habitamus a Caesare oppugnabitur. 13. Nos qui hodie superati sumus cras proelium redintegrabimus. 14. Ea quae viris grata sunt molesta feminis saepe sunt. 15. Classis quam rex summa diligentia comparavit eodem anno tempestatibus quassata est.

B.—1. What animal is immortal? 2. What has dismayed you? 3. Who ever thought Cicero foolish? 4. We love those who love us. 5. To whom (pl.) are the dangers of the march pleasing? 6. What is more useful than iron? 7. The Gauls laid waste the lands which were near the river. 8. The girls were praising the poet whose songs they were singing. 9. We inhabit an island which abounds with all things. 10. By what words, soldiers, shall I overcome your apathy? 11. You are blaming to-day those whom you were praising yesterday. 12. Those *things* which you have related to us are false. 13. The soldiers whom Caesar placed in winter quarters are laying waste our fields. 14. What shall I give to the woman whose husband is ill? 15. The enemy (pl.) whom we overcame yesterday are besieging the town to-day.

EXERCISE 35.

A.—1. Aliquod carmen recita, poeta. 2. Quidlibet, milites, quisque* rogate. 3. Si a quibus civibus culpor, omnia bona mea consulibus donabo. 4. Aliqui numquam felices sunt. 5. Milites si quos spectavit, spe praedae incitavit. 6. In hoc bello quidam milites se immolaverunt. 7. Hic poeta quaevis facta carminibus

* *Quisque* may be used with a plural verb.

celebrat. 8. Haec puella sapientior est quam quisquam vestrum.
9. Si cui condiciones pacis molestae sunt, cives, bellum redinte-
grate. 10. Aliquod vos, milites, perturbavit. 11. Carmina cuius-
dam poetae semper pulchra sunt. 12. Catilina amicos non amavit
nec cuiquam carus fuit. 13. Milites, si qui superstites erunt, in
hibernis collocabo. 14. Si qui nautae huc errant, suam quisque
patriam laudant. 15. Cives aliquos spectavi qui servum, hominem
miserrimum, excruciabant.

B.—1. A certain spy brought false tidings (*say* reported false
things) to Caesar. 2. Give me something. I will give you nothing.
3. Poet, read aloud any poem you like. 4. If Caesar besieges any
town, he takes it. 5. The dangers of the way are very great and
not pleasing to any one. 6. Certain things we shall never tell you.
7. The farmers were ploughing each his own fields. 8. If any slave
relates (fut.) these *things* to the lord, he will be tortured. 9. I gave
roses to each girl. 10. Tullia is more beautiful than any of *her*
sisters. 11. The king has got together some ships. 12. Nor will
Cicero tell these *things* to any one. 13. The words of a certain
woman dismayed the king. 14. We are praised by all and not
blamed by any one. 15. I walked all day in certain woods and did
not see any one.

EXERCISE 36.

A.—1. Utinam Lutetiae hodie essem ! 2. Utinam ne temerarii
fuissetis ! 3. Patre nostro, viro fortissimo, digni simus. 4. Ne milites
ignavi sint. 5. Noli, regina, patria tua esse indigna. 6. Utinam
verba vatis falsa sint ! 7. Boni cives semper fuimus ; ne hodie
perfidi simus. 8. Utinam ne filiae talis patris essemus ! 9. Utinam
exploratores mendaces sint ! 10. Nolite, poetae, laudis cupidi esse.
11. Utinam, filii mei, in acie Romana heri fuissetis ! 12. Miles
quondam agricola fuerat. 13. Noli filius stultior patris stulti esse.
14. Utinam, puellae, sapientiores essetis ! 15. Ne duces proditores
patriae nostrae sint.

B.—1. The boys had been very foolish. 2. Would that we were
Roman citizens ! 3. Soldiers, do not be boastful. 4. Let not poets
be greedy of money. 5. Would that I had not been consul ! 6.
Women, would that you were men and soldiers ! 7. O that the
words of the spies might be true ! 8. Queen, do not be unmindful
of past times. 9. Sailors, do not be rash. 10. Let not friends be
treacherous. 11. Would that my sons had been at Paris yesterday !
12. Let us not be unworthy of Caesar's praise. 13. O that the
men-of-war might be in the harbour ! 14. Boy, do not be talkative.
15. Would that you were not false prophets !

EXERCISE 37.

A.—1. Nonne Caesar urbi appropinquabat? 2. Num columbae cum aquilis pugnant? 3. Vinumne desideras? 4. Quales libros puero donabo? 5. Emendavitne puer mores? 6. Nonne principes frumentum suppeditaverant? 7. Num feminae regnabunt? 8. Qualem orationem laudaveratis, cives? 9. Cur magister filios medici castigaverat? 10. Nonne rex, homo crudelissimus, legationem nostram repudiabit?

B.—1. Had not our men always overcome the Greeks? 2. Shall Romans supply corn to the enemies of the Roman people? 3. Do you praise Cicero's orations? 4. By what sort of words had the general stirred up the soldiers? 5. You did not praise treacherous friends, did you? 6. Does not a country life delight farmers *and* a town *life* merchants? 7. Why did Caesar reject the embassy of the Gauls? 8. Will you not amend your characters, boys? 9. Shall a king reign at Rome? 10. Did not the gods create all things?

EXERCISE 38.

A.—1. Num columbae cum aquilis pugnant? 2. Non ignorabamus cur Romani cum Gallis pugnarent. 3. Rogavi cur cives templum Neptuno aedificarent. 4. Dubitamus quales amico laudetis. 5. Pueri rogabunt nonne mater aegrotet. 6. Quando consules templa hostium spoliabunt? 7. Duces rogant cur frumentum Gallis suppeditemus. 8. Carmina vestra semper recitatis, poetae. 9. Agricolae rogaverunt num exercitus Gallorum appropinquaret. 10. Agricolae ignorabant quantam praedam ex agris nostri portarent.

B.—1. The hostages are asking if Caesar is approaching. 2. The captives were asking whether the Roman cavalry were approaching. 3. O queen, the king has asked whether you are sick. 4. The physician asked whether the merchant was sick. 5. The master is not aware what kind of books delight boys. 6. Let us ask what kind of rewards delight soldiers. 7. Tell your mother why I am chastising you. 8. The spies were not unaware how great forces were in our town. 9. Do you not know why the generals are preparing forces? 10. We do not know why the sailors adorn the prows of the ships with garlands.

EXERCISE 39.

A.—1. Mercatores ignorabant quo milites praedam portavissent. 2. Orator narravit cur Catilina coniuravisset. 3. Roga cur pueri lapides iactaverint. 4. Nonne in Italia hiemavistis, milites?

5. Cur mortem filiae non deploravisti? 6. Milites ignorabant quando Galli certamen redintegraturi essent. 7. Agricola roga- verat num servi ararent. 8. Nolite, pueri, lapides iactare. 9. Narra nobis, explorator, ubi sint hostium equites. 10. Utinam signa recuperavissemus !

B.—1. The consul asked why the slaves had conspired. 2. Did you ask why the father did not lament the death of *his* son ? 3. Did not our men fight bravely to-day ? 4. We were unaware why the citizens had shouted. 5. The soldiers had asked whether Caesar would winter in Gaul. 6. Would that the spies had counted the forces of the enemy ! 7. Generals, you have not recovered the standards, have you ? 8. Do you doubt, consuls, why we shouted ? 9. Show us what kind of a temple you (pl.) have built. 10. Let us ask whether the tempest has shattered the ships.

EXERCISE 40.

In the case of sentences 1, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 10, *write down both in Latin and in English the direct form of the dependent statement.*

A.—1. Consul negat hostes agros nostros vastavisse. 2. Difficile est vitia superare. 3. Exploratores nuntiaverunt Gallos appro- pinquare. 4. Verisimile est Caesarem oppidum oppugnaturum esse. 5. Notum omnibus est reginam copias comparaturam esse. 6. Non credibile est Ciceronem erravisse. 7. Certum erat nostros audacissime pugnavisse. 8. Non credibile est magistrum talia laudaturum esse. 9. Facile est amicos amare. 10. Rex negavit reginam aegrotare.

Before translating the following sentences into Latin state with regard to each whether it does or does not contain a dependent statement.

B.—1. Do you ask why it is pleasant to walk in woods ? 2. Do you deny, spies, that Caesar has placed his *men* in winter quarters ? 3. It is not credible that the girls will blame *their* mother. 4. Announce (pl.) to the citizens that Catilina is preparing forces. 5. You think (do you not ?) that the gods created the world ? 6. It is probable the boys are mistaken. 7. It is known to all that Caesar will overcome the Gauls. 8. It is not credible that the Gauls will overcome Caesar. 9. Do not deny, sailor, that the storm has shattered the ships. 10. The poet used frequently to say (imperf.) his own poems were worthy of the highest praise.

EXERCISE 41.

A.—1. Omnibus laborandum est. 2. Dux dictitabat laborandum esse omnibus. 3. Spes pugnandi milites confirmavit. 4. Exploratores ducem incitandi causa falsa nuntiaverunt. 5. Vobis, exploratores, vigilandum est. 6. Hodie pugnando hostes superabimus. 7. Cicero cupidinem regnandi saepe culpavit. 8. Hostes appropinquant, milites ; nobis festinandum est. 9. Poeta cives delectandi causa carmina recitavit. 10. Signa reciperandi causa bellum redintegremus.

B.—1. Soldiers, you must fight. 2. The desire of reigning has been hurtful to many. 3. Boys, you must work. 4. By watching we shall overcome our vices. 5. Who will deny that spies must keep watch ? 6. Caesar prepared forces for the sake of besieging the town. 7. Boys must obey. 8. The pursuit of walking is salutary. 9. The art of educating is difficult. 10. We entered the territories of the Gauls for the sake of renewing the war.

EXERCISE 42.

A.—1. Sacerdotes templum intraverunt taurum Marti immolandi causa. 2. Vita regnantium plena sollicitudinis est. 3. Otium dulce est aegrotantibus. 4. Vinum pugnantibus apportate, ministri. 5. Dux, vir fortissimus, suos in proelium incitabat. 6. Non ignoramus Gallos Romam oppugnaturos esse. 7. Hodie iterum Gallos, homines perfidissimos, superaturi sumus. 8. Noli mortem ducis pugnantibus nuntiare. 9. Saepe mihi in silvis ambulanti de vita humana multa narrabat. 10. Vigilandum est nobis omnibus ; Gallos enim nuntiant urbi appropinquare.

B.—1. Our men are destined to overcome the attack of the enemy. 2. Caesar was attacking the town with all his forces. 3. The citizens are about to fight in the market-place. 4. I never give money to those who ask. 5. The anger of lovers (participle) is not always the renewal of love. 6. The shouts of those who were fighting dismayed the citizens. 7. I did not know when the carpenters would strengthen the towers. 8. Caesar is destined to reign. 9. The heat of the sun is annoying to those who are fighting. 10. All are asking whether the king will sacrifice *his* daughter.

EXERCISE 43.

A.—1. Homines, si valent, felices esse debent. 2. Filios monete, patres. 3. Dux milites in hibernis collocare debebat. 4. Amicos si habemus, omnia habemus. 5. Nisi paremus parentibus, deis non

placemus. 6. Si ille orator orationem habebat, magna turba in foro erat. 7. Patri placere debetis, pueri. 8. Ego taceo, tu loquax es. 9. Si vales, laborare debes. 10. Linguam, puer, coerceto ; corpus exerceto.

B.—1. If we do not obey *our* parents, we are worthy of blame. 2. You ought to have brought true tidings to the leader. 3. Boy, control *your* tongue. 4. If the soldiers* were frightening the girls, they were worthy of punishment. 5. Cicero was making a speech in the market place. 6. If we injure our friends, we injure *them* unwittingly. 7. Why used you never to admonish the boy ? 8. The boy used never to obey me. 9. Ask this man if he is ill. 10. Boys, be silent.

EXERCISE 44.

A.—1. Minae nautarum puellas terruerant. 2. Nisi ducis mortem omnes celaveritis, cives in officio non retinebitis. 3. Milites impetum hostium multos dies sustinuerant. 4. Cur magister te pecuniam rogavit ? Filium meum linguam Latinam docuerat. 5. Virtute vestra, milites, dignitatem rei publicae sustinuistis. 6. Si reginae placuerimus, pecunia numquam egebimus. 7. Num poeta umquam linguam coercuit ? 8. Minas Catalinae numquam timueramus. 9. Quomodo legati milites in fide retinuerant ? 10. Cives poetam trucidabunt, nisi interdum tacebit.

B.—1. If you did not obey the master, you were very foolish. 2. Cicero himself had taught the boy eloquence. 3. If the farmer exercises his body, he will be well. 4. If you kept the general in ignorance concerning the disaster, you deserved punishment. 5. I had always feared the queen's anger. 6. Consul, unless you control your tongue, you will not please the citizens. 7. If you were in need of all things, why did you not ask me for money ? 8. Caesar had with difficulty kept the soldiers in the camp. 9. We had taught the boys the Latin language. 10. How will the consul retain the citizens in *their* duty ?

---

* Say : " The soldiers, if they were frightening the girls, were worthy of punishment." In a Latin complex sentence the dependent clause is often placed between the subject of the principal sentence and its verb ; and if the subject of the clause is the same as that of the principal sentence, it is not expressed, but is understood from the principal sentence. Compare the first sentence in the Latin above (**43,** A. 1).

EXERCISE 45.

A.—1. Ego, si pater essem, filiis bonum exemplum praeberem. 2. Pompeius, si dimicet, praedones superet. 3. Utinam hodie valeremus ! 4. Si taceatis, rei publicae noceatis. 5. Dux rogavit num nostri impetum Gallorum sustinerent. 6. Utinam Cicero cives in officio retineat ! 7. Legati, si exercitum in castris continerent, consuli non parerent. 8. Si pallerem, cives me ignavum putarent. 9. Cives rogaverunt, poetae, cur numquam taceretis. 10. Si corpus cottidie exerceamus, valeamus.

B.—1. If I were well, I should be fighting in the Roman line to-day. 2. If the men-of-war were to hold on *their* course, Pompeius would overcome the pirates. 3. Would that Catilina were not injuring the state ! 4. Captives, if you were not foolish, you would be silent. 5. The mother asked why the girl was blushing. 6. *Your* parents would blame you (pl.) if you were to set a bad example to your brothers. 7. If the lieutenants were expecting a rising, they would not be keeping their *men* in winter quarters. 8. Soldiers, let us obey Caesar's commands. 9. The queen asks where the dead bodies of the leaders are lying. 10. Our men ought not to have robbed the dead bodies of the enemy.

EXERCISE 46.

A.—1. Utinam patres filios litteras docerent ! 2. Si corpus exercuissem, non aegrotarem. 3. Utinam dux milites in hibernis continuisset ! 4. Caesar rogabit num iussis parueris. 5. Si cladem statim nuntiavissemus, milites stupuissent. 6. Utinam gubernator cursum tenuisset ! 7. Utinam tanta praemia meruissemus ! 8. Omnes rogant ubi sicarii latuerint. 9. Utinam, poeta, numquam litteris studuisses ! 10. Nostri impetum sustinuissent, nisi clamores hostium iumenta perterruissent.

B.—1. If this man had devoted himself to literature, he would have been a very famous poet. 2. If our men had sustained the enemy's charge, the Gauls would not have besieged the camp. 3. Would that I had not displeased my wise father ! 4. Would that you (pl.) were not setting a bad example to the citizens ! 5. If we had needed money, we should have taught the citizens' sons Latin. 6. If the spies had been silent, our men would have been safe and sound to-day. 7. If you had not blushed, I should have thought you innocent. 8. Soldiers, the general is asking whether you deserved rewards. 9. If we had abstained from acts of violence, we should not have injured the state. 10. The consuls asked if the lieutenant had kept the soldiers in allegiance.

EXERCISE 47.

A.—1. Regina sperat filios suos praemia merituros esse. 2. Militibus notum erat cadaver ducis in ripa laeva fluminis iacere. 3. Omnibus amore monendi displicetis. 4. Dux sperat se hostes perterriturum. 5. Coercendo linguam molestias saepe vitabis. 6. Fama est anguem nigram duci apparuisse. 7. Caesar negavit suos frumento egere. 8. Consul in foro erat orationem habendi causa. 9. Magister negat se poetam litteras docuisse. 10. Oratores dictitant Graeciam omnibus artibus florere.

B.—1. All must grieve sometimes. 2. The master devoted himself to the art of teaching. 3. The leader announced to the senate that our men had not sustained the charge of the cavalry. 4. The consul denied that he would hold a levy. 5. The desire of having is baneful. 6. The hostages announce that such great calamities have thrown the enemy into a panic. 7. Boys must be silent. 8. We shall give splendid gifts to those who deserve *them*. 9. Were not the spies hiding on the bank of the river? 10. I shall walk in the woods for the sake of exercising *my* body.

EXERCISE 48.

A.—1. Intelleximus te in urbe Lutetia esse. 2. Legatos ad Caesarem Athenas mittemus. 3. Ariovistus suos trans flumen Rhenum ducebat. 4. Multi numquam bene scribunt. 5. Bellum in Germanos gerimus. 6. Duces dicebant milites laude dignos esse. 7. Rex fretum ponte iunxit. 8. Nos et fortunas civitatis fidei Caesaris permittimus. 9. Princeps ab urbe Cathagine domum discedebat. 10. Multi fortes ante te vixerunt.

B.—1. I was writing a letter to you yesterday. 2. We shall send hostages to the king in the camp. 3. The general understood that the spies' words were false. 4. *There* are many very wise men in the city of Corinth. 5. I shall send messengers to my father at Paris. 6. The ambassadors were saying that they were in need of lands. 7. Caesar was bridging (*say* was joining with a bridge) the river Rhine. 8. Do you not say that our men have sustained the enemy's charge? 9. Tell me, boys, why you do not obey *your* father. 10. Hostages, you will depart home to-morrow.

EXERCISE 49.

A.—1. Feminis et liberis parcite. 2. Ab Italia ad te scribam. 3. Nonne greges ad montes agitis, pastores? 4. Numquam pueris mendacibus credimus. 5. In ripis fluminis Rheni constitimus. 6. Roma in Galliam contende. 7. Praedones magnam partem

praedae in paludibus reliquerant. 8. Nostri in castra hostium irrumpebant. 9. Vincemus, si copias trans Rhenum duxerimus. 10. Orator domum ab urbe Athenis contendebat.

B.—1. The consuls were hastening from Rome to Carthage. 2. We had halted on the hills.   3. Our men drove the enemy headlong.   4. The cavalry will gradually retire from the battle.   5. Caesar, we did not believe the spies.   6. The leaders send messengers from the camp to the city.   7. Soldiers, leave the baggage and fight. 8. The enemy were breaking into our camp.   9. I shall depart from Italy to-morrow.   10. We fell upon the enemy in the woods.

EXERCISE 50.

A.—1. Dux militibus imperavit ut e portis castrorum erumperent. 2. Utinam nostri vicissent !   3. Dux principes monebit ne Germanos trans Rhenum ducant.   4. Dicite mihi, milites, cur e castris eruperitis.   5. Vos monemus, pueri, ne tanta pericula contemnatis.   6. Utinam mihi crederes !   7. Servis pecuniam donabo ut vinum emant.   8. Si epistolam legissem, Athenas ex Italia contendissem.   9. Iussis meis parete, milites, ut hostes vincatis.   10. Dux suis imperavit ut inermibus parcerent.

B.—1. The senate ordered the consuls to wage war against the Germans.   2. Caesar is holding a levy in order to send an army into Switzerland.   3. Beware lest the spies invent false *tidings*. 4. Would that the storms had not dashed the ships of war on the shore !   5. Cicero asks why we believed the slave.   6. I ordered my son to send a letter to Caesar at Marseilles.   7. If we had led our men across the river, we should have conquered the enemy. 8. I begged Catilina not to hasten to Rome.   9. The spies advise us not to bridge the river.   10. The Gauls prepared forces in order to drive us out of Gaul.

EXERCISE 51.

A.—1. Castra muro et turribus dextra laevaque muniont. 2. Caesar ex captivis comperit magnas copias hostium convenisse. 3. Omnes sciunt reginam cras Romam venturam esse.   4. Parentes filios puniunt ut mores emendent.   5. Cupido dormiendi milites superavit.   6. Clamores magni exercitus audiveramus.   7. Captivos vinximus, milites, ne portas castrorum clauderent.   8. Nostri totis castris custodiebant.   9. Scitis Gallos Massiliam, urbem opulentissimam, terra marique munire.   10. Castra munientibus ardor solis molestus est.

B.—1. The exiles had come from the flourishing city of
Marseilles.   2. We found a suitable place in order to pitch a camp.
3. We know that the Gauls are fortifying the towns by land and
sea.   4. Cicero's speech was pleasing to those who heard.   5. To-
morrow we shall come to the renowned city of Athens.   6. The
Gauls denied that they had come to an understanding with the
enemies of the Roman people.   7. They buried the dead body of
the leader in the middle *of the* wood.   8. We opened the gates of
the camp that our men might not fight a pitched battle in an
unfavourable place.   9. Bind the captives, soldiers ; bury the dead
bodies.   10. Boy, have you slept all night (*say* the whole night) ?

EXERCISE 52.

A.—1. Tam perfidi sunt principes Gallorum ut cum hostibus
suorum consenserint.   2. Adeo stulti erant milites ut portas
castrorum aperuissent.   3. Tantus fuit pavor militum ut legatos
catenis vincirent.   4. Caesar Massiliam advenit ut proditores
puniat.   5. Nolite cadavera hostium sepelire.   6. Milites tam fessi
erant ut in stationibus dormirent.   7. Utinam vera ex exploratoribus
comperisses !   8. Caesaris oratio tam diserta fuit ut animos militum
molliret.   9. Tantus pavor tota urbe est ut cives portas aperiant.
10. Accidit ut Cicero verba proditorum audivisset.

B.—1. The ambassadors were so eloquent that they mitigated
the anger of the multitude.   2. The soldiers are so tired that they
have slept all day.   3. The attack of the cavalry was so sudden that
our men had not yet fortified the camp.   4. It happens that we
have got the start of the enemy by a shorter way.   5. The leader
had halted in order to bury the dead bodies.   6. Would that you
had arrived yesterday, my friends !   7. So great was the uproar
that the soldiers did not hear the leader's voice.   8. I have come to
Rome to find a friend.   9. So great was the panic at Athens that
no one slept.   10. Would that my father had punished me *when I
was* a boy !

EXERCISE 53.

A.—1. Effecimus ut nemo fugere cuperet.   2. Quid cupitis ?
Cupimus proditorem interficere.   3. Senatus Caesarem legionibus
praeficiet.   4. Pavor tam repentinus erat ut nostri ad unum
fugerent.   5. Milites arma corripiebant et ad portas currebant.

6. Nostri tela in fugientes iaciebant. 7. Vix fuga salutem nobis pariemus. 8. Caesar legatos rogabit num pacem cupiant. 9. Hostes incolas oppidi interficiebant nec inermibus parcebant. 10. Caesar conventum Massiliae egit ut consilium de motu Gallorum caperet.

B.—1. Caesar had set lieutenants over the legions. 2. The enemy, shaking their shields and throwing javelins, were falling upon our men. 3. Our men immediately snatch up arms. 4. We shall do everything (*say* all things) to satisfy you. 5. We were killing the captives lest they should flee. 6. The queen besought the gods that she might bring forth a son. 7. Bind (pl.) the slaves lest they kill *their* lord. 8. Soldiers, I command you to snatch up your arms. 9. Caesar was taking council concerning the safety of the state. 10. We know that Catilina desires riches before all *things*.

EXERCISE 54.

A.—1. Utrum a rege an a regina culpabare? 2. Utrum consilio an casu mundus creatus est? 3. Utrum minis an praemiis supera-bamini, consules? 4. Utrum factis an verbis delectaris, regina? 5. Utrum gladio an sagitta vulneratus es, imperator? 6. Utrum ab hostibus an a nostris agri agricolarum vastabantur? 7. Utrum aestate an hieme vita rustica delectamur? 8. Utrum terra an mari urbs oppugnabitur? 9. Utrum Romae an Massiliae consules exspectantur? 10. Utrum retibus an sagittis apri superati sunt?

B.—1. Had true or false *tidings* been brought by the spies? 2. Shall we be loved by friends or by enemies? 3. Soldiers, will the fame of the Roman legions be extended by valour or by cowardice? 4. Had cavalry or infantry been got together by the consul? 5. Was the flourishing city of Marseilles built by Greeks or by Romans? 6. Boys, are you being educated at Athens or at Rome? 7. Slaves, were you being overcome by soldiers or by sailors? 8. Will the Gallic war be carried on by Caesar or by the consuls? 9. Shall we be assaulted by the friends or by the enemies of the Roman people? 10. Had the camp been strengthened by a wall or by an earthwork?

EXERCISE 55.

A.—1. Rogamus utrum factis an verbis regina delectetur. 2. Dubito, consules, utrum minis an praemiis superati sitis. 3. Non dubitabamus quin Romani superaturi essent. 4. Cicero rogat

utrum consilio an casu mundus factus sit.   5. Non dubitamus quin
omnia a deis creata sint.   6. Roga utrum Romae an Massiliae
consules exspectentur.   7. Dubium erat utrum retibus an sagittis
apri superati essent.   8. Non dubium erat quin castra fossa
firmarentur.   9. Agricolae rogant utrum a nostris an a Gallis
agri vastentur.   10. Nemo est quin aestate vita rustica delectetur.

B.—1. It was doubtful whether true or false *tidings* had been
brought by the spies.   2. Tell me, boys, whether you are being
educated at Athens or at Rome.   3. Poet, Cicero is asking whether
you were educated at Marseilles or at Carthage.   4. There was no
doubt but that the walls were being shattered by the battering-ram.
5. Catilina, I ask whether you are loved by the friends or by the
enemies of the Roman people.   6. We asked whether kings or
consuls had been elected (*creo*) at Rome.   7. *There* was no one who
was not dismayed by so great a disaster.   8. No one knew whether
we had been overcome by force or by guile.   9. Caesar asked
whether the war was being managed by himself or by his *men*.
10. There was no doubt but that the merchant-vessels had been
fastened at (*ad*) anchor.

EXERCISE 56.

A.—1. Ariovistus magnis copiis comparatis suos trans flumen
Rhenum duxit.   2. Speramus urbem mox expugnatum iri.   3.
Donis splendidis a regina honorabere, poeta.   4. Muro ariete
quassato nostri in urbem irruperunt.   5. Caesar Germanis super-
atis in Galliam contendit.   6. Nostri arce expugnata urbem
ceperunt.   7. Exploratoribus in silvis collocatis numerum hostium
comperiemus.   8. Obsides negaverunt suos clade perturbari.   9.
Vastatis Gallorum agris Caesar copias in Italiam reduxit.   10.
Legatis convocatis Caesar consilia aperuit.

B.—1. The ships having been fastened at anchor, Caesar landed
his *men*.   2. The body of the general having been burned, the
lieutenant delivered a short speech in the presence of the soldiers.
3. A council having been summoned, Caesar narrates the disaster
to his men.   4. You believe, do you not, that the world was created
by the gods ?   5. They shall (use imperative) be praised by the good
and blamed by the bad.   6. This opinion having been approved by
all, the general made it known that the citadel would be besieged.
7. The men-of-war having been shattered by the storm, our men
are vainly awaiting reinforcements.   8. The city having been

stormed, our men slew the citizens. 9. Having cheered the minds of the soldiers, Caesar hastens against the enemy. 10. The disaster having been announced, panic seized our *men*.

EXERCISE 57.

A.—1. Animi civium verbis gratis confirmandi sunt. 2. Duces pronuntiaverunt praedam pugnantibus reservandam esse. 3. Habetis, milites, occasionem pristinae famae reciperandae. 4. Virtutem ante omnia cupiendam esse putamus. 5. Caesar nuntios Romam misit ad cladem nuntiandam. 6. Dux suos confirmavit spe belli redintegrandi. 7. In litore cottidie ambulo causa valetudinis conservandae. 8. Principes sollicitandis et perturbandis Gallorum animis motum universum comparabant. 9. Omnes dicunt Pompeium in Italiam contendisse causa classis comparandae. 10. Putamus fortunam belli hodie non iterum tentandam esse.

B.—1. Soldiers, the citadel must be stormed to-day. 2. Ariovistus was instigating his *subjects* to (*ad*) reject the rule of the Roman people. 3. He said he had a plan for (*say* of) liberating the state. 4. He hastens into Gaul for the sake of summoning a council. 5. In the Gallic war the valour of the soldiers was greatly to be praised. 6. The Carthaginians entrusted to Hannibal the chief responsibility of carrying on the war. 7. The spies hid in the woods for the sake of numbering the enemy. 8. Our men greatly injured the enemy by laying waste *their* fields. 9. The words of the lieutenant were adapted to (*ad*) cheer the soldiers' minds. 10. Let us send a ship to Carthage to (*ad*) bring back Hannibal.

EXERCISE 58.

A.—1. Cum auxilia ad castra pervenerint, nostri magno clamore in hostes irrumpent. 2. Nuntii dicunt naves in portu tempestate retentas esse. 3. Cum dux cladem nuntiaverit, milites perterrebuntur. 4. Crassi auctoritas divitiis magnis augebatur. 5. Cives obsessa urbe pacem oraverunt. 6. Caesar pronuntiavit praedam deletum iri. 7. Cum comitia habita erunt, Caesar in Galliam contendet. 8. Magister multa dixit causa pueri monendi. 9. Insula mari undique continetur. 10. A stultis sapientes habemini.

B.—1. When he dies he will be praised by all. 2. They say the earth moves (pass.) round the sun. 3. My sons shall be taught (imperative) by the wisest masters. 4. The elections having been held, Caesar departed from Rome. 5. When the city is stormed, it will be destroyed. 6. I used to swim in the sea daily for the

sake of exercising my body. 7. When he is at Rome, he is taught
by Cicero. 8. We know that the minds of all will be stirred by the
words of the ambassadors. 9. All the hills were being held by the
enemy. 10. When you have beheld the dead body of the leader,
you will be deeply moved.

EXERCISE 59.

A.—1. Cum eloquentiam doceremur, orationem cottidie apud
magistrum habebamus. 2. Milites rogaverunt cur praeda deleta
esset. 3. Utinam ab amicis amemur, ab hostibus timeamur!
4. Cum milites coerciti et in officio contenti essent, Caesar Romam
discessit. 5. Utinam linguam Latinam doctus esses ! 6. Rogemus,
commilitones, cur in castris a duce ignavo retineamur. 7. Cum ab
omnibus timerer, infelicissimus hominum eram. 8. Si sapiens
esses, iram cohiberes. 9. Hostes impetum repentinum facient, ut
perterreamini. 10. Cum oppidum terra marique obsideretur, cives
Caesarem auxilium oraverunt.

B.—1. When the city had been destroyed, the general distributed
the booty among his *men*. 2. Tell me, leaders, whether you are
loved or feared. 3. When the elections had been held, the consuls
sent reinforcements to Caesar. 4. I sent my sons to Rome to be
taught eloquence by Cicero. 5. The soldiers ask why the merchant-
vessels are kept in harbour. 6. When the enemy had been thrown
into a panic, our men charged. 7. If the ships had not been kept
in the harbour, we should have overcome the pirates. 8. As soon
as the enemy had been put to flight, the general called his men back.
9. He gave orders to the soldiers that the camp should be moved.
10. Would that you might be advised to obey your father !

EXERCISE 60

A.—1. Urbes a Gallis incendebantur, ne a nostris oppugnarentur.
2. Catilina intellexit se ab omnibus deseri. 3. Non opus est verbis :
tibi nec creditur nec credendum est. 4. Hodie victi sumus ; cras
vincemus. 5. Tibi ab omnibus fautum est, quia ab omnibus diligeris.
6. Legati ad Caesarem mittentur, quod militibus frumento opus est.
7. Naves subducuntur, quod hiems appropinquat. 8. Caesar ob-
sidibus adductis suos trans flumen reduxit. 9. Dux pronuntiavit
praedam omnem incensum iri. 10. Exploratoribus creditum est,
quod falsa numquam nuntiaverant.

B.—1. The ships having been beached, the camp is pitched on
the shore. 2. The leader led back his *men* into Italy, because a

great part of the summer had been spent. 3. You (pl.) are esteemed by many, but you are envied by Catilina. 4. Our men will be conquered, since the line of battle is being drawn up in an unfavourable place. They say that the river Rhine will be bridged by Caesar. 6. Cavalry, you will be left in Gaul, because there is need of a garrison. 7. The gates are being shut because the enemy are approaching. 8. They say that the camp has been pitched on a hill. 9. We were being driven out of Gaul because reinforcements had not arrived. 10. The corn having been consumed, our men are in need of supplies.

EXERCISE 61.

A.—1. Cum magna pars aestatis in bello gerendo consumpta esset, Galli pacem orabant. 2. Caesar intellexit cur talia dicerentur. 3. Naves, cum subductae essent, tempestate non quassatae sunt. 4. Exploratores dixerunt se falsa nuntiavisse quod numquam sibi crederetur. 5. Vincite, milites, ne vincamini. 6. Nostri dixerunt se victos esse quod acies loco iniquo instructa esset. 7. Cum vici undique incenderentur, intelleximus hostes agros suos vastare. 8. Caesar imperavit ut naves longae postero die deducerentur. 9. Captivos laudavi quod amicos non tradidissent. 10. Utinam a bono rege regeremur !

B.—1. As the Roman legions have been disbanded, you have an opportunity, Gauls, of recovering *your* liberty. 2. We destroyed the bridge in order that the leader might be cut off from the army. 3. As the towns were being burned on all sides by the enemy, our men were in need of provisions. 4. O that we may always be esteemed by the citizens ! 5. Tell me, citizens, why you believed the traitors. 6. There is no doubt that the towns are being burned by the Gauls. 7. When a great part of the day had now been spent, the general led back his forces into the camp. 8. Caesar asked whether the hostages had been brought. 9. He ordered that the hostages should be led into Italy. 10. There is no doubt that you are being deserted by all.

EXERCISE 62.

A.—1. Artibus liberalibus, Marce, Athenis erudiere. 2. Etsi artibus liberalibus eruditus es, mores tui non emolliti sunt. 3. Quamquam insontes sumus, in carcere custodimur. 4. Cives speraverunt legatos non auditum iri. 5. Quamquam portae apertae erant, nemo ex urbe excessit. 6. Etsi scelera multa admisimus, a iudicibus iniustis non puniemur. 7. Castra fossa

et vallo munientur. 8. Hostes intellexerunt castra a nostris egregie munita esse. 9. Custodiemini, sicarii ; opus est testibus. 10. Loco idoneo reperto castra posita sunt.

B.—1. Although the citadel had been admirably fortified, nevertheless it will be stormed by Caesar. 2. On hearing their leader's words (§ 212, *Obs.*), our men shouted. 3. The captives escaped, although they had been bound and were being guarded by soldiers. 4. They say that the character is refined by the liberal arts. 5. The dead body of the traitor was never found. 6. Although we are not heard by you to-day, we shall nevertheless be heard to-morrow. 7. Leaders, send reinforcements to us for the sake of guarding the citadel. 8. The boys were being punished, although they said that they were innocent. 9. Having disclosed his plan (§ 212), Caesar gave orders that all should quit the camp. 10. I believe that the camp will be fortified to-morrow.

EXERCISE 63.

A.—1. Quamvis erraverit, fratris sui minas non timet. 2. Puer, quamvis saepissime peccavisset, rogavit cur puniretur. 3. Num rogas, puer, cur puniare ? 4. Si filius meus esses, saepius punitus esses. 5. Cum milites fessi sint, dux imperat ut castra muniantur. 6. Etsi vita nostra omnino morte finiatur, tamen bene vivamus. 7. Quamvis a iudicibus iniustis non puniti sitis, tamen aliquando puniemini. 8. Regina inperavit, puellae, ut vestibus albis vestiremini. 9. Barbari cadaver ducis abripuerunt, ne sepeliretur. 10. Utinam obsidibus nostris a rege parcatur !

B.—1. If the ship holds on her course, we shall come safe into harbour to-morrow. 2. Ambassadors, Caesar commands you to depart. 3. Even if you had been innocent, you would have been punished. 4. May *our* life not be wholly ended by death ! 5. Although the king had ordered the dead bodies to be buried, nevertheless they were burnt. 6. Tell me, consuls, why the elections have not yet been held. 7. Even if you had devoted yourself to the liberal arts, your character would not have been refined. 8. If the boys had been punished oftener, they would be wiser. 9. Although the camp has not been fortified, it will not be stormed by a cowardly leader. 10. The Britons are so uncivilised that they are clothed with skins.

EXERCISE 64.

A.—1. Cum incendia undique conspicerentur, timebamus ne hostes agros nostros vastarent. 2. Timemus ut bellum mox conficiatur. 3. Obsides timebant ne tela in castra iacerentur. 4. Cives

capta urbe ad unum interfecti sunt.   5. Vates dixerat urbem postero
die captum iri.   6. Nonne timebas ne civium bona diriperentur ?
7. Timebamus, legati, ut incolumes perveniretis.   8. Caesar
consilium urbis capiendae aperuit.   9. Pater tuus timet ne sapientia
deficiaris.   10. Cives timent ne a duce hostium interficiantur.

B.—1. Caesar having been slain by the traitors, we have need of
a leader.   2. We fear that the enemy's camp will not be pillaged
by our men.   3. We feared that we should be killed by the assassins.
4. Riches are desired by all.   5. Caesar commanded that the men-
of-war should be repaired.   6. He feared lest we should be seriously
affected by the leader's words.   7. Do you fear, leaders, that we are
lacking in valour ?   8. They say the infantry have been slain to a
man.   9. I fear that women will always be lacking in judgment
and reason.   10. There is no doubt that our camp was pillaged by
the enemy.

EXERCISE 65.

A.—1. Milites cohortare, Caesar, ut virtutem pristinam retineant.
2. Dux, haec ita eventura esse suspicatus, omnia antea compara-
verat.   3. Tu vereris ne puer haec conetur, ego vereor ut conetur.
4. Femina gavisa est quod filius haec facere ausus erat.   5. Rex
pollicetur se in itinere non commoraturum esse.   6. Verebar ne
illis pecuniam pollicerere.   7. Dux nos cohortabatur ne pabulandi
causa longius vagaremur.   8. Nonne tu haec conari ausus es quae
ego saepissime feci ?   9. Tibi pecuniam magnam pollicitus te vera
nuntiaturum arbitratus sum.   10. Hic casus dextram eius gladium
educere conantis moratus est.

B.—1. The leader was promising money to the soldiers.   2. Our
men did not dare to quit the standards.   3. Caesar led his men
across the river for the sake of foraging.   4. Spies, reconnoitre
the enemy's camp.   5. He left Crassus in Gaul to defend the
harbours.   6. The Britons promise to surrender the town to him.
7. Fearing lest through their initiative the whole state should fall
away, he bade the legions winter there.   8. The Gauls, thinking
that Caesar had departed, promised that they would attack the
Roman camp.   9. A few, who had escaped from the battle, were
attempting to reach the camp by uncertain routes.   10. Will you
not admit, citizens, that you owe all *things* to him ?

EXERCISE 66.

A.—1. Pedites se sequi iussit.   2. Rogo, puer, cur donis deorum
abutaris.   3. Dux verebatur ne sui Gallos longius insequerentur.
4. Haec regi dicite, filii mei, ne irascatur.   5. Galli, Caesarem in

Italiam profectum esse arbitrati, liberatem reciperare conantur. 6. Suspicor, exploratores, vos ducem vestrum prodere. 7. Non dubium erat quin nostri Gallos longius persecuti essent. 8. Pater me monuit ut pecunia bene utar. 9. Dicite nobis, equites, cur hostes fugatos non persecuti sitis. 10. Num officio functus es quo te functurum esse pollicitus es ?

B.—1. Why do you use Greek characters ? 2. The Britons fed on milk and flesh. 3. Having discharged this duty, we shall enjoy ease. 4. Certain men, having escaped from the battle, reached the camp on the same day. 5. Caesar will set out to-morrow with a light-armed legion into the enemy's territories. 6. We did not dare to pursue the Gauls further. 7. Let us use the gifts of the gods well. 8. The leader sent certain men to the enemy for the sake of parleying. 9. When he had said this (*say* these things), he set out for Rome. 10. When he had put the enemy to flight, our men burnt the neighbouring towns.

EXERCISE 67.

A.—1. Romae natus est, Carthagini mortuus est. 2. Vereor ne hostes equitibus nostris fugatis castra adoriantur. 3. Nonne omnibus aliquando moriendum est ? nonne pro patria moriturus sum ? 4. Commilitones, ibi opperimini ut Britannos adoriamini. 5. Spero hostes castris non potituros. 6. Mater non patietur filiam e complexu suo eripi. 7. Milites veriti sunt ne dux fortunam belli iterum eodem die experiretur. 8. Bellum quod in Gallia ortum est a Caesare administrabitur. 9. Rex, cum se moriturum esse intellexisset, omnia sua inter filios partitus est. 10. Cur tam exiguam manum adoriri non audemus ?

B.—1. The brave die once, the cowardly very often. 2. Will not Caesar try the fortune of war a second time ? 3. There is no doubt that the queen is dead. 4. Comrades, let us not advance further, let us wait here. 5. Would that the enemy had not gained possession of the standards ! 6. We shall die for *our* native land. 7. The leader was angry because his men were advancing too far. 8. Will you (pl.) suffer the enemy to set foot in *your* camp ? 9. The lieutenants were daily measuring out corn to the soldiers, fearing it would fail altogether. 10. Caesar orders the lieutenants to collect all *their* forces (use abl. abs.) *and* attack the camp unexpectedly.

EXERCISE 68.

A.—1. Nonne saltare potestis, puellae ? Possumus. 2. Impetum hostium sustinere non poteramus. 3. Verba ducis prae clamoribus

militum audire non potuimus.   4. Epistolam, si potero, cras ad te
mittam.   5. Exploratores negaverunt se castra hostium speculari
potuisse.   6. Nostri retineri non potuerunt quin pontem dirimerent.
7. Dux rogat num sui signa reciperare potuerint.   8. Nihil obstat
quin naves cras deducantur.   9. Spero me duci persuasurum ut
civibus parcat.   10. Dubitari non potest quin dei animos hominum
flectere possint.

B.—1. Will you be able to accompany me to-morrow ?   I shall.
2. Were you able to persuade the boy to learn these verses by heart ?
I was not.   3. We cannot give you what you ask.   4. I was not
able to understand many *things* which I learned by heart *as* a boy.
5. The lieutenant wrote to Caesar that he could not without great
danger lead the legion out of winter quarters.   6. The soldiers
could not be restrained from charging the enemy.   7. What prevents
our being able to set out to-morrow ?   8. We should have done this
if we had been able.   9. I have no doubt that Caesar can bridge the
river.   10. What hindered you from being able to send me a letter ?

EXERCISE 69.

A.—1. Vos afuistis, nos autem affuimus.   2. Si poterimus,
patriae proderimus.   3. Dicunt Catilinam illo die vel consilio vel
casu afuisse.   4. Opperiemur dum custodes discedant.   5. Dum
adsumus, non audet loqui.   6. Utinam heri in senatu affuisses !
7. Sapiens omnibus vel amicis vel hostibus prodesse debet.   8.
Dicite mihi, milites, utrum Crassus an Labienus legioni praesit.
9. Multis rebus interfui quibus deesse non potui.   10. Caesar, dum
naves exspectat, aedificia quae supererant diremit.

B.—1. I have always benefited the state, but you have injured
it.   2. Were you present or absent, Catilina ?   3. As long as he
lives, he will never do good to the state.   4. So many ships had
been sent to Britain that few were left in the harbour.   5. I hope
Labienus will be at the head of the legion.   6. As long as Caesar is
present in Gaul, the states will not dare to fall away.   7. The Gauls
were begging for peace on the ground that a very small part of the
summer was left.   8. I shall do nothing until you are present.
9. But we are in the midst of so many dangers that nothing can
benefit either you or me.   10. Unless Caesar himself had been at
the head of the legions, no one of us would have been living to-day.

EXERCISE 70.

A.—1. Postquam istam epistolam accepi, domum statim proficisci quam Romae manere malui. 2. Si regredi vis, statim discede. 3. Nemo est quin rei publicae obesse nolit. 4. Vultisne, pueri, carmina huius poetae ediscere ? Nolumus. 5. Nolite, cives, vobis magis quam rei publicae consulere. 6. Postquam intellexi eum proficisci nolle, rogavi cur domi manere mallet. 7. Postquam exploratores haec nuntiaverunt, ducem rogavimus num in castra hostium nocturnum impetum facere vellet. 8. Utinam Caesar voluisset me legionibus praeficere ! 9. Postquam intellexit se mortiferum vulnus accepisse, dixit se mori malle quam vivere. 10. Utinam, cives, semper nolitis rei publicae obesse !

B.—1. Tell us, boys, what you prefer to do. 2. On perceiving this, he was unwilling to advance further. 3. We wish to do all that we can. 4. He prefers to consult his own interest rather than that of the state. 5. Would that Catilina had preferred to benefit his country ! 6. After Caesar had gone away, the soldiers were unwilling to winter in Gaul. 7. Do not attack the enemy's towns while Caesar is absent. 8. The leader asked whether the soldiers were willing to follow him. 9. They answered that they were willing and had always been willing. 10. Who doubts that we are willing and have always been willing to follow you ?

EXERCISE 71.

A.—1. Peditibus auxilium afferte, equites. 2. Bellum populo Romano sine causa intulistis. 3. Naves onerariae longius aestu delata erant. 4. Legati se ad suos haec relaturos esse dixerunt. 5. Rogemus cur Gallis bellum intulerint. 6. Barbari ante pedem rettulerunt quam nostri impetum facerent. 7. Signa conferte, pedem referre nolite. 8. Ferunt Caesarem frumentum ex agris contulisse. 9. Non prius bellum inferemus quam haec ad hostes deferantur. 10. Tanta tempestas subito coorta est, ut naves eodem unde erant profectae referrentur.

B.—1. Why do you put off *your* journey ? 2. Every one is asking why you are putting off *your* journey. 3. The master took those books of yours away because (as he thought) they were harmful to boys. 4. I bade the slave take away the things he had brought. 5. Let water be brought for extinguishing the fire (*ad* with gerundive construction). 6. Caesar will make war upon the Gauls before the Germans can bring aid. 7. Having weighed anchor (abl. abs.), he set sail. 8. Caesar ordered his lieutenants to bring him aid. 9.

Caesar briefly harangued his men before he ordered the standards to be borne against the enemy. 10. Hostilities must not be begun before these things can be reported to the senate.

EXERCISE 72.

A.—1. Quid faciamus? Hostes coeunt, nostri pereunt. 2. Utinam legati redeant! Utinam ne abiissent! 3. Utrum casu an consilio haec fiunt? 4. Poeta Romam ibat filium visum. 5. Abeamus ne peiora fiant. 6. Omnia parata sunt ad flumen transeundum. 7. Dic nobis quae Romae hodie fiant. 8. Athenas ivissem, nisi consul factus essem. 9. Redite, legati, eo unde profecti estis. 10. Nonne scis te eo abiturum unde nemo umquam rediit?

B.—1. What were we to do? Whither were we to go? 2. The boy has gone out to play. When will he return? 3. Will Catilina become consul? I hope he will never become consul. 4. Caesar is reported to have crossed the river Rhine with large forces. 5. He said he would not go away before the ambassadors returned. 6. Who will go to ask Caesar for pardon? 7. I will show you what I am willing to do. 8. You will cross the river, my sons, when you return home. 9. If you had returned earlier, you would have become consul. 10. My sons had gone to Rome in order to become Cicero's pupils.

EXERCISE 73.

A.—1. Stultum iuvat de se loqui. 2. Oportet omnes tempore bene uti. 3. Avaritiae tuae patrem tuum taeduit. 4. Oportuit te cum hostium duce colloqui. 5. Nonne reginae, mulieris miserrimae, te miseret? 6. Quid dicam ut te stultitiae tuae vel pudeat vel poeniteat? 7. Accidit ut illo die in senatu adessem. 8. Licet stulto semper loqui, sapientem autem oportet cogitare quae sibi sint dicenda. 9. Utinam mihi contigisset filium sapientem habere! 10. Legati rogaverunt num sibi discedere liceret.

B.—1. Is it not your good luck to have many friends? 2. You ought to have consulted the interest of the state rather than that of your friends. 3. You will be permitted to do such *things*, but a Roman citizen will not. 4. Your father is disgusted at your crimes. 5. If it rains to-morrow, I shall remain at home. 6. Why do you ask if it is seemly for women to fight in line of battle? 7. He said he pitied the captives. 8. It is thundering to-day, yesterday it was snowing. 9. May you some day be ashamed of such pursuits! 10. I fear I shall not be allowed to go away from Rome.

EXERCISE 74.

A.—1. Nostra interest hanc navem cras deduci. 2. Militum maximi interest ducem peritum esse. 3. Quid mea refert utrum me ames an oderis? 4. Catilinae magni intererat ut Cicero interficeretur. 5. Nostra parvi refert te haec meminisse. 6. Num tua interest quot naves comparatae sint? 7. Mea, inquit, maximi refert Ciceronem fieri consulem. 8. Quid nostra plurimi referat nobis solum notum est. 9. Caesaris maximi interest ut facultas pugnandi hostibus detur. 10. Dixit bellum producere hostium maximi interesse.

B.—1. It is of very little consequence to me that all will hate me. 2. Was it not of importance to you to remember this? 3. We think it of the greatest importance to sailors to know *how* to swim. 4. It is of more consequence to everybody (*omnes*) *to blame* their own vices than to blame *those* of others. 5. What is of more importance to us than so to live that we can die without fear? 6. " It is of the greatest consequence," said he, " both to you and to the state that these things should happen (*say* be done) thus." 7. Do not remember how important it is to you that these things should happen thus : remember only of how much consequence it is to the state. 8. Of what consequence is it to a wise man whether death is the end or the beginning of all things? 9. Doctors say that it is not to their interest that their friends should always be well. 10. Was it of more consequence to me or to Caesar that the Gallic war should be protracted?

EXERCISE 75.

A.—1. Hic longe nobilissimus et ditissimus omnium Gallorum est. 2. Ne pessimi quidem hominum omnino mali sunt. 3. Vix credibile est te hac sententia stare malle. 4. Legati contra dixerunt se frustra conatos esse de his rebus certiores fieri. 5. Unde venisti? Inde veni unde tu nuper regressus es. 6. Tum repente conclamatum est, et strepitus quasi magnae multitudinis auditus est. 7. Nusquam tam difficulter agri coluntur. 8. Me iuvabit laboribus parumper vacare. 9. Omnia quibus ad proximum diem opus est noctu comparentur. 10. Tu id non modo non prohibebas, verum etiam approbabas.

B.—1. Then at length our men, thrown into panic by the novel kind of fighting, turned their backs. 2. I acknowledge those things to be true, but these are not to be believed. 3. The enemy, having delayed a little while, charged our men a second time. 4. Not even

Caesar will persist *in* this plan, when he had been informed about these things. 5. When the din was heard, the cavalry, who were not far distant, hastened thither. 6. Not even savages would have done such things on purpose. 7. There was severe fighting on both sides. 8. I fear that the matter will turn out badly. 9. There was running hither and thither. 10. I will now say openly what I have thought secretly.

EXERCISE 76.

A.—1. Saepius tibi indulsisti. 2. Patrem tuum Carthagini nuperrime vidi. 3. Scelerum multorum saepissime accusatus numquam condemnatus est. 4. Cave ne amici tui hoc postea aegerrime ferant. 5. Num diutius manere nos oportet? 6. Magis factis quam verbis delector. 7. Caesar rogavit quis apud Germanos plurimum auctoritatis haberet. 8. Quid morte minus timendum est fortibus? 9. Me avaritiae arguunt : minime qualis homo sim sciunt. 10. De his rebus copiosissime, de illis brevissime, de omnibus optime locutus est.

B.—1. The fight was very fierce and very long. 2. I am greatly delighted that (*say* because) that friend of yours has been condemned for bribery. 3. Caesar ordered his *men* not to remain longer in the camp. 4. Cicero has said all these things excellently. 5. This man had the greatest influence among (*apud*) the Gauls. 6. Have you forgotten those *things* which you promised very recently? 7. No one can always indulge himself with impunity. 8. You dance better than your brother. 9. I go to Rome more frequently than to Athens. 10. The wolf bit the hunter very fiercely.

EXERCISE 77.

A.—1. Decem milia peditum et mille equites in Gallia conscripsit. 2. Milites tertiae decimae legionis fossam quingentos quadraginta pedes longam perduxerunt. 3. Emi hodie libros tres, primum magno, secundum pluris, tertium minoris. 4. Legionem quartam decimam praesidio impedimentis reliquit. 5. Aggerem pedes trecentos triginta longum, pedes octoginta altum exstruxit. 6. Cum iam triginta milia passum ab urbe abesset, castra posuit. 7. Tredecim milia peditum et equites octingentos comparavit. 8. Duas fossas quindecim pedes latas, undecim altas, centum quadraginta duos longas perducebat. 9. Castra turribus circumdedit, quae pedes centum septuaginta inter se distabant. 10. Militum milibus quinquaginta et principibus ducentis uno proelio interfectis diutius resistere non possumus.

B.—1. *There* were a thousand cavalry and three thousand infantry in the army of the Gauls.   2. He lingered twenty-five days in that place, waiting for (*say* until he should get) suitable weather.   3. Having himself advanced by night nine miles (*say* nine thousand paces), he came in sight of the enemy's camp.   4. He bestowed praise especially on the soldiers of the seventeenth legion.   5. Caesar said that the island *of* Britain was eight hundred miles long.   6. On the fifth day he raised an earthwork sixteen feet high, two hundred and twenty-one feet long.   7. At what price do you sell a dozen eggs ?   At a small price, but at more than yesterday.   8. He surrounds the winter quarters by a rampart nine feet high and a trench fifteen feet wide.   9. Having quitted the camp at the third hour, they advanced on that day thirty miles.   10. The first said he valued the sword at a very high price, the second at less, the third at very little.

EXERCISE 78.

A.—1. Copiae hostium prope castra iam constiterant.   2. Propter inopiam frumenti et ob alias causas legiones inter plures civitates distribuit.   3. Nihil praeter spem nobis relictum est.   4. Dixit se et suos penes Caesarem esse.   5. Intra fossam murum aedificaverunt, in quo saxa magni ponderis collocabant.   6. Benevolentiae tuae erga nos non obliviscemur.   7. Pauci nostrorum qui extra munitiones pabulandi causa progressi erant hostes effugerunt.   8. Caesar auxilia pone castra in silvis collocavit.   9. Ipse intermi aciem legionum quattuor veteranarum in colle instruxerat, ita ut supra se duas legiones quas nuperrime cis Rhodanum conscripserat collocaret.   10. Obsides eorum penes nos mox erunt.

B.—1. The Gauls who dwell on the other side of the Rhine differ among themselves *in* language, customs, *and* laws.   2. The soldiers being excited because of that circumstance (*res*), there was very fierce fighting all day.   3. The Germans attempted to march through our province.   4. Construct (pl.) a trench of sixteen feet around the winter quarters.   5. *There* was left one way through Gaul, by which (*qua*) on account of *its* narrowness they could not go, if the Gauls were unwilling (use abl. abs.).   6. These *people* are outside the province on the other side of the Rhone.   7. The ambassadors show that nothing beyond the soil of the ground (*ager*) has been left to them.   8. After this victory Caesar accomplished a twenty days' march across the river.   9. He left two legions on this side of the river to construct a trench eighteen feet wide and of very great depth.   10. He placed all the cavalry to the number of three thousand near the camp.

EXERCISE 79.

A.—1. Num ea coram populo affirmare ausus es? 2. Hostes haud procul porta Collina castra posuerunt. 3. Curate, cives, ut illis praemium propter virtutem detur. 4. Non sine magna spe gloriae adipiscendae illuc profecti sumus. 5. Ex urbe clam egressi, haud procul castris hostium proditores convenerunt. 6. De summo monte despicientes viginti urbes et oppida conspeximus. 7. Unus e captivis respondisse dicitur se malle liberum mori quam vivere servum. 8. Nonne videtis igitur unius viri consilio ortum esse novum populum? 9. Ego tecum vixi : nonne tu mecum vis mori? 10. Multa pro te coram iudicibus de rebus gestis, de virtute tua dixi.

B.—1. I will go with you as far as the gates of the city. 2. The camp was not far distant from the river Rhone. 3. He paid the money to the creditor in the presence of the people. 4. O that the state may never be without citizens like you ! 5. You, Marcus, are worthy of praise beyond all your fellow-soldiers. 6. The general was drawing up the line before the camp. 7. Will you not slip out of the camp with me by night ? 8. The rivers flow down from the mountains. 9. Not even for a friend am I willing to die. 10. The lieutenants were informed about these things through spies.

EXERCISE 80.

A.—1. Nostri testudine facta sub moenia accesserunt. 2. Supra caput montes imminentes, sub pedibus flumen profundum conspeximus. 3. Multi terga verterunt et sese in proximas silvas abdiderunt. 4. Post proelium captivi sub iugum missi sunt. 5. Super cadavera hominum et equorum ruimus. 6. In insula mons altissimus et subter monte spelunca est. 7. Turres sub moenia admoveri iussit. 8. Nasus subter oculos situs est. 9. Omnis Gallia in tres partes divisa est. 10. Nova legio conscribenda est, militum enim supra decem milia illo die ceciderunt.

B.—1. The maiden recognised *her* lover's shield over *her* brother's shoulders. 2. The line having been drawn up, he placed the cavalry on the right wing. 3. With a great shout all rush upon* the enemy. 4. All whom our men captured under arms they slew. 5. Let us not remain on the hill ; let us descend into the plain. 6. Towards† night the enemy turned their backs. 7. The boy drank the wine without the knowledge of his father. 8. Stretched beneath yonder oak let us talk of past times. 9. I love this *man* much, for *there* is in him the greatest virtue *and* the greatest kindness towards all. 10. Therefore I ask from· you that you should receive him into your friendship.

---

* " To rush upon " = *ruere in* with acc.   † *Sub* with acc.

GENERAL VOCABULARIES TO THE EXERCISES.

I.—LATIN-ENGLISH.

ā, ab, *prep.* (with *abl.*), from, (of agent) by.

abdō, -ere, abdidī, abditum, hide.

abripiō, -ere, abripuī, abreptum, seize, carry off.

abstineō, -ēre, abstinuī, abstentum, abstain.

absum, abesse, āfuī, be absent.

abundō, -āre, abound.

abūtor, abūsus sum, abuse (with *abl.*).

accēdō, -ere, accessī, accessum, approach.

accidit, -ere, accidit, it happens.

accipiō, -ere, accēpī, acceptum, receive.

accūsō -āre, accuse.

ācer, ācris, ācre, keen, ardent, fierce.

aciēs, -ēī, *f.*, line of battle.

acus, -ūs, *f.*, needle.

acūtus, -a, -um, sharp.

ad, *prep.* (with *acc.*), to, until ; **ad ūnum,** to a man.

addūcō, -ere, adduxī, adductum, bring.

adeō, *adv.*, so.

adipiscor, -ī, adeptus sum, obtain.

administrō, -āre, manage, administer, carry on.

admittō, -ere, admīsī, admissum, commit (crime).

admoveō, -ēre, admōvī, admōtum, move up (*trans.*).

adorior, -īrī, adortus sum, attack.

adsum, adesse, adfuī, be present.

adūlātiō, adūlātiōnis, *f.*, flattery.

adveniō, -īre, advēnī, adventum, arrive.

adventō, -āre, be on the point of arriving.

adversus, -a, -um, adverse ; **rēs adversae,** adversity ; **adversus, adversum,** *prep.*, opposite, towards.

aedificium, -ī, *n.*, building.

aedificō, -āre, to build.

aeger, aegra, aegrum, sick, ill.

aegrē ferō, resent bitterly.

aegrōtō, -āre, be ill.

aerārium, -ī, *n.*, treasury.

aes, aeris, *n.*, bronze, money.

aestās, aestātis, *f.*, summer.

aestus, -ūs, *m.*, tide.

aetās, aetātis, *f.*, age, generation.

afferō, afferre, attulī, allātum, bring.

afficiō, -ere, affēcī, affectum, affect.

affirmō, -āre, affirm.

afflīgō, -ere, afflixī, afflictum, dash.

ager, agrī, *m.*, field.

agger, aggeris, *m.*, earthwork.

agnus, -ī, *m.*, lamb.

agō, -ere, ēgī, actum, drive.

agricola, -ae, *m.*, husbandman.

āiō, *defect.*, say.

alacer, alacris, alacre, cheerful, energetic, active.

albus, -a, -um, white.

aliās, *adv.*, at another time.

alibī, *adv.*, elsewhere.

aliēnus, -a, -um, belonging to another, of others ; aes aliē-num, *n.*, debt.

aliquandō, *adv.*, some day.

aliquis, aliqua, aliquid, and *adj.* aliquī, aliquae, aliquod, some one, some.

aliter, *adv.*, otherwise.

alius, -a, -ud, one (of several), another (of several).

alter, altera, alterum, the one (of two), the other (of two), the second (of two).

altitūdō, altitūdinis, *f.*, height, depth.

altus, -a, -um, high.

ambitus, -ūs, *m.*, bribery.

ambō, -ae, -ō, both.

ambulō, -āre, walk.

amīcitia, -ae, *f.*, friendship.

amīcus, -a, -um, friendly ; amī-cus, -ī, *m.*, friend.

amō, -āre, love.

amoenus, -a, -um, pleasant.

amor, amōris, *m.*, love.

amplector, -ī, amplexus sum, em-brace.

amplificō, -āre, extend, amplify.

an, *conj.*, or (in double questions)

ancora, -ae, *f.*, anchor.

anguis, -is, *m.*, snake.

angustiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, narrow-ness.

animal, animālis, *n.*, animal.

animus, -ī, *m.*, mind.

annus, -ī, *m.*, year.

anser, anseris, *m.*, goose.

ante, *adv.*, before ; *prep.* (with *acc.*), before.

anteā, *adv.*, beforehand.

antequam, *conj.*, before.

antīquus, -a, -um, ancient.

aper, aprī, *m.*, wild boar.

aperiō, -īre, aperuī, apertum, open (*trans.*).

appāreō, -ēre, appear.

appellō, -āre, call.

apportō, -āre, carry (to).

approbō, -āre, approve.

appropinquō, -āre, approach.

aptus, -a, -um, fit, adapted.

apud, *prep.* (with *acc.*), in the presence of, among.

aqua, -ae, *f.*, water.

aquila, -ae, *f.*, eagle.

āra, -ae, *f.*, altar.

arbitror, -ārī, think.

arbor, arboris, *f.*, tree.

arcus, -ūs, *m.*, bow.

ardor, ardōris, *m.*, heat.

arduus, -a, -um, lofty.

argentum, -ī, *n.*, silver, money.

arguō, -ere, arguī, argūtum, accuse.

ariēs, arietis, *m.*, ram, battering-ram.

Ariōvistus, -ī, *m.*, Ariovistus (a German chief).

arma, -ōrum, *n.pl.*, arms.

armiger, armigera, armigerum, bearing arms.

arō, -āre, to plough.

ars, artis, *f.*, art ; *pl.*, the arts.

arx, arcis, *f.*, citadel.

asper, aspera, asperum, rough, harsh.

at, *conj.*, but.

Athēnae, -ārum, *f.pl.*, Athens.

auctōritās, auctōritātis, *f.*, in-fluence, authority.

audācia, -ae, *f.*, boldness.

audacter, *adv.*, boldly.

audax, audācis, bold.

audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, dare.

audiō, -īre, hear.

auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum, bear away.

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum, increase (trans.).

aurīga, -ae, *m.,* charioteer.

aurum, -ī, *n.,* gold.

aut, *conj.,* or ; **aut . . . aut,** either . . . or.

autem, *conj.* (to be placed after the first word), but, however.

auxilium, -ī, *n.,* help, aid ; *pl.* **auxilia, -ōrum,** reinforcements.

avāritia, -ae, *f.,* avarice.

avidus, -a, -um, greedy.

avis, -is, *f.,* bird.

avus, -ī, *m.,* grandfather.

barbarus, -a, -um, barbarous, uncivilised.

bellum, -ī, *n.,* war ; **bellum inferō,** make war upon.

bene, *adv.,* well.

benevolentia, -ae, *f.,* goodwill.

benevolus, -a, -um, benevolent.

bibō, -ere, bibī, —, drink.

bonus, -a, -um, good.

bonum, -ī, *n.,* good ; *n.pl.* **bona, -ōrum,** goods, property.

brevis, -e, short, brief.

breviter, *adv.,* briefly.

Britannī, ōrum, *m.,* Britons.

Britannia, -ae, *f.,* Britain.

cadāver, cadāveris, *n.,* dead body, corpse.

cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsum, fall.

caelum, -ī, *n.,* heaven.

Caesar, Caesaris, *m.,* Caesar.

calamitās, calamitātis, *f.,* calamity.

calcar, calcāris, *n.,* spur.

canis, -is, *c.,* dog.

cantō, -āre, sing.

capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum, take.

captīvus, -ī, *m.,* captive.

caput, capitis, *n.,* head.

carcer, carceris, *m.,* prison.

carmen, carminis, *n.,* song, poem.

carō, carnis, *f.,* flesh.

Carthāgō, Carthāginis, *f.,* Carthage (a city of Africa).

cārus, -a, -um, dear.

castīgō, -āre, chastise.

castra, -ōrum, *n.pl.* camp.

cāsus, -ūs, *m.,* chance.

catēna, -ae, *f.,* chain.

Catilīna, -ae, *m.,* Catilina (a Roman who conspired against the state).

Catō, Catōnis, *m.,* Cato (a celebrated Roman).

causa, -ae, *f.,* cause ; **causā** (with *gen.*), for the sake of, on account of.

caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautum, beware.

celebrō, -āre, celebrate.

celer, celeris, celere, swift.

celeritās, celeritātis, *f.,* speed.

cēlō, -āre, keep in ignorance concerning.

certāmen, certāminis, *n.,* contest.

certior fīō, get information.

certus, -a, -um, certain.

cervus, -ī, *m.,* stag.

ceu, *adv.,* like as.

cibus, -ī, *m.,* food.

Cicerō, Cicerōnis, *m.,* Cicero (a Roman orator).

circā, *adv., prep.* (w. *acc.*), around.

circiter, *prep.* (with *acc.*), about (of number).

circum, *adv., prep.* (with *acc.*), around.

circumdō, -āre, circumdedī, circumdatum, surround.

cis, *prep.* (w. *acc.*), on this side of.

citerior, citerius, hither, nearer.

citrā, *adv.,* on this side ; *prep.* (with *acc.*), on this side of.

cīvis, -is, *c.,* citizen.

cīvitās, cīvitātis, *f.,* state.

clādēs, -is, *f.,* disaster.

clam, *adv.,* secretly ; *prep.* (with *acc.*), without the knowledge of.

clāmō, -āre, shout.

clāmor, clāmōris, *m.*, shout, cheer.

clārus, -a, -um, illustrious, renowned, famous.

classis, -is, *f.*, fleet.

claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum, shut.

clāvis, -is, *f.*, key.

coepī, coeptum, began.

coerceō, -ēre, control, curb.

cōgitō, -āre, meditate.

cognōscō, -ere, cognōvī, cognitum, get to know, recognise.

cōgō,, -ere, coēgī, coactum, collect.

cohibeō, -ēre, restrain.

cohortor, -ārī, exhort.

collaudō, -āre, bestow praise on.

Collīnus, -a, -um, Colline (the name of one of the gates of Rome).

collis, -is, *m.*, hill.

collocō, -āre, place, put.

colloquor, -ī, collocūtus sum, parley.

colō, -ere, coluī, cultum, cultivate.

columba, -ae, *f.*, dove.

combūrō, -ere, combussī, combustum, burn (trans.).

comitia, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, election ; comitia habeō, hold an election.

comitor, -ārī, accompany.

commeātus, -ūs, *m.*, supplies.

commīlitō, commīlitōnis, *m.*, a fellow-soldier, comrade.

commoror, -ārī, linger.

commoveō, -ēre, commōvī, commōtum, stir, move (trans.).

comparō, -āre, prepare, get together.

comperiō, -īre, comperī, compertum, ascertain.

complexus, -ūs, *m.*, embrace.

concēdō, -ere, concessī, concessum, yield, consent.

concidō, -ere, concidī, —, fall.

concilium, -ī, *n.*, council.

conclāmō, -āre, shout (together).

condemnō, -āre, condemn.

condiciō, condiciōnis, *f.*, condition ; *pl.*, terms.

conferō, conferre, contulī, collātum, bring together.

conficiō, -ere, confēcī, confectum, finish.

confīdō, -ere, confīsus sum, be confident.

confirmō, -āre, strengthen, cheer.

confiteor, -ērī, confessus sum, confess, admit.

coniūrō, -āre, conspire.

cōnor, -ārī, attempt.

conscrībō, -ere, conscripsī, conscriptum, enrol.

consentiō, -īre, consensī, consensum, come to an understanding (with).

conservō, -āre, preserve.

consilium, -ī, *n.*, counsel, plan, purpose, design.

consistō, -ere, constitī, constitum, take up a position, settle, halt.

conspectus, -ūs, *m.*, sight, appearance.

conspiciō, -ere, conspexī, conspectum, behold, observe.

conspicor, -ārī, come in sight of.

constituō, -ere, constituī, constitūtum, appoint.

consul, consulis, *m.*, consul (a Roman magistrate).

consulō, -ere, consuluī, consultum, consult the interests of (with *dat.*).

consultō, *adv.*, on purpose.

consūmō, -ere, consumpsī, consumptum, spend, consume.

contemnō, -ere, contempsī, contemptum, despise.

contendō, -ere, contendī, contentum, hasten.

contineō, -ēre, continuī, contentum, contain, keep (in a place).

contingit, -ere, contigit, it happens.

contrā, *adv.*, opposite ; *prep.*
(with *acc.*), against.

conveniō, -īre, convēnī, conven-
tum, assemble.

conventus, -ūs, *m.*, assembly,
council ; **conventum agō**, hold
a council.

convocō, -āre, call together,
summon.

coorior, -īrī, coortus sum, arise.

cōpiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, forces,
troops.

cōpiōsē, *adv.*, plentifully, fully.

cor, cordis, *n.*, heart.

cōram, *adv.*, face to face ; *prep.*
(with *abl.*), in the presence of.

Corinthus, -ī, *f.*, Corinth.

cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn, wing (of
army).

corōna, -ae, *f.*, garland.

corpus, corporis, *n.*, body.

corripiō, -ere, corripuī, cor-
reptum, snatch up.

cottīdiē, *adv.*, daily.

crās, *adv.*, to-morrow.

Crassus, -ī, *m.*, Crassus (a Roman
general).

crēdibilis, -e, credible.

crēditor, crēditōris, *m.*, a creditor.

crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditum,
believe (with *dat.*).

cremō, -āre, burn, cremate.

creō, -āre, create, appoint.

crūdēlis, -e, cruel.

crūs, crūris, *n.*, leg.

cubīle, -is, *n.*, bed, lair.

culpa, -ae, *f.*, blame.

culpō, -āre, blame.

cum, *prep.* (with *abl.*), with,
accompanied by.

cum, *conj.*, when, since, although.
cum . . . tum, both . . . and.

cupīdō, cupīdinis, *f.*, desire.

cupidus, -a, -um, desirous,
greedy.

cupiō, -ere, cupīvī, cupītum,
desire.

cūr, *adv.*, why ?

cūrō, -āre, take care.

currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum, run.

currus, -ūs, *m.*, chariot.

cursō, -āre, run to and fro.

cursus, -ūs, *m.*, course ; **cursum
tenēre**, hold on one's course.

curvus, -a, -um, curved, wind-
ing.

custōdiō, -īre, guard, keep.

custōs, custōdis, *m.*, guard.

dē, *prep.* (with *abl.*), down from,
concerning ; **dē imprōvīsō**, un-
expectedly.

dea, -ae, *f.*, a goddess.

dēbeō, -ēre, owe, ought.

decet, -ēre, it beseems.

dēclārō, -āre, declare.

dēdecet, -ēre, it misbeseems.

dēdecus, -coris *n.*, disgrace, in-
famy.

dēdicō, -āre, dedicate.

dēdō, -ere, dēdidī, dēditum, sur-
render.

dēdūcō, -ere, dēduxī, dēductum,
lead down, launch.

dēfatīgō, -āre, fatigue.

dēferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātum,
bear down.

dēficiō, -ere, dēfēcī, dēfectum,
fall away, fail ; *passive* (with
abl.), be lacking in.

dēfluō, -ere, dēfluxī, dēfluxum,
flow down.

dēlectō, -āre, to delight ; *impers.*
dēlectat, it pleases.

dēlectus, -ūs, *m.*, levy.

dēleō, -ēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, de-
stroy.

dēlīberō, -āre, deliberate.

dēligō, -āre, fasten.

dēmum, *adv.*, at length.

dens, dentis, *m.*, tooth.

dēplōrō, -āre, lament, deplore.

descendō, -ere, descendī, descen-
sum, descend.

dēserō, -ere, dēseruī, dēsertum,
desert.

dēsīderō, -āre, long for, desire.

dēspiciō, -ere, dēspexī, dēspect-
um, look down on.

dēsum, dēfuī, dēesse, be absent, be neglectful.

dēterior, dēterius, worse ; **dēterrimus, -a, -um,** worst.

deus, -ī, *m.,* a god.

dexter, dextra, dextrum, right, on the right hand ; **dextra, -ae,** *f.* (sc. **manus**), right hand.

dīcō, -ere, dixī, dictum, say.

dictitō, āre, say frequently.

diēs, -ēī, *m.* or (in *sing.*) *f.,* day.

differō, differre, distulī, dīlātum, separate.

difficilis, -e, difficult.

dignitās, dignitātis, *f.,* dignity.

dignor, -ārī, deem worthy (with *abl.*).

dignus, -a, -um, worthy (with *abl.*).

dīligentia, -ae, *f.,* diligence.

dīligō, -ere, dīlexī, dīlectum, esteem.

dīmicō, -āre, fight a pitched battle.

dīmittō, -ere, dīmīsī, dīmissum, disband.

dirimō, -ere, dirēmī, diremptum, break down, destroy.

dīripiō, -ere, dīripuī, dīreptum, pillage.

discēdō, -ere, discessī, discessum, depart.

discipulus, -ī, *m.,* pupil, disciple.

discurrō, -ere, discurrī and **discucurrī, discursum,** run in different directions.

disertus, -a, -um, eloquent.

displiceō, -ēre, displease (with *dat.*).

dissimilis, -e, unlike.

distō, -āre, —, —, be distant.

distribuō, -ere, distribuī, distribūtum, distribute.

dītior, dītius, richer ; **dītissimus, -a, -um,** richest.

diū, *adv.,* long.

dīves, dīvitis, rich.

dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum, divide.

dīvitiae, -ārum, *f.pl.,* riches.

dō, dare, dedī, datum, give.

doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctum, teach.

doctus, -a, -um, learned, skilled.

doleō, -ēre, grieve.

dolor, dolōris, *m.,* pain, grief, indignation.

dominus, -ī, *m.,* master, lord.

domus, -ūs, (*abl. sing.* **domō**), *f.,* house ; **domī,** at home ; **domum,** home, homewards.

dōnec, *conj.,* until.

dōno, -āre, give (as a present).

dōnum, -ī, *n.,* gift.

dormiō, -īre, sleep.

dubitō, -āre, doubt, hesitate.

dubius, -a, -um, doubtful.

dūcō, -ere, duxī, ductum, lead.

dulcior, dulciōris, sweeter.

dulcis, -e, sweet.

dum, *conj.,* while, as long as, until.

duo, -ae, -o, two.

dux, ducis, *m.,* leader, general.

ē, ex, *prep.* (with *abl.*), out of, from.

ēdiscō, -ere, ēdidicī, —, learn by heart.

ēduco, -āre, educate.

ēdūcō, -ere, ēduxī, ēductum, lead out, draw out.

efficiō, -ere, effēcī, effectum, bring about.

effugiō, -ere, effūgī, —, escape.

egēnus, -a, -um, needy.

egeō, -ēre, eguī, —, be needy, be in need of (with *abl.* or *gen.*).

ego, I.

ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, quit.

ēgregiē, *adv.,* admirably.

ēlābor, -ī, ēlapsus sum, slip out, escape.

ēloquens, ēloquentis, eloquent.

ēloquentia, -ae, *f.,* eloquence.

ēmendō, -āre, correct, amend.

emō, -ere, ēmī, emptum, buy.

ēmolliō, -īre, soften, refine.

eō, īre, īvī or **iī, itum,** go

eō, *adv.*, thither, to that place.
eōdem, *adv.*, to the same place.
epistola, -ae, *f.*, letter.
eques, equitis, *m.*, horse-soldier;
  pl., cavalry.
equester, equestris, equestre,
  equestrian, cavalry (*adj.*).
equitātus, -ūs, *m.*, cavalry.
equus, -ī, *m.*, horse.
ergā, *prep.* (with *acc.*), towards (a
  person).
ēripiō, -ere, ēripuī, ēreptum,
  snatch, tear out *or* away.
errō, -āre, go astray, be mis-
  taken.
ērudiō, -īre, train, polish.
ērudītiō, ērudītiōnis, *f.*, learning.
ērumpō, -ere, ērūpī, ēruptum,
  break out, sally forth.
et, *conj.*, and.
etiam, *conj.*, also.
etiamsī, *conj.*, although, even if.
etsī, *conj.*, although, even if.
ēveniō, -īre, ēvēnī, ēventum,
  turn out, happen.
ex, ē, *prep.* (with *abl.*), out of, from.
exanimō, -āre, kill.
excēdō, -ere, excessī, excessum,
  retire ; **ē vītā excēdō,** die.
excruciō, -āre, torment, distress.
exemplum, -ī, *n.*, example.
exerceō, -ēre, exercise.
exercitus, -ūs, *m.*, army.
**exhauriō, -īre, exhausī, exhaus-
  tum,** exhaust.
exiguus, -a, -um, scanty.
eximius, -a, -um, extraordinary,
  remarkable.
exinde, *adv.*, thenceforth.
expedītus, -a, -um, light-armed.
expellō, -ere, expulī, expulsum,
  drive out.
experior, -īrī, expertus sum, try,
  put to the trial.
explōrātor, explōrātōris, *m.*, spy.
expōnō, -ere, exposuī, expositum,
  put out, land (trans.).
expugnō, -āre, take by storm.
exspectō, -āre, await.

**exstinguō, -ere, exstinxī, ex-
  stinctum,** extinguish.
**exstruō, -ere, exstruxī, exstruct-
  um,** raise, construct.
exterus, -a, -um, outside ; **ex-
  terior, exterius,** outer ; **ex-
  trēmus, -a, -um,** and **extimus,
  -a, -um,** last.
extrā, *adv.*, outside ; *prep.* (with
  acc.), outside of.
exul, exulis, *m.*, exile.
faber, fabrī, *m.*, carpenter.
fābula, -ae, *f.*, tale, story.
faciēs, ēī, *f.*, face.
facilis, -e, easy.
faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum, make,
  do, value, esteem.
factum, -ī, *n.*, deed.
facultās, facultātis, *f.*, opportu-
  nity.
fāgus, -ī, *f.*, beech.
falsus, -a, -um, false.
fāma, -ae, *f.*, report, rumour,
  fame.
familia, -ae, *f.*, household.
fātur, fārī, *defect.*, speak.
faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum, be
  favourable.
fēlicior, fēliciōris, happier, more
  fortunate.
fēlix, fēlicis, happy, fortunate.
fēmina, -ae, *f.*, woman.
fera, -ae, *f.*, wild beast.
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, bear.
ferōciter, *adv.*, fiercely.
ferrum, -ī, *n.*, iron.
fessus, -a, -um, weary, tired.
festīnō, -āre, hasten.
fidēlis, -e, faithful.
fidēs, -eī, *f.*, faith, loyalty, alle-
  giance.
fīdō, -ere, fīsus sum, trust.
fīlia, -ae, *f.*, daughter.
fīlius, -ī, *m.*, son.
fingō, -ere, finxī, fictum, feign.
fīniō, -īre, end, finish.
fīnis, -is, *m.*, end ; *pl.*, territories.
fīnitimus, -a, -um, bordering on,
  near.

fīō, fierī, factus sum, become, be made.

firmō, -āre, strengthen.

flamma, -ae, f., flame.

flectō, -ere, flexī, flexum, bend, sway.

flōreō, -ēre, flōruī, —, flourish.

flōs, flōris, m., flower.

flūmen, flūminis, n., river.

fluvius, -ī, m., river.

foedus, foederis, n., treaty.

folium, -ī, n., leaf.

fons, fontis, m., fountain.

foris, -is, f., gate.

fortis, -e, brave.

fortiter, adv., bravely.

fortūna, -ae, f., fortune.

forum, -ī, n., market-place.

fossa, -ae, f., trench.

frāter, frātris, m., brother.

fraus, fraudis, f., fraud, guile, craft.

fretum, -ī, n., strait.

frīgidus, -a, -um, cold.

frīgus, frīgoris, n., cold.

frūctus, -ūs, m., fruit.

frūgī, indecl. adj., of worth.

frūgifer, frūgifera, frūgiferum, fruit-bearing.

frūmentum, -ī, n., corn.

fruor, -ī, fructus sum, enjoy (with abl.).

frustrā, adv., in vain.

fuga, -ae, f., flight.

fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitum, flee, take to flight.

fugō, -āre, put to flight.

fulgur, fulguris, n., flash of lightning.

fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum, pour; perf. part. pass., stretched.

fūnestus, -a, -um, baneful.

fungor, -ī, functus sum, discharge (with abl.).

Gabiī, -ōrum, m.pl., Gabii (a town).

Gādēs, -ium, f.pl., Gades (now Cadiz).

Gallia, -ae, f., Gaul (now France)

Gallicus, -a, -um, Gallic.

Gallus, -ī, m. a Gaul.

gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum, rejoice.

gaudium, -ī, n., joy.

gener, generī, m., son-in-law.

genū, -ūs, n., knee.

Germānus, -a, -um, German.

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum, wage.

gladius, -ī, m., sword.

glans, glandis, f., acorn.

glaucus, -a, -um, grey.

glōrior, -ārī, boast.

glōriōsus, -a, -um, boastful.

gracilis, -e, slender.

gradior, -ī, gressus sum, step.

gradus, -ūs, m., step.

Graecia, -ae, f., Greece.

Graecus, -a, -um, Greek.

grandinat, -āre, it hails.

grātia, -ae, f., favour; grātiā (with gen.), on account of, for the sake of.

grātus, -a, -um, pleasing.

gravis, -e, heavy, severe.

graviter, adv., heavily, deeply.

grex, gregis, m., flock.

gubernātor, gubernātōris, m., pilot.

habeō, -ēre, have, hold, consider; ōrātiōnem habeō, make a speech.

habitō, -āre, inhabit.

Hannibal, Hannibalis, m., Hannibal (a Carthaginian general).

hasta, -ae, f., spear.

Helvētia, -ae, f., Switzerland.

hērēs, hērēdis, c., heir, heiress.

herī (here), adv., yesterday.

hīberna, -ōrum, n.pl., winter quarters.

hīc (hic), haec, hōc, this.

hīc, adv., here.

hiemō, -āre, pass the winter, winter.

hiems, hiemis, f., winter.

Hispānia, -ae, f., Spain.

hodiē, adv., to-day.

homō, hominis, *c.*, man, person.

honōrō, -āre, honour.

hōra, -ae, *f.*, hour.

Horātius, -ī, *m.*, Horace (a Roman poet).

hortor, -ārī, exhort.

hortus, -ī, *m.*, garden.

hostis, -is, *c.*, enemy, foe ; *pl.*, enemy (collective).

hūc, *adv.*, hither.

hūmānus, -a, -um, human.

humilis, -e, low.

īdem, eadem, idem, the same.

idōneus, -a, -um, suitable.

ignāvia, -ae, *f.*, cowardice.

ignāvus, -a, -um, indolent, cowardly.

ignis, -is, *m.*, fire.

ignōrō, -āre, not to know, be unaware.

ille, illa, illud, that (yonder).

imber, imbris, *m.*, shower.

immemor, immemoris, unmindful.

immineō, -ēre, ---, ---, overhang.

immolō, -āre, sacrifice.

immortālis, -e, immortal.

impedīmenta, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, baggage.

imperīum, -ī, *n.*, rule, empire.

imperō, -āre, command, give orders (with *dat.*).

impetus, -ūs, *m.*, attack ; **impetum faciō,** charge (military phrase).

impiger, impigra, impigrum, active.

improbus, -a, -um, dishonourable.

imprōvīsō, see **dē imprōvīsō.**

impulsus, -ūs, *m.*, impulse, initiative.

impūne, *adv.*, with impunity.

in, *prep.* (with *abl.*), in, on ; (with *acc.*) into, upon, against.

incendium, -ī, *n.*, fire.

incendō, -ere, incendī, incensum, burn (trans.).

incertus, -a, -um, uncertain.

incitō, -āre, drive forward, excite.

incola, -ae, *c.*, inhabitant.

incolō, -ere, incoluī, incultum, dwell.

incolumis, -e, unhurt, safe and sound.

indicō, -āre, to point out.

indignus, -a, -um, unworthy.

indulgeō, -ēre, indulsī, indultum, be indulgent, indulge (with *dat.*).

inermis, -e, unarmed.

infēlix, infēlīcis, unfortunate, unhappy.

inferior, inferius, lower ; **infimus** *or* **īmus, -a, -um,** lowest.

inferō, inferre, intulī, illātum, bring in ; **bellum inferō,** make war upon.

infidēlis, -e, unfaithful.

infrā, *adv.*, and *prep.* (with *acc.*), below.

ingenium, -ī, *n.*, ability, disposition, genius.

ingens, ingentis, immense.

ingredior, -ī, ingressus sum, set foot in.

inimīcitia, -ae, *f.*, hostility, enmity.

inimīcus, -a, -um, hostile ; **inimīcus, -ī,** *m.*, enemy.

inīquus, -a, -um, unequal, unfair, unfavourable, disadvantageous.

initium, -ī, *n.*, beginning.

iniūria, -ae, *f.*, injury, act of violence.

inopia, -ae, *f.*, scarcity.

inops, inopis, helpless.

inquam, inquiī, *defect.*, say.

insciens, inscientis, unwitting, unknowing.

insequor, -ī, insecūtus sum, follow, pursue.

insons, insontis, innocent.

instruō, -ere, instruxī, instructum, draw up.

insula, -ae, *f.*, island.

insum, inesse, infui, be in.

integrātiō, integrātiōnis, *f.*, renewal.

intellegō, -ere, intellexī, intellectum, understand.

inter, *prep.* (with *acc.*), between, among ; inter sē, among themselves, one from another.

interclūdō, -ere, interclūsī, interclūsum, cut off.

interdum, *adv.*, sometimes.

intereā, interim, *adv.*, meanwhile.

interficiō, -ere, interfēcī, interfectum, kill.

interim, *adv.*, meanwhile.

interior, interius, inner ; intimus, -a, -um, inmost.

interrogō, -āre, question. interrogate.

intersum, interfui, interesse, be in the midst ; interest, *impers.*, it is the business (of), it is of importance (to).

intrā, *adv.*, and *prep.* (with *acc.*), within.

intrō, -āre, enter.

intus, *adv.*, within.

inūtilis, -e, unserviceable.

invādō, -ere, invāsī, invāsum, invade, seize.

inveniō, -īre, invēnī, inventum, find.

invideō, -ēre, invīdī, invīsum, to envy, be envious (with *dat.*).

invītus, -a, -um, unwilling.

ipse, -a, -um, self.

īra, -ae, *f.*, anger.

īrascor, -ī, īrātus sum, be angry.

irrumpō, -ere, irrūpī, irruptum, break into.

is, ea, id, that ; he, she, it.

iste, -a, -ud, that (of yours).

ita, *adv.*, so.

Italia, -ae, *f.*, Italy.

iter, itineris, *n.*, journey, march.

iterum, *adv.*, again, a second time.

iaceō, -ēre, lie, lie dead.

iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactum, throw.

iactō, -āre, throw, hurl.

iam, *adv.*, now, by this time.

iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum, bid.

iūdex, iūdicis, *m.*, judge (properly, juryman).

iugum, -ī, *n.*, yoke.

iūmentum, -ī, *n.*, baggage-animal.

iungō, -ere, iunxī iunctum, join.

iussum, -ī, *n.*, order, command.

iūnior, iūniōris, younger.

iuvat, -āre, iūvit, it delights.

iuvenis, -is, *m.*, young man.

iuxtā, *adv.*, close ; *prep.* (with *acc.*), close by.

Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*, Labienus (a Roman commander).

labor, labōris, *m.*, labour.

labōrō, -āre, to labour, take pains.

lac, lactis, *n.*, milk.

lacer, lacera, lacerum, torn.

lacrima, -ae, *f.*, tear.

laevus, -a, -um, left, on the left hand ; laeva, -ae, *f.* (sc. manus), left hand.

lapis, lapidis, *m.*, stone.

lateō, -ēre, latuī, —, hide.

Latīnus, -a, -um, Latin.

lātus, -a, -um, broad, wide.

laudō, -āre, praise.

laus, làudis, *f.*, praise.

lēgātiō, lēgātiōnis, *f.*, embassy.

lēgātus, -ī, *m.*, ambassador, lieutenant.

legiō, legiōnis, *f.*, legion.

legō, -ere, lēgī, lectum, read.

leō, leōnis, *m.*, lion.

lex, lēgis, *f.*, law.

liber, librī, *m.*, book.

liber, lībera, līberum, free.

līberālis, -e, liberal.

līberī, -ōrum, *m.pl.*, children.

līberō, -āre, free.

lībertās, lībertātis, *f.*, liberty.

libet, -ēre, it pleases.

licet, -ēre, it is permitted ; **licet,** *conj.,* although.

līlium, -ī, *n.,* lily.

lingua, -ae, *f.,* tongue, language.

littera, -ae, *f.,* letter, character ; *pl.,* literature, letters.

lītus, lītoris, *n.,* shore.

locus, -ī, *m.,* place.

longē, *adv.,* far ; **longius,** farther, further, too far.

longus, -a, -um, long ; **nāvis longa,** man-of-war.

loquax, loquācis, talkative, loquacious.

loquor, -ī, locūtus sum, speak, talk.

lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsum, play.

lūna, -ae, *f.,* moon.

lustrō, -āre, visit.

lūsus, -ūs, *m.,* game.

Lutētia, -ae, *f.,* a town, now Paris.

magis, *adv.,* rather.

magister, magistrī, *m.,* master.

magnificus, -a, -um, distinguished, magnificent.

magnopere, *adv.,* greatly.

magnus, -a, -um, great, large.

māior, māiōris, greater.

māiōrēs, -um, *m.pl.,* ancestors.

male, *adv.,* badly.

maledicus, -a, -um, slanderous.

mālō, malle, māluī, —, prefer.

malus, -a, -um, bad, wicked.

maneō, -ēre, mansī, maṅsum, remain.

manus, -ūs, *f.,* hand.

Marcus, -ī, *m.,* Marcus (a Roman name).

mare, -is, *n.,* sea.

marītus, -ī, *m.,* husband.

Mars, Martis, *m.,* Mars (the Roman god of war).

mās, maris, *m.,* male.

Massilia, -ae, *f.,* a town, now Marseilles.

māter, mātris, *f.,* mother.

mātūrius, *adv.,* earlier.

maximē, *adv.,* very greatly.

maximus, -a, -um, greatest ; **nātū maximus,** eldest.

medicus, -ī, *m.,* doctor, physician, surgeon.

medius, -a, -um, middle.

melior, meliōris, better.

meminī, *defect.,* remember.

memor, memoris, mindful.

mendax, mendācis, mendacious, untruthful.

mensa, -ae, *f.,* table.

mercātor, mercātōris, *m.,* merchant.

mereō, -ēre, deserve, merit.

messis, -is, *f.,* harvest.

mētior, -īrī, mensus sum, measure out.

mīles, mīlitis, *m.,* soldier.

minae, -ārum, *f.pl.* threats.

minimus, -a, -um, least, smallest ; **nātū minimus,** youngest.

minister, ministrī, *m.,* servant.

minor, minōris, less, smaller.

miser, misera, miserum, wretched, unhappy.

miseret, -ēre, it moves to pity.

mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum, send.

modus, -ī, *m.,* manner.

moenia, -ium, *n.pl.,* walls (of a city).

molestiae, -ārum, *f.pl.,* annoyances.

molestus, -a, -um, troublesome, burdensome, annoying.

molliō, -īre, mitigate, soothe.

moneō, -ēre, admonish, warn.

mons, montis, *m.,* mountain.

monstrō, -āre, show.

morbus, -ī, *m.,* disease.

mordeō, -ēre, momordī, morsum, bite.

morior, -ī, mortuus sum, die.

moror, -ārī, delay (*trans. and intrans.*).

mors, mortis, *f.,* death.

mortifer, mortifera, mortiferum, fatal, mortal.

mōs, mōris, *m.,* manner, custom ; *pl.,* **mōrēs,** manners, morals, character.

mōtus, -ūs, *m.,* movement, revolt.

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum, move (*trans.*) ; **moveor,** move (*intrans.*).

mox, *adv.,* soon.

mulier, mulieris, *f.,* woman.

multitūdō, multitūdinis, *f.,* multitude.

multus, -a, -um, many, much.

mundus, -ī, *m.,* world.

mūnio, -īre, fortify.

mūrus, -ī, *m.,* wall.

nanciscor, -ī, nactus sum, get.

narrō, -āre, relate, narrate, tell.

nascor, -ī, nātus sum, be born.

nāsus, -ī, *m.,* nose.

natō, -āre, swim.

nauta, -ae, *m.,* sailor.

nāvis, -is, *f.,* ship ; **nāvis longa,** battle - ship, man - of - war ; **nāvēs solvō,** set sail.

nē, *conj.,* that . . . not, lest ; *adv.,* not (in commands, etc.) ; **nē . . . quidem,** not even.

-ne, *interrogative enclitic particle.*

nec, *conj.,* and . . . not, nor ; **nec . . . nec,** neither . . . nor, or.

necnōn, *conj.,* also.

necō, -āre, kill, slay.

negō, -āre, deny, say . . . not.

nēmō, *acc.* **nēminem,** *dat.* **nēminī,** (*gen.* and *abl.* supplied by **nullus**), no one.

Neptūnus, -ī, *m.,* Neptune.

nēquam, *indecl.,* worthless.

neque . . . neque, *conj.,* neither . . . nor.

neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither.

nīdus, -ī, *m.,* nest.

niger, nigra, nigrum, black.

nihil, *indecl. n.,* nothing.

ningit, -ere, ninxit, it snows.

nisi, *conj.,* unless.

nix, nivis, *f.,* snow.

nō, nāre, swim.

nōbilis, -e, nobly born.

noceō, -ēre, to do harm, injure (with *dat.*).

noctū, *adv.,* by night.

nocturnus, -a, -um, nightly, by night.

nōlō, nolle, nōluī, —, be unwilling.

nōmen, nōminis, *n.,* name.

nōn, *adv.,* not.

nondum, *adv.,* not yet.

nonne, *interrogative,* not ?

nonnullus, -a, -um, some.

nōs, we.

noster, nostra, nostrum, our, ours.

nōtus, -a, -um, known, well-known.

novus, -a, -um, new.

nox, noctis, *f.,* night.

noxius, -a, -um, hurtful.

nūbēs, -is, *f.,* cloud.

nullus, -a, -um, none, no.

num, *interrogative particle,* in questions to which a negative answer is expected.

numerō, -āre, count.

numerus, -ī, *m.,* number.

numquam, *adv.,* never.

nunc, *adv.,* now.

nuntiō, -āre, announce.

nuntius, -ī, *m.,* messenger.

nūper, *adv.,* recently.

nūperrimē, *adv.,* very recently.

ob, *prep.* (with *acc.*), because of.

obeō, obīre, obiī, obitum, traverse, die.

obiciō, -ere, obiēcī, obiectum, set in the way.

oblīviscor, -ī, oblītus sum (with *gen.* or *acc.*), forget.

obses, obsidis, *c.,* hostage.

obsideō, -ēre, obsēdī, obsessum, besiege.

obstō, -āre, obstitī, obstātum, prevent.

obsum, obesse, obfuī, be harmful, harm.

obtemperō, -āre, obey (with *dat.*).

occāsiō, occāsiōnis, *f.,* opportunity.

occurrō, -ere, occurrī, occursum,
  fall in with, fall upon (with
  dat.).
ōcior, ōciōris, *adj.*, swifter.
ōcissimus, -a, -um, swiftest.
oculus, -ī, *m.*, eye.
ōdī, ōdisse, hate.
offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum,
  offer.
officium, -ī, *n.*, duty.
omnīnō, *adv.*, altogether, wholly.
omnis, -e, every, all ; *m.pl.*,
  omnēs, -ium, everyone, every-
  body.
onerārius, -a, -um, burden-bear-
  ing ; **nāvis onerāria,** *f.*, mer-
  chant-vessel.
onerō, -āre, load.
onus, oneris, *n.*, burden.
oportet, -ēre, it behoves.
opperior, -īrī, oppertus sum, wait.
oppidānus, -ī, *m.*, townsman.
oppidum, -ī, *n.*, town.
**opprimō, -ere, oppressī, oppres-
  sum,** overwhelm.
oppugnātiō, oppugnātiōnis, *f.*,
  siege.
oppugnō, -āre, attack, besiege.
optimē, *adv.*, very well, excellent-
  ly.
optō, -āre, wish for.
opulentus, -a, -um, opulent,
  flourishing.
opus, operis, *n.*, work ; **opus est,**
  there is need (with *abl.* of the
  thing needed).
ōra, -ae, *f.*, shore.
ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, *f.*, speech, ora-
  tion.
ōrātor, -ōris, *m.*, orator.
orior, -īrī, ortus sum, arise.
ornō, -āre, adorn.
ōrō, -āre, beg, beseech.
os, ossis, *n.*, bone.
ostendō, -ere, ostendī, ostentum,
  show.
ōtium, -ī, *n.*, ease, rest.
ōvum, -ī, *n.*, egg.
pābulor, -ārī, forage.

paene, *adv.*, almost.
paenitet, -ēre, it repents.
palam, *adv.*, openly ; *prep.* (with
  abl.), in the presence of.
palleō, -ēre, palluī, —, be pale.
palūs, palūdis, *f.*, marsh.
parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsum, be
  sparing, spare (with *dat.*).
parens, parentis, *c.*, parent.
pāreō, -ēre, obey, be obedient
  (with *dat.*).
pariō, -ere, peperī, partum, bring
  forth, gain.
parō, -āre, prepare.
pars, partis, *f.*, part.
partior, -īrī, divide.
parumper, *adv.*, for a little while.
parvus, -a, -um, little, small.
passer, passeris, *m.*, sparrow.
passus, -ūs, *m.*, pace.
pastor, pastōris, *m.*, shepherd.
pater, patris, *m.*, father.
patior, -ī, passus sum, suffer.
patria, -ae, *f.*, native land, coun-
  try.
paucī, -ae, -a, few.
paulātim, *adv.*, gradually.
pauper, pauperis, poor.
pavor, pavōris, *m.*, panic.
pax, pācis, *f.*, peace.
peccō, -āre, sin.
pecūnia, -ae, *f.*, money, sum of
  money.
pedes, peditis, *m.*, foot-soldier ;
  pl., infantry.
pēior, pēiōris, worse.
pellis, -is, *f.*, skin.
pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum, drive.
penes, *prep.* (with *acc.*), in the
  power of.
per, *prep.* (with *acc.*), through.
peragrō, -āre, wander about.
**perdūcō, -ere, perduxī, perduct-
  um,** lead through, construct
  (a trench).
pereō, perīre, periī, peritum,
  perish.
perfidus, -a, -um, treacherous,
  perfidious.

perīculum, -ī, *n.*, danger.
perītus, -a, -um, experienced, skilful.
permagnus, -a, -um, very great.
permittō, -ere, permīsī, permissum, entrust.
perniciōsus, -a, -um, pernicious, dangerous.
persequor, -ī, persecūtus sum, follow up, pursue.
persuādeō, -ēre, persuāsī, persuāsum, persuade.
perterreō, -ēre, strike with panic.
perturbō, -āre, dismay, frighten.
perveniō, -īre, pervēnī, perventum, arrive.
pēs, pedis, *m.*, foot; pedem referō, retreat.
petō, -ere, petīvī or petiī, petītum, ask, seek.
piget, -ēre, it pains.
pinguis, -e, fat.
pius, -a, -um, dutiful.
placeō, -ēre, please, be pleasing (with *dat.*).
plānitiēs, -ēī, *f.*, plain.
plēnus, -a, -um, full.
plōrō, -āre, bewail.
pluit, -ere, pluit, it rains.
plūrēs, -a, more.
plūs, plūris, *n.*, more; plūs, *adv.*, more.
pōculum, -ī, *n.*, cup, goblet.
Poenus, -a, -um, Carthaginian.
poēta, -ae, *m.*, poet.
polliceor, -ērī, promise.
Pompēius, -ī, *m.*, Pompeius (a celebrated Roman general).
pondus, ponderis, *n.*, weight.
pōne, *adv.*, behind; *prep.* (with *acc.*), behind.
pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum, place, pitch.
pons, pontis, *m.*, bridge.
populus, -ī, *m.*, people.
porta, ae, *f.*, gate.
portō, -are, carry.
portus, -ūs, *m.*, harbour.
possum, posse, potuī, —, be able.

post, *adv.*, afterwards; *prep.* (with *acc.*), behind.
posteā, *adv.*, afterwards.
posterior, posteriōris, later.
posterus, -a, -um, following.
postquam, *conj.*, after.
postrēmus, -a, -um, last.
potens, potentis, powerful.
potior, -īrī, get possession of, possess (with *abl.*).
prae, *prep.* (with *abl.*), for, by reason of (after a *negative*).
praebeō, -ēre, show, furnish, set.
praeceps, praecipitis, headlong.
praecipitō, -āre, throw.
praeda, -ae, *f.*, booty.
praedō, praedōnis , *m.*, robber, pirate.
praeficiō, -ere, praefēcī, praefectum, set over (with *dat.*).
praemium, -ī, *n.*, reward.
praesertim, *adv.*, especially.
praesidium, -ī, *n.*, garrison.
praestans, praestantis, excellent.
praesum, praeesse, praefuī, be in command of.
praeter, *prep.* (with *acc.*), beyond.
praetereō, praeterīre, praeteriī, praeteritum, go past.
praeteritus, -a, -um, past.
praeveniō, -īre, praevēnī, praeventum, get the start of.
prāvus, -a, -um, corrupt.
prior, priōris, former.
prīmus, -a, -um, first.
princeps, principis, *c.*, chief.
pristinus, -a, -um, former.
priusquam, *conj.*, before.
probō, -āre, approve.
probrum, -ī, *n.*, reproach.
procella, -ae, *f.*, storm.
procul, *adv.*, far; *prep.* (with *abl.*), far from.
prōdeō, prōdīre, prōdiī, prōditum, go forth.
prōditor, prōditōris, *m.*, betrayer, traitor

prŏdūcŏ, -ere, prŏduxī, prŏductum, protract.

proelium, -ī, n., battle.

proficiscor, -ī, profectus sum, set out.

profundus, -a, -um, deep.

prŏgredior, -ī, prŏgressus sum, advance.

prohibeŏ, -ēre, hinder, forbid.

prōnuntiŏ, -āre, proclaim.

prŏpe, adv., and prep. (w. acc.), near.

propior, propiōris, nearer.

propter, prep. (with acc.), near, on account of.

prōra, -ae, f., prow.

prosperus, -a, -um, prosperous ; rēs prosperae, prosperity.

prŏsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, be beneficial, do good.

prōvidens, prōvidentis, foreseeing.

prōvidus, -a, -um, foreseeing.

prōvincia, -ae, f., province.

proximus, -a, -um, nearest, next.

prūdens, prūdentis, prudent, wise.

pudet, -ēre, it shames.

puella, -ae, f., girl.

puer, puerī, m., boy.

pugna, -ae, f., battle.

pugnŏ, -āre, to fight.

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, beautiful.

pulchritūdŏ, pulchritūdinis, f., beauty.

pūniŏ, -īre, punish.

puppis, -is, f., stern.

putŏ, -āre, consider, think.

quālis, -e, of what kind, what sort of.

quam, adv., than.

quamquam, conj., although.

quamvīs, conj., although.

quandŏ, adv., when ?

quantus, -a, -um, how great ? (as great) as.

quārē, adv., why ?

quasi, conj. and adv., as if.

quassŏ, -āre, shatter.

quatiŏ, -ere, —, quassum, shake.

-que, enclitic conj., and.

quercus, -ūs, f., oak.

quī, quae, quod, rel., who, which, that ; interrog. adj., what ? quī, qua, quod, indef. adj., any.

quia, conj., because.

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, whoever, whatever.

quid, what ? see quis.

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam and (adj.) quoddam, a certain (person or thing).

quidem, see nē . . . quidem.

quīlibet, quaelibet, quidlibet and (adj.) quodlibet, any you please.

quīn, conj., that . . . not, (but) that, from (. . . ing) ; adv., why not ?

quis, quae, quid, interrog., who ? what ?

quis, qua, quid, indef., any one, anything.

quisquam, quidquam or (adj.) quodquam, any.

quisque, quaeque, quidque and (adj.) quodque, each.

quisquis, quaequae, quidquid (quicquid) and (adj.) quodquod whoever, whatever.

quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs and (adj.) quodvīs, any you will.

quŏ, adv., whither ?

quod, conj., because.

quominus, conj., that (thereby) . . . not ; from (. . .-ing.

quōmodo, adv., how ?

quondam, adv., formerly.

quoniam, conj., since.

quoque, adv., also.

quot, indecl., how many ?

rāmus, -ī, m., branch.

rāna, -ae, f., frog.

rapax, rapācis, greedy, rapacious.

ratiŏ, ratiōnis, f., reason.

reciperŏ, -āre, recover.

recipiŏ, -ere, recēpī, receptum, receive.

recitō, -āre, read aloud, recite.

recreō, -āre, refresh.

redeō, redīre, rediī, reditum, go back.

redintegrō, -āre, renew.

reditus, -ūs, m., return.

redūcō, -ere, reduxī, reductum, lead back.

referō, referre, rettulī, relātum, bear back.

rēfert, rēferre, rettulit, —, it concerns.

reficiō, -ere, refēcī, refectum, repair.

rēgīna, -ae, f., queen.

regiō, regiōnis, f., region.

regnō, -āre, reign.

regnum, -ī, n., kingdom.

regō, -ere, rexī, rectum, rule, govern.

regredior, -ī, regressus sum, return.

relinquō, -ere, relīquī, relictum, leave, relinquish.

reliquus, -a, -um, remaining.

remedium, -ī, n., remedy.

repente, adv., suddenly.

repentīnus, -a, -um, sudden.

reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum, find.

reportō, -āre, bring back.

repudiō, -āre, reject.

rēs, -eī, f., thing, affair.

rēs adversae, adversity.

rēs gestae, exploits.

rēs prosperae, prosperity.

rēs publica, f., state, republic.

reservō, -āre, reserve.

respondeō, -ēre, respondī, responsum, reply.

rēte, -is, n., net.

retineō, -ēre, retinuī, retentum, retain.

revertor, -ī, revertī, reversum, return (intrans.).

revocō, -āre, recall, call back.

rex, rēgis, m., king.

Rhēnus, -ī, m., the Rhine.

Rhodanus, -ī, m., the Rhone.

rīpa, -ae, f., bank.

rogō, -āre, ask.

Rōmānus, -ī, m., a Roman.

Rōmulus, -ī, m., Romulus.

rosa, -ae, f., rose.

rubeō, -ēre, rubuī, —, blush.

ruber, rubra, rubrum, red.

ruō, -ere, ruī, rutum, rush.

rursus, adv., again, back again.

rūs, rūris, n., country (opposed to town).

rusticus, -a, -um, country (adj.).

sacer, sacra, sacrum, sacred.

sacerdōs, sacerdōtis, c., priest, priestess.

saepe, adv., often.

saepissimē, adv., very often.

saepius, adv., more often, oftener.

sagax, sagācis, sagacious, shrewd.

sagitta, -ae, f., arrow.

saltō, -āre, dance.

salūs, salūtis, f., safety.

salūtāris, -e, salutary, beneficial.

sapiens, sapientis, wise.

sapientia -ae, f., wisdom.

satis, enough; compar. satius, preferable.

satisfaciō, -ere, satisfēcī, satisfactum, satisfy (with dat.).

saxum, -ī, n., stone, rock.

scelus, sceleris, n., crime.

sciō, -īre, know.

scrībō, -ere, scripsī, scriptum, write.

scūtum, -ī, n., shield.

sē or sēsē, himself, herself, itself, themselves.

sed, conj., but.

sedīle, -is, n., seat.

segnitiēs, -ēī, f., sloth, apathy.

semel, adv., once.

semper, adv., always.

senātus, -ūs, m., senate.

senectūs, senectūtis, f., old age.

senex, senis, m., old man.

senior, seniōris, older.

sententia, -ae, f., opinion.

sepeliō, -īre, sepelīvī, sepultum, bury.

sequor, -ī, secūtus sum, follow.

sermō, sermōnis, *m.,* discourse, conversation.

servō, -āre, observe.

servus, -ī, *m.,* slave.

sēsē, see **sē.**

seu ... seu, *conj.,* whether ... or, if .... or if.

sī, *conj.,* if.

sīc, *adv.,* so, thus.

sīcārius, -ī, *m.,* assassin.

siccus, -a, -um, dry.

signum, -ī, *n.,* sign, standard.

silva, -ae, *f.,* a wood.

similis, -e, like.

sine, *prep.* (with *abl.*), without.

sinō, -ere, sīvī, situm, allow ; *perf. part. pass.,* situated.

sitis, -is, *f.,* thirst.

sīve ... sīve, *conj.,* whether ... or, if ... or if.

socer, soceri, *m.,* father-in-law.

sōl, sōlis, *m.,* sun.

soleō, -ēre, solitus sum, be accustomed.

sollicitō, -āre, work upon, instigate.

sollicitūdō, sollicitūdinis, *f.,* anxiety.

solum, -ī, *n.,* soil.

sōlum, *adv.,* only.

sōlus, -a, -um, alone.

solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum, loosen, pay.

somnus, -ī, *m.,* sleep.

soror, sorōris, *f.,* sister.

speciēs, -ēī, *f.,* semblance, pretence.

spectō, -āre, to look at, behold, see.

speculor, -ārī, reconnoitre.

spēlunca, -ae, *f.,* cave.

spērō, -āre, hope.

spēs, -eī, *f.,* hope.

splendidus, -a, -um, splendid.

spoliō, -āre, pillage.

spondeō, -ēre, spopondī, sponsum, promise.

sponsus, -ī, *m.,* betrothed, lover.

statim, *adv.,* at once, immediately.

statiō, statiōnis, *f.,* post.

stō, stāre, stetī, statum, stand, remain firm, persist in (with *abl.*).

strepitus, -ūs, *m.,* uproar, din.

studeō, -ēre, studuī, —, devote oneself to (with *dat.*).

studium, -ī, *n.,* pursuit, study.

stultitia, -ae, *f.,* folly.

stultus, -a, -um, foolish.

stupeō, -ēre, stupuī, —, be aghast.

sub, *prep.* (with *abl.*), under, beneath ; (with *acc.*), to the foot of, beneath.

subdūcō, -ere, subduxī, subductum, haul up on shore, beach.

subeō, subīre, subiī, subitum, go up to, endure.

subsum, subesse, subfuī, be under.

subter, *adv.,* and *prep.* (with *acc.*), beneath.

sufferō, sufferre, sustulī, sublātum, endure.

sum, esse, fuī, be.

summa, -ae, *f.,* whole, chief responsibility.

summus, -a, -um, highest, greatest.

super, *adv.,* and *prep.* (with *acc.*), above.

superior, superiōris, higher, previous.

superō, -āre, overcome, excel.

superstes, superstitis, surviving.

supersum, superesse, superfuī, be left.

superus, -a, -um, upper.

suppeditō, -āre, supply, provide.

supplicium, -ī, *n.,* punishment.

suprā, *adv.,* and *prep.* (with *acc.*), above.

suprēmus, -a, -um, highest, last.

suspicor, -ārī, suspect.

sustineō, -ēre, sustinuī, susten-tum, sustain.

suus, -a, um, his, her, its, their (own).

taceō, -ēre, be silent.

taedet, -ēre, it disgusts.

tālis, -e, such, of such a kind.

tam, *adv.,* so.

tamen, *adv.,* nevertheless.

tantus, -a, -um, so great.

Tarentum, -ī, *n.,* Tarentum (a town, now Taranto).

taurus, -ī, *m.,* bull.

tellūs, tellūris, *f.,* earth.

tēlum, -ī, *n.,* javelin, weapon.

temerārius, -ā, -um, rash.

tempestās, tempestātis, *f.,* weather, storm.

templum, -ī, *n.,* temple.

tempus, temporis, *n.,* time.

teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentum, hold.

tener, tenera, tenerum, tender, delicate.

tentō, āre, try, tempt.

tenus, *prep.* (with *abl.* or *gen.*), as far as.

tergum, -ī, *n.,* back.

terra, -ae, *f.,* earth.

terreō, -ēre, terrify.

testis, -is, *c.,* witness.

testūdō, testūdinis, *f.,* tortoise (a defence made by interlocking shields).

timeō, -ēre, timuī, —, fear.

timidus, -a, -um, timid.

timor, timōris, *m.,* fear.

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, raise.

tot, *indecl.,* so many.

tōtus, -a, -um, whole.

trabs, trabis, *f.,* beam, timber.

tractō, -āre, handle.

trādō, -ere, trādidī, trāditum, hand over, betray.

trans, *prep.* (with *acc.*), across.

transeō, transīre, transiī, transitum, go across.

trēs, tria, three.

tristis, -e, sad.

trucīdō, -āre, butcher.

tū, thou, you.

tueor, -ērī, watch, defend.

tum, *adv.,* then.

tum dēmum. *adv.,* then at length.

turba, -ae, *f.,* crowd.

turpis, -e, base.

turris, -is, *f.,* tower.

tussis, -is, *f.,* cough.

tuus, -a, -um, thy, thine, your, yours.

ubi (ubī), *adv.,* where, when.

ullus, -a, -um, any.

ulterior, ulteriōris, farther, remoter.

ultimus, -a, -um, farthest, last, remotest.

ultrā, *adv.,* beyond ; *prep.* (with *acc.*), beyond.

umbra, -ae, *f.,* shade.

umquam, *adv.,* ever.

unde, *adv.,* whence.

undique, *adv.,* from all sides, on all sides.

ūniversus, -a, -um, universal.

ūnus, -a, -um, one.

urbānus, -a, -um, city, town (*adj.*).

urbs, urbis, *f.,* city.

ut, utī, *adv.* and *conj.,* (so) that, (in order) that, when, as soon as.

uter, utra, utrum, which (of two) ?

utercumque, utracumque, utrumcumque, whichever (of the two).

uterlibet, utralibet, utrumlibet, which (of the two) you please.

uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (of the two).

utervīs, utravīs, utrumvīs, whichever (of the two) you will.

ūtilior, ūtiliōris, more useful.

ūtilis, -e, useful.

utinam, *adv.,* O that ! would that !

ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum, use (with *abl.*).

utrimque, *adv.*, on both sides.

utrum, *adv.*, whether (in direct questions not translated).

uxor, uxōris, *f.*, wife.

vacō, -āre, have leisure (with *abl.*).

vagor, -ārī, wander.

valeō, -ēre, valuī, —, to be well *or* strong.

valētūdō, valētūdinis, *f.*, health.

validus, -a, -um, strong.

vallis, -is, *f.*, valley.

vallum, -ī, *n.*, rampart.

vastō, -āre, to lay waste.

vātēs, -is, *c.*, prophet.

-ve, *enclitic conj.*, or.

vectīgal, vectīgālis, *n.*, tax, tribute.

Vēiī, -ōrum, *m.pl.*, Veii (an Italian town).

vel, or; vel ... vel, either ... or.

vēnātor, vēnātōris, *m.*, hunter.

vendō, -ere, vendidī, venditum, sell.

venēnum, -ī, *n.*, poison, drug.

veneror, -ārī, worship.

venia, -ae, *f.*, pardon.

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum, come.

ventus, -ī, *m.*, wind.

vēr, vēris, *n.*, spring.

verbum, -ī, *n.*, word.

vereor, -ērī, fear.

Vergīnius, -ī, *m.*, Verginius (a Roman).

vērīsimilis, -e, probable.

versus, -ūs, *m.*, verse.

vertō, -ere, vertī, versum, turn (*trans.*).

vērus, -a, -um, true.

vescor, -ī, —, feed on (with *abl.*).

vester, vestra, vestrum, your, yours.

vestīgium, -ī, *n.*, footprint, track, trace.

vestiō, -īre, clothe.

vestis, -is, *f.*, garment.

veterānus, -a, -um, veteran.

vetō, -āre, vetuī, vetitum, forbid.

vetus, veteris, old.

via, -ae, *f.*, way, street.

vīcīnus, -a, -um, neighbouring.

victōria, -ae, *f.*, victory.

vīcus, -ī, village.

videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum, see; *pass.*, seem.

vigil, vigilis, vigilant, watchful.

vigilō, -āre, to watch.

vinciō, -īre, vinxī, vinctum, bind.

vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum, conquer.

vīnum, -ī, *n.*, wine.

violentia, -ae, *f.*, violence.

violō, -āre, violate.

vir, virī, *m.*, man.

vīrēs, see vīs.

virtūs, virtūtis, *f.*, virtue, valour.

vīs, *acc.* vim, no *gen.* or *dat.*, *abl.* vī, *f.*, force, violence; *pl.* vīrēs, vīrium, strength.

vīsus, -ūs, *m.*, sight.

vīta, -ae, *f.*, life.

vitium, -ī, *n.*, vice.

vītō, -āre, avoid.

vīvō, -ere, vīxī, victum, live.

vix, *adv.*, with difficulty, scarcely.

vocō, -āre, to call.

volō, velle, voluī, —, be willing, will.

vorō, -āre, devour.

vōs, ye, you (*pl.*).

vox, vōcis, *f.*, voice.

vulnerō, -āre, to wound.

vulnus, vulneris, *n.*, wound.

vulpēs, -is, *f.*, fox.

Zēnō, Zēnōnis, *m.*, Zeno (a philosopher).

II.—ENGLISH-LATIN.

ability, ingenium, -i, *n.*

able, be, possum, potui, —, posse.

abound, abundo, 1.

about (of numbers), circiter (with *acc.*).

above, super, supra (with *acc.*).

absent, be, absum, afui, abesse ; desum, defui, deesse.

abstain, abstineo, abstinui, abstentum, 2.

abuse, abutor, abusus sum, 3 (with *abl.*).

accompanied by, cum (with *abl.*).

accompany, comitor, 1.

account, on — of, causā, gratiā (with *gen.*), propter (with *acc.*).

accuse, accuso, 1 ; arguo, argui, argutum, 3.

accustomed, be, soleo, solitus sum, 2.

acorn, glans, glandis, *f.*

across, go, transeo, transii, transitum, transire.

—, trans (with *acc.*).

act of violence, iniuria, -ae, *f.*

active, alacer, alacris, alacre ; impiger, impigra, impigrum.

adapted, aptus, -a, -um.

administer, administro, 1.

admirably, egregie.

admit, confiteor, confessus sum, 2.

admonish, moneo, 2.

adorn, orno, 1.

advance, progredior, progressus sum, 3.

adverse, adversus, -a, -um.

adversity, res adversae.

affair, res, -ei, *f.*

affect, afficio, affeci, affectum, 3.

affirm, affirmo, 1.

after (*conj.*), postquam.

afterwards, postea.

again, iterum, rursus.

against, contra, in (with *acc.*).

age, aetas, aetatis, *f.*

aghast, be, stupeo, stupui, - , 2.

aid, auxilium, -i, *n.*

all, omnis, -e.

allegiance, fides, -ei, *f.*

allow, sino, sivi, situm, 3.

almost, paene.

alone, solus, -a, -um.

also, etiam, necnon, quoque.

altar, ara, -ae, *f.*

although, *conj.*, cum, etiamsi, etsi, licet, quamquam, quamvis.

altogether, omnino.

always, semper.

ambassador, legatus, -i, *m.*

amend, emendo, 1.

among, apud, inter (with *acc.*).

— themselves, inter se.

amplify, amplifico, 1.

ancestors, maiores, -um, *m.pl.*

anchor, ancora, -ae, *f.*

ancient, antiquus, -a, -um.

and, et, -que (enclitic).

anger, ira, -ae, *f.*

angry, be, irascor, iratus sum, 3.

animal, animal, animalis, *n.*

announce, nuntio, 1.

annoyances, molestiae, -arum, *f.pl.*

annoying, molestus, -a, -um.

another (of several), alius, -a, -ud ; **—'s,** alienus, -a, -um.

— time, at, alias.

anxiety, sollicitudo, sollicitudinis, *f.*

any (*adj.*), ullus, -a, -um ; qui, qua, quod.

— you please, quilibet, quaelibet quidlibet and (*adj.*) quodlibet.

— you will, quivis, quaevis, quidvis and (*adj.*) quodvis.

anyone, anything, quis, quid.

apathy, segnities, -ei, *f.*

appear, appareo, 2.

appearance, conspectus, -ūs, *m.*

appoint, constituo, constitui, constitutum, 3 ; creo, 1.

approach, accedo, accessi, accessum, 3 ; appropinquo, 1.
approve, approbo, 1 ; probo, 1.
ardent, acer, acris, acre.
Ariovistus, Ariovistus, -i, *m.*
arise, coorior, coortus sum, 4 ; orior, ortus sum, 4.
arms, arma, -orum, *n.pl.*
army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*
around, circa, circum (with *acc.*).
arrive, circa, circum (with *acc.*).
arrive, advenio, advēni, adventum, 4 ; pervenio, pervēni, perventum, 4.
arriving, be on the point of, advento, 1.
arrow, sagitta, -ae, *f.*
art, ars, artis, *f.*
as, like, ceu.
— **far as,** tenus (with *abl.* or *gen.*).
— **if,** quasi.
ascertain, comperio, comperi, compertum, 4.
ask, peto, petivi or petii, petitum, 3 ; rogo, 1.
assassin, sicarius, -i, *m.*
assemble, convenio, convēni, conventum, 4.
assembly, conventus, -ūs, *m.*
astray, go, erro, 1.
Athens, Athenae, -arum, *f.pl.*
attack (*verb*), adorior, adortus sum, 4 ; (*subst.*) impetus, -ūs, *m.*
attempt, conor, 1.
authority, auctoritas, auctoritatis, *f.*
avarice, avaritia, -ae, *f.*
avoid, vito, 1.
await, exspecto, 1.
back, tergum, -i, *n.*
—, **go,** redeo, redii, reditum, redire.
— **again,** rursus.
bad, malus, -a, -um.
badly, male.
baggage, impedimenta, -orum, *n.pl.*
baggage-animal, iumentum, -i, *n.*
baneful, funestus, -a, -um.

bank, ripa, -ae, *f.*
barbarous, barbarus, -a, -um.
base, turpis, -e.
battering-ram, aries, arietis, *m.*
battle, pugna, -ae, *f.* ; proelium, -i, *n.*
—, **line of,** acies, -ei, *f.*
— -**ship,** navis longa.
be, sum, fui, esse.
beach, subduco, subduxi, subductum, 3.
beam, trabs, trabis, *f.*
bear, fero, tuli, latum, ferre.
— **away,** aufero, abstuli, ablatum, auferre.
— **back,** refero, rettuli, relatum, referre.
— **down,** defero, detuli, delatum, deferre.
bearing arms, armiger, armigera, armigerum.
beautiful, pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum.
beauty, pulchritudo, pulchritudinis, *f.*
because, quia, quod.
— **of,** ob (with *acc.*).
become, fio, factus sum, fieri.
bed, cubile, -is, *n.*
beech, fagus, -i, *f.*
before (*prep.*), ante (with *acc.*); (*conj.*) antequam, priusquam.
before (*adv.*), **beforehand,** antea.
beg, oro, 1.
began, coepi, coeptum, coepisse.
beginning, initium, -i, *n.*
behind (*adv.*), pone; (*prep.*) pone, post (with *acc.*).
behold, conspicio, conspexi, conspectum, 3 ; specto, 1.
behoves, it, oportet, 2.
believe, credo, credidi, creditum, 3 (with *dat.*).
below (*adv.*), infra ; (*prep.*) infra (with *acc.*).
bend, flecto, flexi, flexum, 3.
beneath (*adv.*), subter ; (*prep.*) sub (with *acc.* or *abl.*), subter (with *acc.*).

beneficial, be, prosum, profui, prodesse.

—, salutaris, -e.

benevolent, benevolus, -a, -um.

beseech, oro, 1.

beseems, it, decet, 2.

besiege, obsideo, obsedi, obsessum, 2 ; oppugno, 1.

bestow praise on, collaudo, 1.

betray, trado, tradidi, traditum, 3.

betrayer, proditor, proditoris, *m.*

betrothed, sponsus, -i, *m.*

better, melior, melioris.

between, inter (with *acc.*).

bewail, ploro, 1.

beware, caveo, cāvi, cautum, 2.

beyond, *adv.,* ultra ; *prep.* (except), praeter (with *acc.*) ; (situated beyond) ultra (with *acc.*).

bid, iubeo, iussi, iussum, 2.

bind, vincio, vinxi, vinctum, 4.

bird, avis, -is, *f.*

bite, mordeo, momordi, morsum, 2.

bitterly resent, aegre fero.

black, niger, nigra, nigrum.

blame (*subst.*), culpa, -ae, *f.* ; (*verb*) culpo, 1.

blush, rubeo, rubui, —, 2.

boar, wild, aper, apri, *m.*

boast, glorior, 1.

boastful, gloriosus, -a, -um.

body, corpus, corporis, *n.*

bold, audax, audacis.

boldly, audacter.

boldness, audacia, -ae, *f.*

bone, os, ossis, *n.*

book, liber, libri, *m.*

booty, praeda, -ae, *f.*

bordering on, finitimus, -a, -um.

born, be, nascor, natus sum, 3.

both, ambo, -ae, -o ; **on—sides,** utrimque.

bow, arcus, -ūs, *m.*

boy, puer, pueri, *m.*

branch, ramus, -i, *m.*

brave, fortis, -e.

bravely, fortiter.

break down, dirimo, diremi, diremptum, 3.

—into, irrumpo, irrupi, irruptum, 3.

— out, erumpo, erupi, eruptum, 3.

bribery, ambitus, -ūs, *m.*

bridge, pons, pontis, *m.*

brief, brevis, -e.

briefly, breviter.

bring, adduco, adduxi, adductum, 3 ; affero, attuli, allatum, afferre.

—about, efficio, effeci, effectum, 3.

—back, reporto, 1.

—in, infero, intuli, illatum, inferre.

—forth, pario, peperi, partum, 3.

—together, confero, contuli, collatum, conferre.

Britain, Britannia, -ae, *f.*

broad, lātus, -a, -um.

bronze, aes, aeris, *n.*

brother, frater, fratris, *m.*

build, to, aedifico, 1.

building, aedificium, -i, *n.*

bull, taurus, -i, *m.*

burden, onus, oneris, *n.*

— -bearing, onerarius, -a, -um.

burdensome, molestus, -a, -um.

burn (*trans.*), comburo, combussi, combustum, 3 ; cremo, 1 ; incendo, incendi, incensum, 3.

bury, sepelio, sepelivi, sepultum, 4.

but, at, autem (to be placed after the first word), sed.

butcher, trucido, 1.

buy, emo, ēmi, emptum, 3.

by (of agent), a, ab (with *abl.*).

Caesar, Caesar, Caesaris, *m.*

calamity, calamitas, calamitatis, *f.*

call, voco, 1 ; appello, 1.

— back, revoco, 1.

— together, convoco, 1.

camp, castra, -orum, *n.pl.*

can, possum, potui, —, posse.

captive, captivus, -i, *m.*
care, take, curo, 1.
carpenter, faber, fabri, *m.*
carry, porto, 1.
— off, abripio, abripui, abreptum, 3.
— on, administro, 1.
Carthage, Carthago, Carthaginis, *f.*
Carthaginian, Poenus, -a, -um.
Catilina, Catilina, -ae, *m.*
Cato, Cato, Catonis, *m.*
cause, causa, -ae, *f.*
cavalry, equitatus, -ūs ; *pl. of* eques, equitis, *m.* ; *(adj.)* equester, equestris, equestre.
cave, spelunca, -ae, *f.*
celebrate, celebro, 1.
certain (sure), certus, -a, -um.
certain (person or thing), quidam, quaedam, quiddam and *(adj.)* quoddam.
chain, catena, -ae, *f.*
chance, casus, ūs, *m.*
character (written), littera, -ae, *f.* ; (personal) mores, morum, *m.pl.*
charge (military phrase), impetum facio.
chariot, currus, -ūs, *m.*
charioteer, auriga, -ae, *m.*
chastise, castigo, 1.
cheer *(verb),* confirmo, 1 ; *(subst.)* clamor, clamoris, *m.*
cheerful, alacer, alacris, alacre.
chief, princeps, principis, *c.*
children, liberi, -orum, *m.*
Cicero, Cicero, Ciceronis, *m.*
citadel, arx, arcis, *f.*
citizen, civis, -is, *c.*
city *(subst.),* urbs, urbis, *f.* ; *(adj.)* urbanus, -a, -um.
close *(adv.),* iuxta ; **close by** *(prep.),* iuxta (with *acc.*).
clothe, vestio, 4.
cloud, nubes, -is, *f.*
cold *(adj.),* frigidus, -a, -um ; *(subst.)* frigus, frigoris, *n.*
collect, cogo, coegi, coactum, 3.
Colline, Collinus, -a, -um.

come, venio, vēni, ventum, 4.
command *(verb),* impero, 1 (with *dat.*) ; *(subst.)* iussum, -i, *n.*
— of, be in, praesum, praefui, praeesse (with *dat.*).
commit (crime), admitto, admisi, admissum, 3.
comrade, commilito, commilitonis, *m.*
concerning, de (with *abl.*).
concerns, it, rēfert, rēferre, rettulit.
condemn, condemno, 1.
condition, condicio, condicionis, *f.*
confess, confiteor, confessus sum, 2.
confident, be, confido, confisus sum, 3.
conquer, vinco, vici, victum, 3.
consent, concedo, concessi, concessum, 3.
consider, habeo, 2 ; puto, 1.
conspire, coniuro, 1.
construct, exstruo, exstruxi, exstructum, 3 ; (a trench) perduco, perduxi, perductum, 3.
consul, consul, consulis, *m.*
consult the interests of, consulo, consului, consultum, 3 (with *dat.*).
consume, consumo, consumpsi, consumptum, 3.
contain, contineo, continui, contentum, 2.
contest, certamen, certaminis, *n.*
control, coerceo, 2.
conversation, sermo, sermonis, *m.*
Corinth, Corinthus, -i, *f.*
corn, frumentum, -i, *n.*
corpse, cadaver, cadaveris, *n.*
correct, emendo, 1.
corrupt, pravus, -a, -um.
cough, tussis, -is, *f.*
council, concilium, -i, *n.* ; conventus, -ūs, *m.* ; hold a — conventum ago.
counsel, consilium, -i, *n.*
count, numero, 1.

country (native land), patria, -ae, *f*. ; (opposed to town) rus, ruris, *n*. ; (*adj*.)rusticus,-a,-um.
course, cursus, -ūs, *m*. ; hold on one's —, cursum tenēre.
cowardice, ignavia, -ae, *f*.
cowardly, ignavus, -a, -um.
craft, fraus, fraudis, *f*.
Crassus, Crassus, -i, *m*.
create, creo, 1.
credible, credibilis, -e.
creditor, creditor, creditoris, *m*.
cremate, cremo, 1.
crime, scelus, sceleris, *n*. ; commit a —, scelus admitto, admisi, admissum, 3.
crowd, turba, -ae, *f*.
cruel, crudelis, -e.
cultivate, colo, colui, cultum, 3.
cup, poculum, -i, *n*.
curb, coerceo, 2.
curved, curvus, -a, -um.
cut off, intercludo, interclusi, interclusum, 3.
daily, cottidie.
dance, salto, 1.
danger, periculum, -i, *n*.
dangerous, perniciosus, -a, -um.
dare, audeo, ausus sum, 2.
dash, affligo, afflixi, afflictum, 3.
daughter, filia, -ae, *f*.
day, dies, -ei, *m*. or (in *sing*.) *f*.
dead body, cadaver, cadaveris, *n*.
dear, carus, -a, -um.
death, mors, mortis, *f*.
debt, aes alienum, aeris alieni, *n*.
declare, declaro, 1.
dedicate, dedico, 1.
deed, factum, -i, *n*.
deep, profundus, -a, -um.
deeply, graviter.
defend, tueor, 2.
delay, moror (*trans*. and *intrans*.), 1.
deliberate, delibero, 1.
delicate, tener, tenera, tenerum.
delight, delecto, 1.
delights, it, iuvat, iūvit, 1.

deny, nego, 1.
depart, discedo, discessi, discessum, 3.
deplore, deploro, 1.
depth, altitudo, altitudinis, *f*.
descend, descendo, descendi, descensum, 3.
desert, desero, deserui, desertum, 3.
deserve, mereo, 2.
design, consilium, -i, *n*.
desire (*subst*.), cupido, cupidinis, *f*. ; (*verb*) cupio, cupivi, cupitum, 3 ; desidero, 1.
desirous, cupidus, -a, -um.
despise, contemno, contempsi, contemptum, 3.
destroy, dirimo, diremi, diremptum, 3 ; deleo, delevi, deletum, 2.
devote oneself to, studeo, studui (with *dat*.).
devour, voro, 1.
die, morior, mortuus sum, 3 ; e vita excedo, excessi, excessum, 3 ; obeo, obii, obitum, obire.
difficult, difficilis, -e.
difficulty, with, vix.
dignity, dignitas, dignitatis, *f*.
diligence, diligentia, -ae, *f*.
din, strepitus, -ūs, *m*.
disadvantageous, iniquus, -a, -um.
disaster, clades, -is, *f*.
disband, dimitto, dimisi, dimissum, 3.
discharge (an office), fungor, functus sum, 3 (with *abl*.).
disciple, discipulus, -i, *m*.
discourse, sermo, sermonis, *m*.
disease, morbus, -i, *m*.
disgrace, dedecus, dedecoris, *n*.
disgusts, it, taedet, 2.
dishonourable, improbus, -a, -um.
dismay, perturbo, 1.
displease, displiceo, 2 (with *dat*.).
disposition, ingenium, -i, *n*.
distant, be, disto, —, —, 1.
distinguished, magnificus, -a, -um.

distress, excrucio, 1.
distribute, distribuo, distribui, distributum, 3.
divide, divido, divisi, divisum, 3 ; partior, 4.
do, facio, feci, factum, 3.
doctor, medicus, -i, *m*.
dog, canis, -is, *c*.
doubt, dubito, 1.
doubtful, dubius, -a, -um.
dove, columba, -ae, *f*.
down from, de (with *abl*.).
draw, educo, eduxi, eductum, 3.
— up, instruo, instruxi, instructum, 3.
drink, bibo, bibi, —, 3.
drive, ago, egi, actum, 3 ; pello, pepuli, pulsum, 3.
— forward, incito, 1.
— out, expello, expuli, expulsum, 3.
drug, venenum, -i, *n*.
dry, siccus, -a, -um.
dutiful, pius, -a, -um.
duty, officium, -i, *n*.
dwell, incolo, incolui, incultum, 3.
each, quisque, quaeque, quidque and (*adj.*) quodque.
— (of the two), uterque, utraque, utrumque.
eagle, aquila, -ae, *f*.
earlier (*adv.*), maturius.
earth, tellus, telluris, *f*. ; terra, -ae, *f*.
earthwork, agger, aggeris, *m*.
ease, otium, -i, *n*.
easy, facilis, -e.
egg, ovum, -i, *n*.
either ... or, aut ... aut, vel ... vel.
eldest, natu maximus, -a, -um.
election, comitia, -orum, *n. pl.* ; **hold an —**, comitia habeo, 2.
eloquence, eloquentia, -ae, *f*.
eloquent, disertus, -a, -um ; eloquens, eloquentis.
elsewhere, alibi.
embassy, legatio, legationis, *f*.

embrace (*verb*), amplector, amplexus sum, 3 ; (*subst.*) complexus, -ūs, *m*.
empire, imperium, -i, *n*.
end (*verb*), finio, 4 ; (*subst.*) finis, -is, *m*.
endure, subeo, subii, subitum, subire ; suffero, sustuli, sublatum, sufferre.
enemy (public), hostis, -is, *c*. ; (private) inimicus, -i, *m*.
energetic, alacer, alacris, alacre.
enjoy, fruor, fructus sum, 3 (with *abl*.).
enmity, inimicitia, -ae, *f*.
enough, satis.
enrol, conscribo, conscripsi, conscriptum, 3.
enter, intro, 1.
entrust, permitto, permisi, permissum, 3.
envious, be, see **envy**.
envy, invideo, invīdi, invisum, 2 (with *dat*.).
equestrian, equester, equestris, equestre.
escape, effugio, effūgi, —, 3 ; elabor, elapsus sum, 3.
especially, praesertim.
esteem, diligo, dilexi, dilectum, 3 ; facio, feci, factum, 3 (with *gen.*).
even if, etiamsi, etsi.
ever, umquam.
every, omnis, -e.
everybody, see **everyone**.
everyone, omnes, -ium.
example, exemplum, -i, *n*.
excel, supero, 1.
excellent, praestans, praestantis.
excellently, optime.
excite, incito, 1.
exercise, exerceo, 2.
exhaust, exhaurio, exhausi, exhaustum, 4.
exhort, cohortor, 1 ; hortor, 1.
exile, exul, exulis, *m*.
experienced, peritus, -a, -um.
exploits, res gestae, rerum gestarum, *f*.

extend, amplifico, 1.

extinguish, exstinguo, extinxi, exstinctum, 3.

extraordinary, eximius, -a, -um.

eye, oculus, -i, *m.*

face, facies, -ei, *f.*

— **to face,** coram (with *abl.*).

fail, deficio, defeci, defectum, 3.

faith, fides, -ei, *f.*

faithful, fidelis, -e.

fall, cado, cecidi, casum, 3 ; concido, concidi, —, 3.

— **away,** deficio, defeci, defectum, 3.

— **in with,** occurro, occurri, occursum, 3 (with *dat.*).

false, falsus, -a, -um.

fame, fama, -ae, *f.*

famous, clarus, -a, -um.

far, longe, procul ; **too—**, longius ; **—from,** procul (with *abl.*).

farther (*adv.*) longius ; (*adj.*) ulterior, ulterioris.

farthest, ultimus, -a, -um.

fasten, deligo, 1.

fat, pinguis, -e.

fatal, mortifer, mortifera, mortiferum.

father, pater, patris, *m.*

father-in-law, socer, soceri, *m.*

fatigue, defatigo, 1.

favour, gratia, -ae, *f.*

favourable, be, faveo, fāvi, fautum, 2.

fear (*verb*), timeo, timui, —, 2 ; vereor, 2 ; (*subst.*) timor, timoris, *m.*

feed on, vescor, — (with *abl.*)

feign, fingo, finxi, fictum, 3.

few, pauci, -ae, -a.

field, ager, agri, *m.*

fierce, acer, acris, acre.

fiercely, ferociter.

fight, pugno, 1 ; — **a pitched battle,** dimico, 1.

find, invenio, invēni, inventum, 4 ; reperio, repperi, repertum, 4.

finish, conficio, confeci, confectum, 3 ; finio, 4.

fire, ignis, -is, *m.* ; incendium, -i, *n.*

first, primus, -a, -um.

fit, aptus, -a, -um.

flame, flamma, -ae, *f.*

flash of lightning, fulgur, fulguris, *n.*

flattery, adulatio, adulationis, *f.*

flee, fugio, fūgi, fugitum, 3.

fleet, classis, -is, *f.*

flesh, caro, carnis, *f.*

flight, fuga, -ae, *f.* ; **put to —** fugo, 1 ; **take to —,** pedem refero, rettuli, relatum, referre.

flock, grex, gregis, *m.*

flourish, floreo, florui, —, 2.

flourishing, opulentus, -a, -um.

flow down, defluo, defluxi, defluxum, 3.

flower, flos, floris, *m.*

foe, hostis, -is, *c.*

follow, sequor, secutus sum, 3 ; — **up,** persequor, persecutus sum, 3 ; insequor, insecutus, sum, 3.

following, posterus, -a, -um.

folly, stultitia, -ae, *f.*

food, cibus, -i, *m.*

foolish, stultus, -a, -um.

foot, pes, pedis, *m.* ; **to the — of,** sub (with *acc.*).

footprint, vestigium, -i, *n.*

foot-soldier, pedes, peditis, *m.*

forage, pabulor, 1.

forbid, veto, vetui, vetitum, 1 ; prohibeo, 2.

force, vis, *acc.* vim, no *gen.* or *dat.*, *abl.* vi, *f.*

forces, copiae, -arum, *f.*

foreseeing, providens, providentis ; providus, -a, -um.

forget, obliviscor, oblitus sum, 3 (with *gen.* or *acc.*).

former, prior, prioris ; pristinus, -a, -um.

formerly, quondam.

fortify, munio, 4.

fortunate, felix, felicis ; **more—,** felicior, felicioris.

fortune, fortuna, -ae, *f.*

fountain, fons, fontis, *m.*
fox, vulpes, -is, *f.*
fraud, fraus, fraudis, *f.*
free (*adj.*), liber, libera, liberum ;
　(*verb*) libero, 1.
friend, amicus, -i, *m.*
friendly, amicus, -a, -um.
friendship, amicitia, -ae, *f.*
frighten, perturbo, 1.
frog, rana, -ae, *f.*
from, a, ab (with *abl.*) ; e, ex
　(with *abl.*).
fruit, fructus, -ūs, *m.*
— -bearing, frugifer, frugifera,
　frugiferum.
full, plenus, -a, -um.
fully, copiose.
furnish, praebeo, 2.
further, longius.
Gabii, Gabii, -orum, *m.pl.*
Gades, Gades, -ium, *f. pl.*
gain, pario, peperi, partum, 3.
Gallic, Gallicus, -a, -um.
game, lusus, -ūs, *m.*
garden, hortus, -i, *m.*
garland, corona, -ae, *f.*
garment, vestis, -is, *f.*
garrison, praesidium, -i, *n.*
gate, porta, -ae, *f.* ; foris, -is,
　f.
Gaul, a, Gallus, -i, *m.*
Gaul, Gallia, -ae, *f.*
general, dux, ducis, *m.*
generation, aetas, aetatis, *f.*
genius, ingenium, -i, *n.*
German, Germanus, -a, -um.
get, nanciscor, nactus sum, 3.
gift, donum, -i, *n.*
girl, puella, -ae, *f.*
give, do, dedi, datum, dare.
— (as a present), dono, 1.
— orders, impero, 1 (with *dat.*).
go, eo, ivi *or* ii, itum, ire.
— across, transeo, transii, tran-
　situm, transire.
— back, redeo, redii, reditum,
　redire.
—forth, prodeo, prodii, prodi-
　tum, prodire.

go past, praetereo, praeterii,
　praeteritum, praeterire.
— up to, subeo, subii, subitum,
　subire.
goblet, poculum, -i, *n.*
god, a, deus, -i, *m.*
goddess, dea, -ae, *f.*
gold, aurum, -i, *n.*
good (*adj.*), bonus, -a, -um ;
　(*subst.*) bonum, -i, *n.* ; **goods,**
　bona, -orum, *n.*
—-, do, prosum, profui, prodesse.
goodwill, benevolentia, -ae, *f.*
goose, anser, anseris, *m.*
govern, rego, rexi, rectum, 3.
gradually, paulatim.
grandfather, avus, -i, *m.*
great, magnus, -a, -um ; (**as—**)
　as, quantus, -a, -um ; **very—**,
　permagnus, -a, -um ; **how—** ?
　quantus, -a, -um ; **so—**, tan-
　tus, -a, -um.
greater, maior, maioris.
greatest, maximus, -a, -um ;
　(with an abstract substantive)
　summus, -a, -um.
greatly, magnopere.
Greece, Graecia, -ae, *f.*
greedy, avidus, -a, -um ; cupi-
　dus, -a, -um ; rapax, rapacis.
Greek, Graecus, -a, -um.
grey, glaucus, -a, -um.
grief, dolor, doloris, *m.*
grieve, doleo, 2.
guard (*subst.*), custos, custodis,
　m. ; (*verb*) custodio, 4.
guile, fraus, fraudis, *f.*
hails, it, grandinat, 1.
halt, consisto, constiti, constit-
　um, 3.
hand, manus, -ūs, *f.*
— over, trado, tradidi, tradi-
　tum, 3.
handle, tracto, 1.
Hannibal, Hannibal, Hannibalis,
　m.
happen, evenio, evēni, eventum, 4.
happens, it, accidit, accidit, 3 ;
　contingit, contigit, 3.

happier, felicior, felicioris.
happy, felix, felicis.
harbour, portus, -ūs, *m.*
harm, be harmful, obsum, obfui, obesse.
—, to do, noceo, 2 (with *dat.*).
harsh, asper, aspera, asperum.
harvest, messis, -is, *f.*
hasten, contendo, contendi, contentum, 3 ; festino, 1.
hate, odi, odisse.
haul up on shore, subduco, subduxi, subductum, 3.
have, habeo, 2.
— leisure, vaco, 1.
he, she, it, is, ea, id.
head, caput, capitis, *n.*
headlong, praeceps, praecipitis.
health, valetudo, valetudinis, *f.*
hear, audio, 4.
heart, cor, cordis, *n.*
heat, ardor, ardoris, *m.*
heaven, caelum, -i, *n.*
heavily, graviter.
heavy, gravis, -e.
height, altitudo, altitudinis, *f.*
heir, heres, heredis, *c.*
help, auxilium, -i, *n.*
helpless, inops, inopis.
here, hic.
hesitate, dubito, 1.
hide, abdo, abdidi, abditum, 3 ; lateo, latui, --, 2.
high, altus, -a, -um.
higher, superior, superioris.
highest, summus, -a, -um ; supremus, -a, -um.
hill, collis, -is, *m.*
himself (*reflexive*), se *or* sese.
hinder, prohibeo, 2.
his (the possessor being the subject), suus, -a, -um ; otherwise eius.
hither (*adj.*), citerior, citerioris : (*adv.*) huc.
hold, teneo, tenui, tentum, 2.
home, at, domi ; **home** (*i.e.* homewards), domum.
honour, honoro, 1.

hope (*verb*), spero, 1 ; (subst.) spes, -ei, *f.*
Horace, Horatius, -i, *m.*
horn, cornu, -ūs, *n.*
horse, equus, -i, *m.*
— -soldier, eques, equitis, *m.*
hostage, obses, obsidis, *c.*
hostile, inimicus, -a, -um.
hostility, inimicitia, -ae, *f.*
hour, hora, -ae, *f.*
house, domus, -ūs, *f.* (*abl. sing.* domo).
household, familia, -ae, *f.*
how ? quomodo.
— great ? quantus, -a, -um.
— many ? quot, *indecl.*
however (to be placed after the first word), autem.
human, humanus, -a, -um.
hunter, venator, venatoris, *m.*
hurl, iacto, 1.
hurtful, noxius, -a, -um.
husband, maritus, -i, *m.*
husbandman, agricola, -ae, *m.*
I, ego.
if, si.
ignorance concerning, keep in, celo, 1.
ill, aeger, aegra, aegrum.
—, to be, aegroto, 1.
illustrious, clarus, -a, -um.
immediately, statim.
immense, ingens, ingentis.
immortal, immortalis, -e.
importance to, it is of, interest, interfuit, interesse.
impulse, impulsus, -ūs, *m.*
impunity, with, impune.
in, in (with *abl.*)
—, be, insum, infui, inesse.
— the midst, be, intersum, interfui, interesse.
increase (*trans.*), augeo, auxi, auctum, 2.
indignation, dolor, doloris, *m.*
indolent, ignavus, -a, -um.
indulge, be indulgent, indulgeo, indulsi, indultum, 2 (with *dat.*).
infamy, dedecus, dedecoris, *n.*

infantry, *pl.* of pedes, peditis, *m.*
influence, auctoritas, auctori-
tatis, *f.*
information, get, certior fio.
inhabit, habito, 1.
inhabitant, incola, -ae, *c.*
initiative, impulsus, -ūs, *m.*
injure, noceo, 2 (with *dat.*).
injury, iniuria, -ae, *f.*
inmost, intimus, -a, -um.
inner, interior, interioris.
innocent, insons, insontis.
instigate, sollicito, 1.
interrogate, interrogo, 1.
into, in (with *acc.*).
invade, invado, invasi, invasum, 3.
iron, ferrum, -i, *n.*
island, insula, -a, *f.*
Italy, Italia, -ae, *f.*
javelin, telum, -i, *n.*
join, iungo, iunxi, iunctum, 3.
journey, iter, itineris, *n.*
joy, gaudium, -i, *n.*
judge, iudex, iudicis, *m.*
keen, acer, acris, acre.
keep, custodio, 4 ;—**in a place,**
contineo, continui, contentum,
2.
key, clavis, -is, *f.*
kill, exanimo, 1 ; interficio, inter-
feci, interfectum, 3 ; neco, 1.
kind, of such a, talis, -e.
—, of what? qualis, -e.
king, rex, regis, *m.*
kingdom, regnum, -i, *n.*
knee, genu, -ūs, *n.*
know, scio, 4 ; **not—,** ignoro, 1 ;
nescio, 4.
—, get to, cognosco, cognovi,
cognitum, 3.
knowledge of, without the, clam
(with *acc.*).
known, notus, -a, -um.
Labienus, Labienus, -i, *m.*
labour, labor, laboris, *m.*; laboro, 1.
lacking in, be, deficio, defeci,
defectum, 3 (with *abl.*).
lair, cubile, -is, *n.*
lamb, agnus, -i, *m.*

lament, deploro, 1.
land, expono, exposui, exposi-
tum, 3 (*trans.*).
language, lingua, -ae, *f.*
large, magnus, -a, -um.
last, extremus, -a, -um ; post-
remus, -a, -um ; ultimus, -a,
-um.
later, posterior, posterioris.
latest-born, postumus, -a, -um.
Latin, Latinus, -a, -um.
launch, deduco, deduxi, deduct-
um, 3.
law, lex, legis, *f.*
lead, duco, duxi, ductum, 3.
— back, reduco, reduxi, reduct-
um, 3.
— out, educo, eduxi, eductum, 3.
leader, dux, ducis, *m.*
leaf, folium, -i, *n.*
learn by heart, edisco, edidici,—, 3.
learned, doctus, -a, -um.
learning, eruditio, eruditionis, *f.*
least, minimus, -a, -um.
leave, relinquo, reliqui, relic-
tum, 3.
left, be, supersum, superfui, su-
peresse.
—, on the left hand, laevus, -a,
-um ; **the left hand,** laeva, -ae,
f. (sc. manus).
leg, crus, cruris, *n.*
legion, legio, legionis, *f.*
leisure, have, vaco, 1.
length, at, demum, tum demum.
less, minor, minoris.
lest, ne.
letter (character), littera, -ae, *f.* ;
(epistle) epistola, -ae, *f.* ;
litterae, -arum, *f. pl.*
levy, delectus, -ūs, *m.*
liberal, liberalis, -e.
liberty, libertas, libertatis, *f.*
lie, lie dead, iaceo, 2.
lieutenant, legatus, -i, *m.*
life, vita, -ae, *f.*
light-armed, expeditus, -a, -um.
lightning, flash of, fulgur, ful-
guris, *n.*

like, similis, -e.
— as, ceu.
lily, lilium, -i, *n*.
line of battle, acies, -ei, *f*.
linger, commoror, 1.
lion, leo, leonis, *m*.
literature, litterae, -arum, *f.pl*.
little, parvus, -a, -um.
— while, for a, parumper.
live, vivo, vixi, victum, 3.
load, onero, 1.
lofty, arduus, -a, -um.
long (*adj*.), longus, -a, -um ;
  (*adv*.) diu.
— as, as, dum.
— for, desidero, 1.
look at, specto, 1.
— down on, despicio, despexi,
  despectum, 3.
loosen, solvo, solvi, solutum, 3.
loquacious, loquax, loquacis.
lord, dominus, -i, *m*.
love (*verb*), amo, 1 ; (*subst*.) amor
  amoris, *m*.
lover, sponsus, -i, *m*.
low, humilis, -e.
lower, inferior, inferioris.
lowest, imus, -a, -um.
loyalty, fides, -ei, *f*.
made, be, fio, factus sum, fieri.
magnificent, magnificus, -a, -um.
make, facio, feci, factum, 3.
— war upon, bellum infero,
  intuli, illatum, inferre.
male, mas, maris, *m*.
man, vir, viri, *m*. ; (person)
  homo, hominis, *c*. ; to a man,
  ad unum.
manage, administro, 1.
manner, modus, -i, *m*. ; mos,
  moris, *m*.
man-of-war, navis longa.
many, multi, -ae, -a.
—, how ? quot, *indecl*.
march, iter, itineris, *n*.
Marcus, Marcus, -i, *m*. ·
market-place, forum, -i, *n*.
Mars, Mars, Martis, *m*.
Marseilles, Massilia, -ae, *f*.

marsh, palus, -udis, *f*.
master, dominus, -i, *m*. ; magis-
  ter, magistri, *m*.
meanwhile, interea, interim.
measure out, metior, mensus
  sum, 4.
meditate, cogito, 1.
mendacious, mendax, mendacis.
merchant, mercator, mercatoris,
  m.
— -vessel, navis oneraria.
merit, mereo, 2.
messenger, nuntius, -i, *m*.
middle, medius, -a, -um.
midst, be in the, intersum, inter-
  fui, interesse.
milk, lac, lactis, *n*.
mind, animus, -i, *m*.
mindful, memor, memoris.
mine, meus, -a, -um.
misbeseems, it, dedecet, 2.
mistaken, be, erro, 1.
mitigate, mollio, 4.
money, aes, aeris, *n*. ; argentum,
  -i, *n*.
—, sum of money, pecunia, -ae, *f*.
moon, luna, -ae, *f*.
morals, mores, morum, *m*.
more, plus, pluris (*subst*.) ; *pl*.
  plures, plura (*adj*. and *subst*.);
  adv., plus.
mortal, mortifer, mortifera, mor-
  tiferum.
mother, mater, matris, *f*.
mountain, mons, montis, *m*.
move (*trans*.), moveo, mōvi,
  motum, 2 ; admoveo, admōvi,
  admotum, 2 ; commoveo, com-
  mōvi, commotum, 2 ; (*in-
  trans*.), moveor.
much, multus, -a, -um.
multitude, multitudo, multi-
  tudinis, *f*.
my, meus, -a, -um.
name, nomen, nominis, *n*.
narrate, narro, 1.
narrowness, angustiae, -arum,
  f.pl.
native land, patria, -ae, *f*.

near (*adj.*), finitimus, -a, -um ;
(*adv.*) prope ; (*prep.*) prope,
propter (with *acc.*).
nearer, citerior, citerioris ; pro-
pior, propioris.
nearest, proximus, -a, -um.
need, there is, opus est (with *abl.*
of the thing needed) ; **be in —
of,** egeo, egui,—2 (with abl. or
gen.).
needle, acus, -ūs, *f.*
needy, egenus, -a, -um ; he —,
egeo, egui, — 2.
neglectful, be, desum, defui,
deesse.
neighbouring, vicinus, -a, -um.
neither, neuter, neutra, neut-
rum ; **neither ... nor,** nec ...
nec, neque ... neque.
Neptune, Neptunus, -i, *m.*
nest, nidus, -i, *m.*
net, rete, -is, *n.*
never, numquam.
nevertheless, tamen.
new, novus, -a, -um.
next, proximus, -a, -um.
night, nox, noctis *f.*
— by, noctu.
nightly, nocturnus, -a, -um.
no, none, nullus, -a, -um.
no one, nemo, *acc.* neminem, *dat.*
nemimi (*gen.* and *abl.* supplied
by nullus).
nobly-born, nobilis, -e.
nor, nec, neque.
nose, nasus, -i, *m.*
not, non, ne ; (*interrog.*) nonne.
—, and, nec.
— even, ne ... quidem.
— yet, nondum.
nothing, nihil, *indecl.*, *n.*
now, nunc, (by this time) iam.
number, numerus, -i, *m.*
O that ! utinam.
oak, quercus, -ūs, *f.*
obey, obtempero, 1 (with *dat.*) ;
pareo, 2 (with *dat.*).
observe, conspicio, conspexi, con-
spectum, 3 ; servo, 1.

obtain, adipiscor, adeptus sum, 3.
offer, offero, obtuli, oblatum,
offerre.
often, saepe ; **more —,** saepius ;
very —, saepissime.
old, vetus, veteris.
— age, senectus, senectutis, *f.*
— man, senex, senis, *m.*
older, senior, senioris.
once, semel.
—, at, statim.
one, unus, -a, -um.
— from another, inter se.
—, the (of two), alter, altera,
alterum ; (of several) alius, -a,
-ud.
only, solum.
open (*trans.*), aperio, aperui,
apertum, 4.
openly, palam.
opinion, sententia, -ae, *f.*
opportunity, facultas, facultatis,
f. ; occasio, occasionis, *f.*
opposite (*prep.*), adversum, ad-
versus, contra (with *acc.*).
opulent, opulentus, -a, -um.
or, aut, vel, -ve (enclitic) ; (in
double questions) an ; **either
... or,** aut ... aut, vel ... vel.
oration, oratio, orationis, *f.*
orator, orator, oratoris, *m.*
order, iussum, -i, *n.*
orders, to give, impero, 1.
other, the (of two), alter, altera,
alterum.
otherwise, aliter.
ought, debeo, 2.
our, ours, noster, nostra, nostrum.
out of, e, ex (with *abl.*).
outer, exterior, exterioris.
outside, exterus, -a, -um.
— of, extra (with *acc.*).
overcome, supero, 1.
overhang, immineo, —, —, 2.
overwhelm, opprimo, oppressi,
oppressum, 3.
owe, debeo, 2.
pace, passus, -ūs, *m.*
pain, dolor, doloris, *m.*

pains, it, piget, 2.
pale, be, palleo, pallui, —, 2.
panic, pavor, pavoris, *m.* ; strike with —, perterreo, 2.
pardon, venia, -ae, *f.*
parent, parens, parentis, *c.*
Paris, Lutetia, -ae, *f.*
parley, colloquor, collocutus sum, 3.
part, pars, partis, *f.*
past, praeteritus, -a, -um.
—, go, praetereo, praeterii, praeteritum, praeterire.
pay, solvo, solvi, solutum, 3.
peace, pax, pacis, *f.*
people, populus, -i, *m.*
perfidious, perfidus, -a, -um.
perish, pereo, perii, peritum, perire.
permitted, it is, licet, 2.
pernicious, perniciosus, -a, -um.
persist in, sto, steti, statum, 1 (with *abl.*).
person, homo, hominis, *c.*
persuade, persuadeo, persuasi, persuasum, 2.
physician, medicus, -i, *m.*
pillage, diripio, diripui, direptum, 3 ; spolio, 1.
pilot, gubernator, gubernatoris, *m.*
pirate, praedo, praedonis, *m.*
pitch, pono, posui, positum, 3.
pity, it moves to, miseret, 2.
place (*subst.*), locus, -i, *m.* ; (*verb*) colloco, 1 ; pono, posui, positum, 3.
plain, planities, -ei, *f.*
plan, consilium, -i, *n.*
play, ludo, lusi, lusum, 3.
pleasant, amoenus, -a, -um.
please, placeo, 2 (with *dat.*).
—, any you, quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet and (*adj.*) quodlibet.
pleases, it, delectat, 1 ; libet, 2.
pleasing, gratus, -a, -um.
plentifully, copiose.
plough, aro, 1.
poem, carmen, carminis, *n.*

poet, poeta, -ae, *m.*
point of arriving, be on the, advento, 1.
— out, indico, 1.
poison, venenum, -i, *n.*
polish(in manners, etc.), erudio, 4.
Pompeius, Pompeius, -i, *m.*
poor, pauper, pauperis.
position, take up a, consisto, constiti, constitum, 3.
possession of, get, potior, 4 (with *abl.*).
post, statio, stationis, *f.*
power of, in the, penes (with *acc.*)
powerful, potens, potentis.
praise (*verb*), laudo, 1 ; (*subst.*) laus, laudis, *f.*
prefer, malo, malui, —, malle.
preferable, satius.
prepare, paro, 1 ; comparo, 1.
presence of, in the, apud (with *acc.*) ; coram (with *abl.*) ; palam (with *abl.*).
present, be, adsum, adfui, adesse.
preserve, conservo, 1.
pretence, species, -ei, *f.*
prevent, obsto, obstiti, obstatum, 1.
previous, superior, superioris.
priest, sacerdos, sacerdotis, *c.*
prison, carcer, carceris, *m.*
probable, verisimilis, -e.
proclaim, pronuntio, 1.
promise, polliceor, 2 ; spondeo, spopondi, sponsum, 2.
property, bona, -orum, *n.pl.*
prophet, vates, -is, *c.*
prosperity, res prosperae.
prosperous, prosperus, -a, -um.
protract, produco, produxi, productum, 3.
provide, suppedito, 1.
province, provincia, -ae, *f.*
prow, prora, -ae, *f.*
prudent, prudens, prudentis.
punish, punio, 4.
punishment, supplicium, -i, *n.*
pupil, discipulus, -i, *m.*
purpose, consilium, -i, *n.* ; on — consulto.

pursue, insequor, insecutus sum, 3; persequor, persecutus sum, 3.
pursuit, studium, -i, *n.*
put, colloco, 1.
— out, expono, exposui, expositum, 3.
queen, regina, -ae, *f.*
question, interrogo, 1.
quit, egredior, egressus sum, 3.
rains, it, pluit, pluit, 3.
raise, exstruo, exstruxi, exstructum, 3; tollo, sustuli, sublatum, 3.
rampart, vallum, -i, *n.*
rapacious, rapax, rapacis.
rash, temerarius, -a, -um.
rather, magis.
read, lego, lēgi, lectum, 3.
— aloud, recito, 1.
reason, ratio, rationis, *f.* ; **by —
of** (after a *negative*), prae (with *abl.*).
recall, revoco, 1.
receive, accipio, accepi, acceptum, 3 ; recipio, recepi, receptum, 3.
recently, nuper ; **very—,** nuperrime.
recite, recito, 1.
recognise, cognosco, cognovi, cognitum, 3.
reconnoitre, speculor, 1.
recover, recipero, 1.
red, ruber, rubra, rubrum.
refine, emollio, 4.
refresh, recreo, 1.
region, regio, regionis, *f.*
reign, regno, 1.
reinforcements, auxilia, -orum, *n.*
reject, repudio, 1.
rejoice, gaudeo, gavisus sum, 2.
relate, narro, 1.
relinquish, relinquo, reliqui, relictum, 3.
remain, maneo, mansi, mansum, 2.
— firm, sto, steti, statum, 1.
remaining, reliquus, -a, -um.
remarkable, eximius, -a, -um.
remedy, remedium, -i, *n.*

remember, memini, meminisse.
remoter, ulterior, ulterioris.
remotest, ultimus, -a, -um.
renew, redintegro, 1.
renewal, integratio, integrationis, *f.*
renowned, clarus, -a, -um.
repair, reficio, refeci, refectum, 3.
repents, it, paenitet, 2.
reply, respondeo, respondi, responsum, 2.
report, fama, -ae, *f.*
reproach, probrum, -i, *n.*
republic, res publica, rei publicae, *f.*
resent bitterly, aegre fero, tuli, latum, ferre.
reserve, reservo, 1.
responsibility, chief, summa, -ae, *f.*
rest, otium, -i, *n.*
restrain, cohibeo, 2.
retain, retineo, retinui, retentum, 2.
retire, excedo, excessi, excessum, 3.
return (*intrans.*), regredior, regressus sum, 3 ; revertor, reverti, reversum, 3 ; (*subst.*) reditus, -ūs, *m.*
revolt, motus, -ūs, *m.*
reward, praemium, -i, *n.*
Rhine, Rhenus, -i, *m.*
Rhone, Rhodanus, -i, *m.*
rich, dives, divitis.
richer, ditior, ditioris.
riches, divitiae, -arum, *f. pl.*
richest, ditissimus, -a, -um.
right, on the right hand, dexter, dextra, dextrum ; **the right hand,** dextra, -ae, *f.* (sc. manus).
river, flumen, fluminis, *n.* ; fluvius, -i, *m.*
robber, praedo, praedonis, *m.*
rock, saxum, -i, *n.*
Roman, a, Romanus, -i, *m.*
Romulus, Romulus, -i, *m.*
rose, rosa, -ae, *f.*
rough, asper, aspera, asperum.

rule (*subst.*), imperium, -i, *n.*; (*verb*) rego, rexi, rectum, 3.
rumour, fama, -ae, *f.*
run, curro, cucurri, cursum, 3.
— **in different directions**, discurro, discurri or discucurri, discursum, 3.
— **to and fro**, curso, 1.
rush, ruo, rui, rutum, 3.
sacred, sacer, sacra, sacrum.
sacrifice, immolo, 1.
sad, tristis, -e.
safe and sound, incolumis, -e.
safety, salus, salutis, *f.*
sagacious, sagax, sagacis.
sail, set, naves solvo, solvi, solutum, 3.
sailor, nauta, -ae, *m.*
sake of, for the, causā (with *gen.*); gratiā (with *gen.*).
sally forth, erumpo, erupi, eruptum, 3.
salutary, salutaris, -e.
same place, to the, eodem.
—, **the**, ĭdem, eadem, idem.
satisfy, satisfacio, satisfeci, satisfactum, 3 (with *dat.*).
say, aio, *defect.*; inquam, inquii, *defect.*; dico, dixi, dictum, 3.
— **frequently**, dicito, 1.
— . . . **not**, nego, 1.
scanty, exiguus, -a, -um.
scarcely, vix.
scarcity, inopia, -ae, *f.*
sea, mare, -is, *n.*
seat, sedile, -is, *n.*
second time, a, iterum.
—, **the** (of two), alter, altera, alterum.
secretly, clam.
see, specto, 1; video, vĭdi, visum, 2.
seek, peto, petivi or petii, petitum, 3.
seem, videor, visus sum, 2.
seize, invado, invasi, invasum, 3; abripio, abripui, abreptum, 3.
self, ipse, -a, -um.
sell, vendo, vendidi, venditum, 3

semblance, species, -ei, *f.*
senate, senatus, -ūs, *m.*
send, mitto, misi, missum, 3.
separate, differo, distuli, dilatum differre.
servant, minister, ministri, *m.*
set, praebeo, 2.
— **foot in**, ingredior, ingressus sum, 3.
— **in the way**, obicio, obieci, obiectum, 3.
— **out**, proficiscor, profectus sum, 3.
— **over**, praeficio, praefeci, praefectum, 3 (with *dat.*).
settle, consisto, constiti, constitum, 3.
severe, gravis, -e.
shade, umbra, -ae, *f.*
shake, quatio,—, quassum, 3.
shames, it, pudet, 2.
sharp, acutus, -a, -um.
shatter, quasso, 1.
shepherd, pastor, pastoris, *m.*
shield, scutum, -i, *n.*
ship, navis, -is, *f.*
— **of war**, navis longa.
shore, litus, litoris, *n.*; ora, -ae, *f.*
short, brevis, -e.
shout (*subst.*), clamor, clamoris, *m.*; (*verb*) clamo, 1.
— (**together**), conclamo, 1.
show, monstro, 1; ostendo, ostendi, ostentum, 3; praebeo, 2.
shower, imber, imbris, *m.*
shrewd, sagax, sagacis.
shut, claudo, clausi, clausum, 3.
sick, aeger, aegra, aegrum.
side, on this, citra.
— **of, on this**, cis, citra (with *acc.*).
sides, from all, on all—, undique.
—, **from both, on both**, utrimque.
siege, oppugnatio, oppugnationis, *f.*
sight, visus, -ūs, *m.*; conspectus, -ūs, *m.*
— **of, come in**, conspicor, 1.
sign, signum, -i, *n.*
silent, be, taceo, 2.

silver, argentum, -i, *n.*
sin, pecco, 1.
since, cum, quoniam.
sing, canto, 1.
sister, soror, sororis, *f.*
situated, situs, -a, -um.
skilful, peritus, -a, -um.
skilled, doctus, -a, -um.
skin, pellis, -is, *f.*
slanderous, maledicus, -a, -um.
slave, servus, -i, *m.*
slay, neco, 1.
sleep (*verb*), dormio, 4 ; (*subst.*),
    somnus, -i, *m.*
slender, gracilis, -e.
slip out, elabor, elapsus sum, 3.
sloth, segnities, -ei, *f.*
small, parvus, -a, -um.
smaller, minor, minoris.
smallest, minimus, -a, -um.
snake, anguis, -is, *m.*
snatch, eripio, eripui, ereptum, 3.
— up, corripio, corripui, correp-
    tum, 3.
snow, nix, nivis, *f.*
snows, it, ningit, ninxit, 3.
so, adeo, ita, sic, tam.
— many, tot, *indecl.*
soften, emollio, 4.
soil, solum, -i, *n.*
soldier, miles, militis, *m.*
—, fellow-, commilito, commi-
    litonis, *m.*
some, nonnullus, -a, -um ; ali-
    quis, aliqua, aliquid, and (*adj.*)
    aliqui, aliquae, aliquod.
— day, aliquando.
— one, see **some.**
sometimes, interdum.
son, filius, -i, *m.*
son-in-law, gener, generi, *m.*
song, carmen, carminis, *n.*
soon, mox ; **as — as,** ut, uti.
soothe, mollio, 4.
sort of, what? qualis, -e.
Spain, Hispania, -ae, *f.*
spare, be sparing, parco, peperci,
    parsum, 3 (with *dat.*).
sparrow, passer, passeris, *m.*

speak, fatur, 1, *defect.* ; loquor,
    locutus sum, 3.
spear, hasta, -ae, *f.*
speech, oratio, orationis, *f.* ;
    make a—, orationem habeo.
speed, celeritas, celeritatis, *f.*
spend, consumo, consumpsi, con-
    sumptum, 3.
splendid, splendidus, -a, -um.
spring, ver, veris, *n.*
spur, calcar, calcaris, *n.*
spy, explorator, exploratoris, *m.*
stag, cervus, -i, *m.*
stand, sto, steti, statum, 1.
standard, signum, -i, *n.*
start of, get the, praevenio, prae-
    vēni, praeventum, 4.
state, civitas, civitatis, *f.* ; res
    publica, rei publicae, *f.*
step (*verb*), gradior, gressus sum,
    3 ; (*subst.*) gradus, -ūs, *m.*
stern, puppis, -is, *f.*
stir (*trans.*), commoveo, com-
    mōvi, commotum, 2.
stone, lapis, lapidis, *m.* ; saxum,
    -i, *n.*
storm, take by storm, expugno, 1.
storm (*subst.*), procella, -ae, *f.* ;
    tempestas, tempestatis, *f.*
story, fabula, -ae, *f.*
strait, fretum, -i, *n.*
street, via, -ae, *f.*
strength, vires, -ium, *f.* (*pl.* of
    vis).
strengthen, confirmo, 1 ; firmo, 1.
stretched, fusus, -a, -um.
strong, validus, -a, -um ; **be— ;**
    valeo, valui —, 2.
study, studium, -i, *n.*
such, of—a kind, talis, -e.
sudden, repentinus, -a, -um.
suddenly, repente.
suffer, patior, passus sum, 3.
suitable, idoneus, -a, -um.
sum of money, pecunia, -ae, *f.*
summer, aestas, aestatis, *f.*
summon, convoco, 1.
sun, sol, solis, *m.*
supplies, commeatus, -ūs, *m.*

supply, suppedito, 1.
surgeon, medicus, -i, *m.*
surrender, dedo, dedidi, deditum, 3.
surround, circumdo, circumdedi, circumdatum, circumdare.
surviving, superstes, superstitis.
suspect, suspicor, 1.
sustain, sustineo, sustinui, sustentum, 2.
sway, flecto, flexi, flexum, 3.
sweet, dulcis, -e.
sweeter, dulcior, dulcioris.
swift, celer, celeris, celere.
swifter, ocior, ocioris.
swiftest, ocissimus, -a, -um.
swim, nato, 1 ; no, 1.
Switzerland, Helvetia, -ae, *f.*
sword, gladius, -i, *m.*
table, mensa, -ae, *f.*
take, capio, cepi, captum, 3.
— care, curo, 1.
— pains, laboro, 1.
tale, fabula, -ae, *f.*
talk, loquor, locutus sum, 3.
talkative, loquax, loquacis.
Tarentum, Tarentum, -i, *n.*
tax, vectigal, vectigalis, *n.*
teach, doceo, docui, doctum, 2.
tear, lacrima, -ae, *f.*
— away or out, eripio, eripui, ereptum, 3.
temple, templum, -i, *n.*
tempt, tento, 1.
tender, tener, tenera, tenerum.
terms, condicio, condicionis, *f.*
terrify, terreo, 2.
territories, fines, -ium, *m.*
than, quam.
that, is, ea, id.
— (of yours), iste, -a, -ud.
— (yonder), ille, illa, illud.
— . . . not, ne, quin.
—, (so), (in order) —, ut, uti.
— (thereby) . . . not, quominus.
then, tum ; **— at length,** tum demum.
thenceforth, exinde.
their (own), suus, -a, -um.

they, ei, eae, ea.
thing, res, rei, *f.*
think, arbitror, 1 ; puto, 1.
thirst, sitis, -is, *f.*
this, hic, haec, hoc.
— side of, on, cis, citra (with *acc.*).
— side, on, citra.
— time, by, iam.
thither, eo.
threats, minae, -arum, *f.*
three, tres, tria.
through, per (with *acc.*).
throw, iacio, ieci, iactum, 3 ; iacto, 1 ; praecipito, 1.
tide, aestus, -ūs, *m.*
timber, trabs, trabis, *f.*
time, tempus, temporis, *n.* ; **at another—,** alias ; **for a long—,** diu.
timid, timidus, -a, -um.
tired, fessus, -a, -um.
to, ad (with *acc.*) ; **to a man,** ad unum.
to-day, hodie.
to-morrow, cras.
together, get, comparo, 1.
tongue, lingua, -ae, *f.*
too far, longius.
tooth, dens, dentis, *m.*
torment, excrucio, 1.
torn, lacer, lacera, lacerum.
tortoise (defence made by interlocking shields), testudo, testudinis, *f.*
towards, adversum, adversus (with *acc.*) ; (**—a person**) erga (with *acc.*).
tower, turris, -is, *f.*
town (*subst.*), oppidum, -i, *n.* ; (*adj.*) urbanus, -a, -um.
townsman, oppidanus, -i, *m.*
trace, track, vestigium, -i, *n.*
train, erudio, 4.
traitor, proditor, proditoris, *m.*
transport-ship, navis oneraria.
traverse, obeo, obii, obitum, obire.
treacherous, perfidus, -a, -um.
treasury, aerarium, -i, *n.*
treaty, foedus, foederis, *n.*

tree, arbor, arboris, *f.*
trench, fossa, -ae, *f.*
tribute, vectigal, vectigalis, *n.*
troops, copiae, -arum, *f.*
troublesome, molestus, -a, -um.
true, verus, -a, -um.
trust, fido, fisus sum, 3.
try, experior, expertus sum, 4 ; tento, 1.
turn (*trans.*), verto, verti, versum, 3.
— out, evenio, evēni, eventum, 4.
two, duo, -ae, -o.
unarmed, inermis, -e.
unaware, be, ignoro, 1.
uncertain, incertus, -a, -um.
uncivilised, barbarus, -a, -um.
under, sub (with *abl.*).
under, be, subsum, subfui, subesse.
understand, intellego, intellexi, intellectum, 3.
understanding, come to an (with) consentio, consensi, consensum, 4.
unequal, iniquus, -a, -um.
unexpectedly, de improviso.
unfair, iniquus, -a, -um.
unfaithful, infidelis, -e.
unfavourable, iniquus, -a, -um.
unfortunate, infelix, infelicis.
unhappy, infelix, infelicis ; miser, misera, miserum.
unhurt, incolumis, -e.
universal, universus, -a, -um.
unknowing, insciens, inscientis.
unless, nisi.
unlike, dissimilis, -e.
unmindful, immemor, immemoris.
unserviceable, inutilis, -e.
until (*prep.*), ad (with *acc.*) ; (*conj.*) donec, dum.
untruthful, mendax, mendacis.
unwilling, invitus, -a, -um.
—, be, nolo, nolui, —, nolle.
unwitting, insciens, inscientis.
unworthy, indignus, -a, -um.

upper, superus (*rarely* super), -a, -um.
uproar, strepitus, -ūs, *m.*
upon (implying motion), in (with *acc.*).
use, utor, usus sum, 3 (with *abl.*).
useful, utilis, -e.
—, more, utilior, utilioris.
vain, in, frustra.
valley, vallis, -is, *f.*
valour, virtus, virtutis, *f.*
value at, facio, feci, factum, 3 (with *gen.*).
Veii, Veii, -orum, *n. pl.*
Verginius, Verginius, -i, *m.*
verse, versus, -ūs, *m.*
veteran, veteranus, -a, -um.
vice, vitium, -i, *n.*
victory, victoria, -ae, *f.*
vigilant, vigil, vigilis.
village, vicus, -i, *m.*
violate, violo, 1.
violence, violentia, -ae, *f.* ; vis, *acc.* vim, no *gen. dat.*, *abl.* vi, *f.*
act of—, iniuria, -ae, *f.*
virtue, virtus, virtutis, *f.*
visit, lustro, 1.
voice, vox, vocis, *f.*
wage, gero, gessi, gestum, 3.
wait, opperior, oppertus sum, 4.
walk, ambulo, 1.
wall, murus, -i, *m.*
walls (of a city), moenia, -ium, *n.*
wander, vagor, 1.
— about, peragro, 1.
war, bellum, -i, *n.* ; **make—upon** bellum infero.
warn, moneo, 2.
waste, lay, vasto, 1.
watch, tueor, 2 ; vigilo, 1.
watchful, vigil, vigilis.
water, aqua, -ae, *f.*
way, via, -ae, *f.*
we, nos.
weapon, telum, -i, *n.*
weary, fessus, -a, -um.
weather, tempestas, tempestatis, *f.*
weight, pondus, ponderis, *n.*
well, bene ; **very —,** optime.

well, to be, valeo, valui, —, 2.

well-known, notus, -a, -um.

what? quid ; **what, pray**? quidnam.

whatever, see **whoever.**

when, cum, ubi, ut (uti) ; **when**? quando.

whence, unde.

where, ubi.

whether . . . or, sive . . . sive, seu . . . seu ; (in double questions) utrum . . . an.

which, qui, quae, quod ; — (of —two)? uter, utra, utrum.

—(of the two) you please, uterlibet, utralibet, utrumlibet.

whichever (of the two) you will, utervis, utravis, utrumvis.

—(of the two), utercumque, utracumque, utrumcumque.

while, dum.

white, albus, -a, -um.

whither, quo.

who (*interrog.*), quis, quae, quid ; (*interrog. adj.* and *rel.*), qui, quae, quod.

who, pray? quisnam.

whoever, quisquis, quaequae, quidquid (quicquid) and (*adj.*) quodquod ; quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque.

whole (*adj.*), totus, -a, -um ; (*subst.*), summa, -ae, *f.*

wholly, omnino.

why? cur, quare.

— not? quin.

wicked, malus, -a, -um.

wide, lātus, -a, -um.

wife, uxor, uxoris, *f.*

wild beast, fera, -ae, *f.*

— boar, aper, apri, *m.*

will, be willing, volo, volui, velle.

wind, ventus, -i, *m.*

winding, curvus, -a, -um.

wine, vinum, -i, *n.*

wing (of an army), cornu, -ūs, *n.*

winter, hiems, hiemis, *f.* ; **pass the —,** hiemo, 1.

— -quarters, hiberna, -orum, *n.*

wisdom, sapientia, -ae, *f.*

wise, prudens, prudentis ; sapiens, sapientis.

wish for, opto, 1.

with, cum (with *abl.*).

within (*adv.*)., intra, intus ; (*prep.*) intra (with *acc.*).

without, sine (with *abl.*).

witness, testis, -is, *c.*

woman, femina, -ae, *f.* ; mulier, mulieris, *f.*

wood, silva, -ae, *f.*

word, verbum, -i, *n.*

work, opus, operis, *n.*

— upon, sollicito, 1.

world, mundus, -i, *m.*

worse, deterior, deterioris ; peior, peioris.

worship, veneror, 1.

worst, deterrimus, -a, -um.

worth, of, frugi, *indecl.*

worthless, nequam, *indecl.*

worthy, dignus, -a, -um (with *abl.*).

—, deem, dignor, 1 (with *abl.*).

would that ! utinam.

wound (*verb*), vulnero, 1 ; (*subst.*) vulnus, vulneris, *n.*

wretched, miser, misera, miserum.

write, scribo, scripsi, scriptum, 3.

year, annus, -i, *m.*

yesterday, here, heri.

yield (*trans.*), concedo, concessi, concessum, 3.

yoke, iugum, -i, *n.*

you (*sing.*), tu ; (*pl.*) vos.

young man, iuvenis, -is, *m.*

youngster, iunior, iunioris.

youngest, natu minimus, -a, -um.

your, yours (if one person is addressed), tuus, -a, -um ; (if several are addressed) vester, vestra, vestrum.

Zeno, Zeno, Zenonis, *m.*

APPENDIX.

SOME IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES IN COMMON USE.

310. Fīlius, *son*, and some other second declension substantives ending in **-ius** have a vocative form in **-ī**; *e.g.* **fīlī**. Sometimes the nominative of words ending in **-ius** is used instead of the vocative, but there is no form ending in **-ie**.

311. Deus (m.), *a god*, is thus declined : –

	Singular.	Plural.
N.V.	**deus**	**deī** or **dī**
Acc.	**deum**	**deōs**
Gen.	**deī**	**deōrum** or (in poetry) **deum**
Dat.	**deō**	**deīs, diīs,** or **dīs**
Abl.	**deō**	**deīs, diīs,** or **dīs**

Obs.—The voc. sing. of **deus** is the same as the nominative.

312. The following are irregular :—

Bōs (c.), *ox* or *cow*.   **Sūs** (c.), *boar* or *sow*.

	Singular.	Plural.		Singular.	Plural.
N.V.	**bōs**	**bovēs**	*N.V.*	**sūs**	**suēs**
Acc.	**bovem**	**bovēs**	*Acc.*	**suem**	**suēs**
Gen.	**bovis**	**boum**	*Gen.*	**suis**	**suum**
Dat.	**bovī**	**būbus** or **bōbus**	*Dat.*	**suī**	**suibus** or **sūbus**
Abl.	**bove**	**būbus** or **bōbus**	*Abl.*	**sue**	**suibus** or **sūbus**

313. Domus (f.), *house*, belongs to the fourth declension, but has some second declension forms.

	Singular.	Plural.	
N.V.	**domus**	**domūs**	
Acc.	**domum**	**domūs**	**domos**
Gen.	**domūs**	**domuum**	**domōrum**
Dat.	**domuī**	**domibus**	
Abl.	**domō**	**domibus**	

> Rhyme—**Domō** for ablative we see,
> **Domōs, domōrum** commonly ;
> Bear locative **domī** in mind ;
> The rest like **gradus** is declined,

314. Rēs publica (f.), *commonwealth*, is sometimes written as one word (**respublica**), but each part is declined just as when the whole is written as two words : *Acc.* **rempublicam**, *Gen. Dat.* **reīpublicae**, *Abl.* **rēpublicā**. The same applies to **iūs iūrandum** (n.), *oath* (*Gen.* **iūrisiūrandī**, etc.).

244

ALTERNATIVE FORMS OF VERBS.

SHORTER FORMS OF TENSES FORMED FROM PERFECT BASES ENDING IN V.

315. Most verbs of which the perfect base end in **v** have also shorter form of their perfect tenses without the **v**; *e.g.*—

	First Conjugation.		*Fourth Conjugation.*	
	Longer Form.	Shorter Form.	Longer Form.	Shorter Form.
Indic. Perf.	amāvistī	amastī	audīvistī	{ audiistī { audistī
,, ,,	————	————	audīvit	audiit
,, ,,	amāvistis	amastis	audīvistis	{ audiistis { audistis
,, ,,	amāvērunt	amārunt	audīvērunt	audiērunt
,, ,,	———	———	audīvēre	audiēre
,, Plupf.	amāveram	amāram	audīveram	audieram
,, Fut.-Perf.	amāverō	amārō	audīverō	audierō
Subj. Perf.	amāverim	amārim	audīverim	audierim
,, Plupf.	amāvissem	amassem	audīvissem	{ audiissem { audissem
Inf. Perf.	amāvisse	amasse	audīvisse	{ audiisse { audisse

ALTERNATIVE FORMS OF TENSES COMPOUNDED WITH **SUM**.

316. In the pluperfect subjunctive passive **forem, forēs**, etc., may be substituted for **essem, essēs**, etc.; *e.g.* **amātus forem,** *I should be loved.*

317. The tenses formed from the perfect base of **sum** (**fuī, fueram,** etc.) are sometimes used with the perfect participle passive; *e.g.* **amātus fuī,** *I have been loved (but am so no longer)*; **parātus fuī,** *I was ready (but am so no longer).* In tenses other than the perfect indicative such forms of **sum** combined with the perfect participle may be respectively equivalent to the ordinary passive forms, viz. **amātus fueram** to **amātus eram, amātus fuerō** to **amātus erō,** etc.; or they may have a special meaning if the sense admits it (*e.g.* **parātus fueram,** *I had been ready*).

318. VERBS WITH FORMS BELONGING TO TWO CONJUGATIONS.

Orior, *I rise* (4th conj.), has in pres. indic. **oreris, oritur, orimur,** and in imperf. subj. **orerētur, orerentur,** both in the simple verb and in the compounds, the fourth conjugation forms of these parts being rarely found.

Potior, *I get possession* (4th conj.), similarly has in pres. indic. **potitur,** and in imperf. subj. **poterētur, poterēmur, poterentur.**

COMPOUND VERBS.

319. The prefix to a compound verb is most often a preposition or one of the inseparable particles mentioned in § 320.

Sometimes composition causes no change either in the preposition or in the verb, *e.g.* **contrā-dīcō,** *I gain-say* ; but the one or the other, or both, may undergo certain modifications. Thus—

(i) The final consonant in **ad, ob, sub** is frequently assimilated to the first letter (if a consonant) of the verb ; *e.g.* **afferō** (= **ad** + **ferō**), **oppōnō** (= **ob** + **pōnō**), **summoveō** (= **sub** + **moveō**).

(ii) **Com-** (the usual form of **cum** in composition) and **in** are assimilated to **l** or **r** when the simple verb begins with either of those letters ; *e.g.* **corrumpō** (= **com-** + **rumpō**), **irrumpō** (= **in** + **rumpō**). They are respectively written **com-** and **im-** before **m, b,** or **p,** *e.g.* **impellō** ; **com-** becomes **con-** before most other letters, *e.g.* **conferō, contulī.**

(iii) **A, ab** assumes several forms : **ā-, ab-, au-, abs-, as-** ; *e.g.* **āmittō, abdō, auferō, abstrahō, asportō.**

(iv) **E** is used in composition before consonants only, **ex** is used before consonants and vowels ; *e.g.* **ēdō, expellō, exeō.**

(v) **Ad, com-,** and **trans** sometimes lose the consonants at the end, as in **aspīrō, coeō, trāiciō** (see p. 257, footnote).

320. The chief inseparable particles prefixed to verbs are :—

dis-, *asunder,* as in **dis-cutiō** (= **dis-** + **quatiō**), *shatter* ; **dif-ferō**
  (**dif-, dī-**)　　　,,　(= **dis-** + **ferō**), *bear asunder* ; **dī-vellō,** *rend.*
ne- *not,*　　　　　,,　**ne-sciō,** *know not.*
red- (re-), *back,*　　,,　**red-dō,** *give back* ; **red-eō,** *go back* ; **re-pōnō,** *replace.*

TABLE OF PRINCIPAL PARTS.

321. As already explained (§ 137) verbs of the 1st, 2nd, and 4th conjugations, with certain exceptions, respectively follow **amō, moneō** and **audiō** in the formation of their perfect and supine bases. The following list (pp. 247-260) contains all common verbs of these conjugations in which the perfect and supine bases are irregularly formed, and also all common verbs of the 3rd conjugation, except—

(*a*) Inceptive verbs[1] formed from simple verbs which are in use, the perfect and supine of these (if they exist) being the same as the perfect and supine of the simple verb ;

(*b*) Compound verbs which contain the simple verb unchanged in form, but drop the reduplication (if any, see foot-note on p. 247) in the perfect, as compounds usually do, *e.g.*—

Simple verb :	**dūc-ō**	-ere	**dux-ī**	**duct-um**	*lead*
Compound verb :	**abdūc-ō**	-ere	**abdux-ī**	**abduct-um**	*lead away*
Simple verb :	**pell-ō**	-ere	**pepul-ī**	**puls-um**	*drive*
Compound verb :	**impell-ō**	-ere	**impul-ī**	**impuls-um**	*drive on*

[1] Inceptive verbs denote the beginning or increase of action, and end in -asco, -esco, or -isco ; *e.g.* **labasco,** *I begin to totter* ; **mitesco,** *I grow mild.*

§ 322.　　　　First Conjugation.

A.—Perfect formed by reduplication.*

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
d-ō (§ 260)	-are	ded-ī	dat-um	*give*
Compounds be-				
long to 3rd conj.				
(§ 324, A.), except				
circumd-ō (§ 260)	-are	circumded-ī	circumdat-um	*put round*
st-ō	-āre	stet-ī	stat-um	*stand*
Compounds (few				
having sup.) as				
praest-ō	-āre	praestit-ī	{ praestāt-um / praestit-um }	*excel*
Except				
circumst-ō	-āre	circumstet-ī	——	*stand around*

B.—Perfect formed by vowel-lengthening.

iuv-ō (§ 333)	-āre	iūv-ī	iūt-um	*help, delight*
lav-ō	-āre	lāv-ī { perf. part. { laut-us / lōt-us }	lavāt-um	*wash*

C.—Perfect formed by S: *none.*

D.—Perfect formed by V preceded by long vowel (A).

This is the way in which the perfect base of **amō** and of other verbs of the first conjugation not included in this list is formed. The supine is irregular in—

pōt-ō	-āre	pōtāv-ī	{ pōt-um *or* / pōtāt-um }	*drink*

E.—Perfect formed by U.

crep-ō	-āre	crepu-ī	crepit-um	*rattle*
cub-ō	-āre	cubu-ī	cubit-um	*lie down*
dom-ō	-āre	domu-ī	domit-um	*tame*
ēnic-ō	-āre	ēnicu-ī	ēnect-um	*wear to death*
fric-ō	-āre	fricu-ī	{ frict-um *or* / fricāt-um }	*rub*
plic-ō	-āre	{ plicāv-ī / plicu-ī }	{ plicāt-um / plicit-um }	*fold*
sec-ō	-āre	secu-ī	sect-um	*cut*

* The syllable prefixed by reduplication consists of the initial consonant of the verb and a short vowel.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
son-ŏ (§ 333)	-āre	sonu-ī	sonit-um	*sound*
ton-ŏ	-āre	tonu-ī	tonit-um	*thunder*
vet-ŏ	-āre	vetu-ī	vetit-um	*forbid*
mic-ŏ	-āre	micu-ī	——	*vibrate*

So comp., except

dīmic-ō	-āre	dīmicāv-ī	dīmicāt-um	*fight*

F.—Perfect base identical with present base : *none.*

§ 323.   SECOND CONJUGATION.

A.—Perfect formed by reduplication.

mord-eō	-ēre	momord-ī	mors-um	*bite*
pend-eō	-ēre	pepend-ī	——	*be suspended*
spond-eō	-ēre	spopond-ī	spons-um	*promise*
tond-eō	-ēre	totond-ī	tons-um	*clip*

B.—Perfect formed by vowel-lengthening.

cav-eō	-ēre	cāv-ī	caut-um	*beware of*
fav-eō	-ēre	fāv-ī	faut-um	*be favourable*
fov-eō	-ēre	fōv-ī	fōt-um	*cherish*
mov-eō	-ēre	mōv-ī	mōt-um	*set in motion*
vov-eō	-ēre	vōv-ī	vōt-um	*vow*
sed-eō	-ēre	sēd-ī	sess-um	*sit*

Compounds as

possid-eō	-ēre	possēd-ī	possess-um	*possess*

Except

circumsed-eō	-ēre	circumsēd-ī	circumsess-um	*besiege*
supersed-eō	-ēre	supersēd-ī	supersess-um	*forbear*
vid-eō	-ēre	vīd-ī	vīs-um	*see*
pav-eō	-ēre	pāv-ī	——	*tremble*

C.—Perfect formed by **S**

alg-eō	-ēre	als-ī	——	*feel cold*
fulg-eō	-ēre	fuls-ī	——	*gleam*
indulg-eō	-ēre	induls-ī	——	*be indulgent*
urg-eō	-ēre	urs-ī	——	*press*
frīg-eō	-ēre	frix-ī	——	*be cold*
lūc-eō	-ēre	lux-ī	——	*shine*
torqu-eō	-ēre	tors-ī	tort-um	*twist*
aug-eō	-ēre	aux-ī	auct-um	*augment*
lūg-eō	-ēre	lux-ī	luct-um	*mourn for*

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
ard-eō	-ēre	ars-ī	ars-um	*be on fire*
haer-eō	-ēre	haes-ī	haes-um	*stick*
iub-eō	-ēre	iuss-ī	iuss-um	*command*
man-eō	-ēre	mans-ī	mans-um	*remain*
mulc-eō	-ēre	muls-ī	muls-um	*caress*
mulg-eō	-ēre	muls-ī	{ mulct-um / muls-um }	*milk*
rīd-eō	-ēre	rīs-ī	rīs-um	*laugh*
suād-eō (§ 5)	-ēre	suās-ī	suās-um	*recommend*
terg-eō	-ēre	ters-ī	ters-um	*wipe*

D.—Perfect formed by **V** preceded by long vowel.

abol-eō	-ēre	abolēv-ī	abolit-um	*abolish*
ci-eō	-ēre	cīv-ī	cit-um	*arouse*
dĕl-eō	-ēre	dēlēv-ī	dēlēt-um	*abolish*
fl-eō	-ēre	flēv-ī	flēt-um	*weep*
n-eō	-ēre	nēv-ī	nēt-um	*spin*
compl-eō	-ēre	complēv-ī	complēt-um	*fill up*
expl-eō	-ēre	explēv-ī	explēt-um	*fill up*
impl-eō	-ēre	implēv-ī	implēt-um	*fill*
repl-eō	-ēre	replēv-ī	replēt-um	*refill*
suppl-eō	-ēre	supplēv-ī	supplēt-um	*fill up*

E.—Perfect formed by **U**.

This is the way in which the perfect base of **moneō** and of other verbs of the second conjugation not included in this list is formed. The supine is wanting in many verbs of this conjugation, and is irregular in—

doc-eō	-ēre	docu-ī	doct-um	*teach*
misc-eō	-ēre	miscu-ī	mixt-um	*mix*
ten-eō	-ēre	tenu-ī	tent-um	*hold*
Comp. as retin-eō	-ēre	retinu-ī	retent-um	*hold back*
torr-eō	-ēre	torru-ī	tost-um	*scorch*
cens-eō	-ēre	censu-ī	cens-um	*count*

F.—Perfect base identical with present base.

prand-eō	-ēre	prand-ī	prans-um	*lunch*
ferv-eō	-ēre	ferv-ī (*or* ferbu-ī)		*be boiling*
strīd-eō	-ēre	strid-ī		*creak*

§ 324.   THIRD CONJUGATION.

A.—Perfect formed by reduplication.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
can-ŏ	-ere	cecin-ī	cant-um	*sing*
Compounds as praecin-ŏ (§ 324, E)				
Compounds cf dŏ, except circumd-ŏ (§ 322, A),				
as ĕd-ŏ *	-ere	ĕdid-ī	ĕdit-um	*give out*
Including :				
crēd-ŏ	-ere	crēdid-ī	crēdit-um	*trust*
perd-ŏ	-ere	perdid-ī	perdit-um	*destroy*
vend-ŏ	-ere	vendid-ī	vendit-um	*sell*
pung-ŏ	-ere	pupug-ī	punct-um	*prick*
Compounds as compung-ŏ (§ 324, C)				
sist-ŏ	-ere	stit-ī	stat-um	*make to stand*
Comp. as consist-ŏ	-ere	constit-ī	constit-um	*stand still*
Except				
circumsist-ŏ	-ere	circumstet-ī	——	*stand around*
tang-ŏ	-ere	tetig-ī	tact-um	*touch*
Comp. as atting-ŏ	-ere	attig-ī	attact-um	*touch*
tend-ŏ	-ere	tetend-ī	tent-um	*stretch*
cad-ŏ	-ere	cecid-ī	căs-um	*fall*
Comp. as concid-ŏ	-ere	concid-ī	——	*fall*
Supine stem in				
occid-ŏ	-ere	occid-ī	occăs-um	*fall, set*
recid-ŏ	-ere	reccid-ī	recăs-um	*fall back*
caed-ŏ	-ere	cecīd-ī	caes-um	*cut*
Comp. as occīd-ŏ	-ere	occīd-ī	occīs-um	*kill*
curr-ŏ	-ere	cucurr-ī	curs-um	*run*
Compounds as				
accurr-ŏ	-ere	{ accucurr-ī or accurr-ī }	accurs-um	*run to*
fall-ŏ	-ere	fefell-ī	fals-um	*deceive*
Comp.:refell-ŏ	-ere	refell-ī	——	*disprove*

* Some of these are compounds of dŏ, *I give*, others of a verb -dŏ, *I put*, of which the simple form is not in use. No distinction is here attempted, as it is in many cases impossible to ascertain from which simple verb the compound is formed.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
pell-ŏ	-ere	pepul-ī	puls-um	*drive*
pend-ŏ	-ere	pepend-ī	pens-um	*weigh out, pay*
tund-ŏ	-ere	tutud-ī	{ tuns-um / tūs-um }	*beat*
disc-ŏ	-ere	didic-ī	——	*learn*
Comp. as addisc-ŏ	-ere	addidic-ī	——	*learn besides*
parc-ŏ	-ere	peperc-ī	pars-ūrus	*be sparing*
posc-ŏ	-ere	poposc-ī	——	*demand*
Comp. as dēposc-ŏ	-ere	dēposc-ī	——	*demand*

B.—Perfect formed by vowel-lengthening.

ag-ŏ	-ere	ēg-ī	act-um	*drive*
Comp. as abig-ŏ	-ere	abēg-ī	abact-um	*drive away*
Except circumag-ŏ	-ere	circumēg-ī	circumact-um	*drive around*
cōg-ŏ	-ere	coēg-ī	coact-um	*drive together, compel*
dēg-ŏ	-ere	dēg-ī	——	*pass (time)*
perag-ŏ	-ere	perēg-ī	peract-um	*accomplish*
em-ŏ	-ere	ēm-ī	empt-um	*buy*
Comp. as adim-ŏ	-ere	adēm-ī	adempt-um	*take away*
Except coem-ŏ	-ere	coēm-ī	coempt-um	*buy up*
See also § 324, C.				
frang-ŏ	-ere	frēg-ī	fract-um	*break*
Compounds as				
confring-ŏ	-ere	confrēg-ī	confract-um	*break*
leg-ŏ	-ere	lēg-ī	lect-um	*pick, read*
Comp. as collig-ŏ	-ere	collēg-ī	collect-um	*collect*
But e remains in				
perleg-ŏ	-ere	perlēg-ī	perlect-um	*read through*
releg-ŏ	-ere	relēg-ī	relect-um	*again go over*
Perf. differs in	.			
dīlig-ŏ				
intelleg-ŏ } (§ 324, C.)				
negleg-ŏ				
linqu-ŏ	-ere	līqu-ī	——	*leave*
Comp. as relinqu-ŏ	-ere	relīqu-ī	relict-um	*leave*
pang-ŏ	-ere	pēg-ī *or* pepig-ī	pact-um	*fasten*
Comp. : comping-ŏ	-ere	compēg-ī	compact-um	*join together*
rump-ŏ	-ere	rūp-ī	rupt-um	*break*
vinc-ŏ	-ere	vīc-ī	vict-um	*conquer*
ed-ŏ	-ere	ēd-ī	ēs-um	*eat*
fund-ŏ	-ere	fūd-ī	fūs-um	*pour*

C.—Perfect formed by **S**.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
carp-ŏ	-ere	**carps-ī**	**carpt-um**	*pluck*
Comp. as dēcerp-ŏ	-ere	dēcerps-ī	dēcerpt-um	*pluck off*

Four compounds of
em-ŏ (§ 324, B.) :

cŏm-ŏ	-ere	comps-ī	compt-um	*deck*
dēm-ŏ	-ere	demps-ī	dempt-um	*take off*
prŏm-ŏ	-ere	**promps-ī**	**prompt-um**	*bring out*
sŭm-ŏ	-ere	**sumps-ī**	**sumpt-um**	*take up*
ger-ŏ	-ere	**gess-ī**	**gest-um**	*carry*
nūb-ŏ	-ere	nups-ī	nupt-um	*put on the bridal veil*, i.e. *be married*
rēp-ŏ	-ere	reps-ī	rept-um	*creep*
scalp-ŏ	-ere	scalps-ī	scalpt-um	*carve*
scrīb-ŏ	-ere	**scrips-ī**	**script-um**	*write*
sculp-ŏ	-ere	sculps-ī	sculpt-um	*carve*
serp-ŏ	-ere	serps-ī	serpt-um	*crawl*
temn-ŏ	-ere	**temps-ī**	**tempt-um**	*despise*
ūr-ŏ	-ere	**uss-ī**	**ust-um**	*burn, inflame*
Comp. : combūr-ŏ	-ere	combuss-ī	combust-um	*burn up*
cing-ŏ	-ere	**cinx-ī**	**cinct-um**	*gird*
coqu-ŏ	-ere	**cox-ī**	**coct-um**	*cook*
dīc-ŏ (§ 332)	-ere	**dix-ī**	**dict-um**	*say*
dūc-ŏ (§ 332)	-ere	**dux-ī**	**duct-um**	*lead*
fing-ŏ	-ere	**finx-ī**	**fict-um**	*form*
afflīg-ŏ	-ere	**afflix-ī**	**afflict-um**	*strike against*
conflīg-ĭ	-ere	conflix-ī	conflict-um	*contend*
inflīg-ŏ	-ere	inflix-ī	inflict-um	*strike on*
iung-ŏ	-ere	**iunx-ī**	**iunct-um**	*join*

Three compounds of
leg-ŏ (§ 324, B.) :

dīlig-ŏ	-ere	**dīlex-ī**	**dīlect-um**	*love*
intelleg-ŏ	-ere	**intellex-ī**	**intellect-um**	*understand*
negleg-ŏ	-ere	**neglex-ī**	**neglect-um**	*neglect*
ping-ŏ	-ere	**pinx-ī**	**pict-um**	*paint*
plang-ŏ	-ere	planx-ī	planct-um	*beat*

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
Compounds of pung-ŏ				
(§ 324, A), as				
compung-ŏ	-ere	compunx-ī	compunct-um	*sting*
reg-ŏ	-ere	**rex-ī**	**rect-um**	*rule*
Comp. as corrig-ŏ	-ere	correx-ī	correct-um	*correct*
Except perg-ŏ	-ere	perrex-ī	perrect-um	*continue*
surg-ŏ	-ere	surrex-ī	surrect-um	*rise*
distingu-ŏ	-ere	distinx-ī	distinct-um	*distinguish*
exstingu-ŏ	-ere	exstinx-ī	exstinct-um	*extinguish*
restingu-ŏ	-ere	restinx-ī	restinct-um	*extinguish*
string-ŏ	-ere	strinx-ī	strict-um	*strip*
stru-ŏ	-ere	strux-ī	struct-um	*pile*
sūg-ŏ	-ere	sux-ī	suct-um	*suck*
teg-ŏ	-ere	**tex-ī**	**tect-um**	*cover*
ting-ŏ *or* tingu-ŏ	-ere	tinx-ī	tinct-um	*steep*
trah-ŏ	-ere	**trax-ī**	**tract-um**	*draw*
ung-ŏ *or* ungu-ŏ	-ere	unx-ī	unct-um	*anoint*
veh-ŏ	-ere	vex-ī	vect-um	*carry*
vīv-ŏ	-ere	**vix-ī**	**vict-um**	*live*
cēd-ŏ	-ere	**cess-ī**	**cess-um**	*yield*
claud-ŏ	-ere	**claus-ī**	**claus-um**	*shut*
Comp. as conclūd-ŏ	-ere	conclūs-ī	conclūs-um	*confine*
dīvid-ŏ	-ere	**dīvīs-ī**	**dīvīs-um**	*divide*
laed-ŏ	-ere	**laes-ī**	**laes-um**	*hurt*
Comp. as collīd-ŏ	-ere	collīs-ī	collīs-um	*clash*
lūd-ŏ	-ere	**lūs-ī**	**lūs-um**	*play*
merg-ŏ	-ere	mers-ī	mers-um	*dip*
mitt-ŏ	-ere	**mīs-ī**	**miss-um**	*send*
plaud-ŏ	-ere	plaus-ī	plaus-um	*clap*
Comp. : explōd-ŏ	-ere	explōs-ī	explōs-um	*hiss off*
prem-ŏ	-ere	**press-ī**	**press-um**	*press*
Compounds as				
comprim-ŏ	-ere	compress-ī	compress-um	*restrain*
rād-ŏ	-ere	rās-ī	rās-um	*scrape*
rōd-ŏ	-ere	rōs-ī	rōs-um	*gnaw*
sparg-ŏ	-ere	**spars-ī**	**spars-um**	*scatter*
Comp. as asperg-ŏ	-ere	aspers-ī	aspers-um	*sprinkle*
trūd-ŏ	-ere	trūs-ī	trūs-um	*thrust*
vād-ŏ	-ere	. ——	——	*go*
Comp. as ēvād-ŏ	-ere	ēvās-ī	ēvās-um	*go forth*

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
fīg-ŏ	-ere	fix-ī	fix-um	*fix*
flect-ŏ	-ere	flex-ī	flex-um	*bend*
flu-ŏ	-ere	flux-ī	flux-um	*flow*
nect-ŏ	-ere	nex-ī	nex-um	*bind*
ning-it *or* ningu-it	-ere	ninx-it	——	*snow*

D.—Perfect formed by V preceded by long vowel.

cern-ŏ	-ere	crēv-ī	crēt-um	*discern*
lin-ŏ	-ere	lēv-ī	lit-um	*besmear*
N.B.—Comp. :				
oblin-ŏ	-ere	oblēv-ī	oblit-um	*besmear*
pet-ŏ	-ere	petīv-ī *or* peti-ī	petīt-um	*seek*
quaer-ŏ	-ere	quaesīv-ī	quaesīt-um	*seek*
Comp. as exquīr-ŏ	-ere	exquīsīv-ī	exquīsit-um	*seek out*
ser-ŏ	-ere	sēv-ī	sat-um	*sow*
Comp. as inser-ŏ	-ere	insēv-ī	insit-um	*ingraft*
sin-ŏ	-ere	sīv-ī	sit-um	*allow*
spern-ŏ	-ere	sprēv-ī	sprēt-um	*despise*
stern-ŏ	-ere	strāv-ī	strāt-um	*spread*
ter-ŏ	-ere	trīv-ī	trīt-um	*rub*
arcess-ŏ *or* accers-ŏ	-ere	arcessīv-ī	arcessīt-um	*send for*
capess-ŏ	-ere	capessīv-ī	capessīt-um	*take in hand*
lacess-ŏ	-ere	lacessīv-ī	lacessīt-um	*provoke*
incess-ŏ	-ere	incessīv-ī	——	*assault*

The present base of the following is inceptive (§ 321) in form :—

adolesc-ŏ (§ 177)	-ere	adolēv-ī	adult-um	*grow up*
cresc-ŏ (§ 177)	-ere	crēv-ī	crēt-um	*grow*
nosc-ŏ	-ere	nōv-ī	nōt-um	*get to know*
Comp. (noscŏ has lost an initial g) :				
agnosc-ŏ	-ere	agnōv-ī	agnit-um	*recognise*
cognosc-ŏ	-ere	cognōv-ī	cognit-um	*ascertain*
ignosc-ŏ	-ere	ignōv-ī	ignōt-um	*overlook*
obsolesc-ŏ	-ere	obsolēv-ī	obsolēt-um	*decay*
pasc-ŏ	-ere	pāv-ī	past-um	*pasture*
quiesc-ŏ	-ere	quiēv-ī	quiēt-um	*rest*
scisc-ŏ	-ere	scīv-ī	scīt-um	*enact*
suesc-ŏ (§ 5)	-ere	suēv-ī	suēt-um	*become accus- tomed*

E.—Perfect formed by U.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
al-ō	-ere	alu-ī	alt-um	*nourish*
Compounds of can-ō (§ 324, A.)				
as praecin-ō	-ere	praecinu-ī	praecent-um	*sing before*
col-ō	-ere	colu-ī	cult-um	*cultivate*
accumb-ō	-ere	accubu-ī	accubit-um	*recline at table*
incumb-ō	-ere	incubu-ī	incubit-um	*lean*
occumb-ō	-ere	occubu-ī	occubit-um	*sink*
prōcumb-ō	-ere	prōcubu-ī	prōcubit-um	*bend down*
recumb-ō	-ere	recubu-ī	recubit-um	*recline*
succumb-ō	-ere	succubu-ī	succubit-um	*submit*
consul-ō	-ere	consulu-ī	consult-um	*consult*
frem-ō	-ere	fremu-ī	fremit-um	*roar*
gem-ō	-ere	gemu-ī	gemit-um	*groan*
gign-ō	-ere	genu-ī	genit-um	*produce*
occul-ō	-ere	occulu-ī	occult-um	*hide*
pōn-ō	-ere	posu-ī	posit-um	*place*
ser-ō	-ere	——	sert-um	*join*
Comp. as conser-ō	-ere	conseru-ī	consert-um	*join*
tex-ō	-ere	texu-ī	text-um	*weave*
vom-ō	-ere	vomu-ī	vomit-um	*vomit*
met-ō	-ere	(messem fēc-ī)mess-um		*reap*
compesc-ō	-ere	compescu-ī	——	*check*
strep-ō	-ere	strepu-ī	——	*resound*
trem-ō	-ere	tremu-ī	——	*tremble*

F.—Perfect base identical with present base.

acu-ō	-ere	acu-ī	acūt-um	*sharpen*
argu-ō	-ere	argu-ī	argūt-um	*accuse*
dīlu-ō	-ere	dīlu-ī	dīlūt-um	*wash out*
exu-ō	-ere	exu-ī	exūt-um	*strip off*
imbu-ō	-ere	imbu-ī	imbūt-um	*steep*
indu-ō	-ere	indu-ī	indūt-um	*put on*
minu-ō	-ere	minu-ī	minūt-um	*lessen*
abnu-ō	-ere	abnu-ī	abnūt-um	*refuse*
annu-ō	-ere	annu-ī	annūt-um	*assent*
pollu-ō	-ere	pollu-ī	pollūt-um	*defile*
statu-ō	-ere	statu-ī	statūt-um	*settle*
Compounds as				
constitu-ō	-ere	constitu-ī	constitūt-um	*settle*

Present India.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
su-ō	-ere	su-ī	sūt-um	*stitch*
tribu-ō	-ere	tribu-ī	tribūt-um	*assign*
ru-ō	-ere	ru-ī	rūt-um	*rush down*
Comp. as dīru-ō	-ere	dīru-ī	dīrut-um	*demolish*
metu-ō	-ere	metu-ī	-—	*fear*
congru-ō	-ere	congru-ī	——	*agree*
lu-ō	-ere	lu-ī		*pay*
plu-it	-ere	plu-it (*or* plūv it)	-——	*rain*
solv-ō	-ere	solv-ī	solūt-um	*loose*
volv-ō	-ere	volv-ī	volūt-um	*roll*
facess-ō	-ere	facess-ī	facessīt-um	*accomplish*
accend-ō	-ere	accend-ī	accens-um	*kindle*
incend-ō	-ere	incend-ī	incens-um	*set on fire*
succend-ō	-ere	succend-ī	succens-um	*kindle below*
dēfend-ō	-ere	dēfend-ī	dēfens-um	*defend*
offend-ō	-ere	offend-ī	offens-um	*stumble*
mand-ō	-ere	mand-ī	mans-um	*chew*
pand-ō	-ere	pand-ī	pass-um	*spread open*
prehend-ō	-ere	prehend-ī	prehens-um	*seize*
scand-ō	-ere	scand-ī	scans-um	*climb*
Comp. as ascend-ō	-ere	ascend-ī	ascens-um	*climb up*
sīd-ō	-ere	sīd-ī	——	*settle down*
Comp. as consīd-ō	-ere	consēd-ī	consess-um	*settle down*
vell-ō	-ere	vell-ī	vuls-um	*pluck*
verr-ō	-ere	verr-ī	vers-um	*sweep*
vert-ō	-ere	vert-ī	vers-um	*turn*
bib-ō	-ere	bib-ī	——	*drink*
excūd-ō	-ere	excūd-ī	excūs-um	*hammer out*
strīd-ō	-ere	strīd-ī	——	*creak*
vīs-ō	-ere	vīs-ī	——	*visit*

In the following the perfect base is identical with the verbal stem :—

find-ō	-ere	fid-ī	fiss-um	*cleave*
scind-ō	-ere	scid-ī	sciss-um	*rend*
percell-ō	-ere	percul-ī	perculs-um	*overturn*

§ 325. THIRD CONJUGATION, WITH THE SHORT-I FORMS OF THE FOURTH.

A.—Perfect formed by reduplication.

par-iō	-ere	peper-ī	part-um	*produce*

Compounds (4th conj.) : comper-iō and reper-iō (§ 326, F.)

B.—Perfect formed by vowel-lengthening.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
cap-iŏ	-ere	cēp-ī	capt-um	*take*
Comp. as accip-iŏ	-ere	accēp-ī	accept-um	*receive*
fac-iŏ (§§ 259, 332)	-ere	fēc-ī	fact-um	*make, do*
Comp. (§ 259) as				
satisfac-iŏ	-ere	satisfēc-ī	satisfact-um	
,, with preps. as				
affic-iŏ	-ere	affēc-ī	affect-um	*affect*
fug-iŏ	-ere	fūg-ī	fugit-um	*flee*
iac-iŏ	-ere	iēc-ī	iact-um	*throw*
Comp. as abic-iŏ *	-ere	abiēc-ī	abiect-um	*throw away*
fod-iŏ	-ere	fōdī	foss-um	*dig*

C.—Perfect formed by **S**.

allic-iŏ	-ere	allex-ī	allect-um	*attract*
illic-iŏ	—ere	illex-ī	illect-um	*entice*
pellic-iŏ	-ere	pellex-ī	pellect-um	*entice*
spec-iŏ { (in old Lat. only) }	-ere	spex-ī	——	*look*
Comp. as aspic-iŏ	-ere	aspex-ī	aspect-um	*look at*
quat-iŏ	-ere	——	quass-um	*shake, agitate*
Comp. as				
concut-iŏ	-ere	concuss-ī	concuss-um	*shake, agitate*

D.—Perfect formed by **V** preceded by long vowel (**I**).

cup-iŏ	-ere	cupīv-ī	cupĭt-um	*desire*
sap-iŏ	-ere	sapīv-ī	——	*have taste, know*

E.—Perfect formed by **U**.

ēlic-iŏ	-ere	ēlicu-ī	ēlicit-um	*lure forth*
rap-iŏ	-ere	rapu-ī	rapt-um	*seize*
Comp. as abrip-iŏ	-ere	abripu-ī	abrept-um	*carry off*

F.—Perfect base identical with present base.

coep-iŏ { (pres. not classical) }	-ere	coep-ī (§ 271)	coept-um	*begin*

* In compounds of **iaciŏ** the consonantal i is omitted in tenses formed from the present base, but the syllable of the prefix preceding the i is counted long (§ 4) just as if the consonantal i were written.

§ 326.   FOURTH CONJUGATION.

A.—Perfect formed by reduplication : *none*.

B.—Perfect formed by vowel lengthening.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
ven-iŏ	-īre	**vĕn-ī**	**vent-um**	*come*

C.—Perfect formed by **S**.

farc-iŏ	-īre	fars-ī	fart-um	*stuff*
Comp. as referc-iŏ	-īre	refers-ī	refert-um	*stuff*
fulc-iŏ	-īre	fuls-ī	fult-um	*prop*
haur-iŏ	-īre	**haus-ī**	**haust-um**	*drain*
saep-iŏ	-īre	saeps-ī	saept-um	*fence in*
sanc-iŏ	-īre	sanx-ī	{ sanct-um *or* sancīt-um }	*ratify*
sarc-iŏ	-īre	sars-ī	sart-um	*patch*
vinc-iŏ	-īre	**vinx-ī**	**vinct-um**	*bind*
sent-iŏ	-īre	**sens-ī**	**sens-um**	*feel*

D.—Perfect formed by **V** preceded by long vowel (**I**).

This is the way in which the perfect base of **audiŏ** and of other verbs of the fourth conjugation not included in this list is formed. The supine is irregular in—

sepel-iŏ	-īre	**sepelīv-ī**	**sepult-um**	*bury*

E.—Perfect formed by **U**.

amic-iŏ	-īre	{ amicu-ī amix-ī }	amict-um	*clothe*
aper-iŏ	-īre	**aperu-ī**	**apert-um**	*uncover, open*
oper-iŏ	-īre	**operu-ī**	**opert-um**	*cover*
sal-iŏ	-īre	salu-ī	salt-um	*leap*
Comp. as dēsil-iŏ	-īre	dēsilu-ī	dēsult-um	*leap down*

F.—Perfect base identical with present base.

comper-iŏ	-īre	**comper-ī**	**compert-um**	*ascertain*
reper-iŏ	-īre	**repper-ī**	**repert-um**	*find*

DEPONENT AND SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS.

§ 327.　　　　FIRST CONJUGATION.

All form their supine base like **hortor** (§ 148).

§ 328.　　　　SECOND CONJUGATION.

All form their supine base like **vereor** (§ 149), except—

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	
r-eor	-ĕrī	rat-us sum	*think*
fat-eor	-ērī	fass-us sum	*acknowledge*
Compounds as			
confit-eor	-ĕrī	confess-us sum	*confess*
aud-eō (§ 241)	-ĕre	aus-us sum	*dare*
gaud-eō (§ 241)	-ĕre	gāvīs-us sum	*rejoice*

§ 329.　　　　THIRD CONJUGATION.

fru-or (§ 333)	-ī	fruct-us sum	*enjoy oneself*
fung-or	-ī	funct-us sum	*busy oneself*
loqu-or	-ī	locūt-us sum	*speak*
quer-or	-ī	quest-us sum	*complain*
sequ-or	-ī	secūt-us sum	*follow*
amplect-or	-ī	amplex-us sum	*embrace*
complect-or	-ī	complex-us sum	*embrace*
lāb-or	-ī	laps-us sum	*slide*
nīt-or	-ī	{ nīs-us sum, *I endeavoured* / nix-us sum, *I leaned* }	} *endeavour, lean*
ūt-or	-ī	ūs-us sum	*make use*
fīd-ō (§ 241)	-ere	fīs-us sum	*trust*

The present base of the following is inceptive (§ 321) in form :—

apisc-or	-ī	apt-us sum	*obtain*
Comp. : adipisc-or	-ī	adept-us sum	*obtain*
comminisc-or	-ī	comment-us sum	*devise*
expergisc-or	-ī	experrect-us sum	*awake oneself*
īrasc-or	-ī	īrāt-us sum	*get angry*
nancisc-or	-ī	nact-us sum	*obtain*
nasc-or	-ī	nāt-us sum	*be born*
oblīvisc-or	-ī	oblīt-us sum	*forget*
pacisc-or	-ī	pact-us sum	*bargain*
proficisc-or	-ī	profect-us sum	*set out*
ulcisc-or	-ī	ult-us sum	*take vengeance on, avenge*
dēfetisc-or	-ī	dēfess-us sum	*grow weary*

330.   THIRD CONJUGATION WITH THE SHORT-I FORMS OF THE FOURTH.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	
mor-ior (§ 333)	-ī	mortu-us sum	*die*
grad-ior	-ī	gress-us sum	*step*
Compounds as			
aggred-ior	-ī	aggress-us sum	*attack*
pat-ior	-ī	pass-us sum	*suffer*
Comp. : perpet-ior	-I	perpess-us sum	*endure*

331.   FOURTH CONJUGATION.

All form their supine base like **partior** (§ 151), except-

exper-ior	-īrī	expert-us sum	*try*
opper-ior	-īrī	{ oppert-us } sum { opperīt-us }	*wait*
or-ior (§§ 318, 333)	-īrī	ort-us sum	*rise*
assent-ior	-īrī	assens-us sum	*agree*
mēt-ior	-īrī	mens-us sum	*measure*
ord-ior	-īrī	ors-us sum	*begin*

IRREGULARITIES.

332. IMPERATIVE PRESENT WITHOUT FINAL VOWEL.

In the second person singular of the present imperative active, the three following verbs—**dīcō**, *say* ; **dūcō**, *lead* ; **faciō**, *make, do*—have respectively **dīc, dūc, fac,** the final -e being dropped. This applies to the compounds of **dīcō** and **dūcō**, and to compounds of **faciō** which retain **a** in the present base ; other compounds are regular, *e.g.* **afficiō**, *affect*, has imperative **affice.**

333. FUTURE PARTICIPLES NOT FORMED FROM SUPINE BASES.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Supine.	Future Participle.	
iuv-ō	-āre	iūt-um	iuvātūr-us	*delight*
son-ō	-āre	sonit-um	sonātūr-us	*sound*
		Perf. Part.		
fru-or	-ī	fruct-us	fruitūr-us	*enjoy oneself*
mor-ior	-ī	mortu-us	moritūr-us	*die*
or-ior	-īrī	ort-us	oritūr-us	*rise*

INDEX.

The numbers refer to the sections.

I.—GRAMMATICAL TERMS, ETC.

261

II.—LATIN WORDS.

REGULAR VERBS.

ACTIVE VOICE.   ## PASSIVE VOICE.

FROM THE PRESENT BASE.   ### FROM THE PRESENT BASE.

Pres. Indic.
ăm-ō, -ās,-ăt; -āmŭs, -ātĭs, -ant
mŏn-ĕō, -ēs, -ĕt; -ēmŭs, -ētĭs, -ent
rĕg-ō, -ĭs, -ĭt; -ĭmŭs, -ĭtĭs, -unt
aud-ĭō, -ĭs, -ĭt; -īmŭs, -ītĭs, -ĭunt

-ŏr, -ārĭs, -ātŭr; -āmŭr, -āmĭnĭ,-antŭr
-ĕŏr, -ērĭs, -ētŭr; -ēmŭr, -ēmĭnĭ, -entŭr
-ŏr, -ĕrĭs, -ĭtŭr; -ĭmŭr, -ĭmĭnĭ, -untŭr
-ĭŏr, -īrĭs, -ītŭr; -īmŭr, -īmĭnĭ, -ĭuntŭr

Imperf. Indic.
ăm-ā
mŏn-ē { -bam, -bās, -băt
rēg-ē { -bāmŭs, -bātĭs, -bant
aud-iē

-băr, -bārĭs (-bārĕ), -bātŭr
-bāmŭr, -bāmĭnĭ, -bantŭr   } **Imperf.**

Future.
ăm-ā { -bō, -bĭs, -bĭt
mŏn-ē { -bĭmŭs, -bĭtĭs, -bunt
rēg   { -am, -ēs, -ĕt
aud-ĭ { -ēmŭs, -ētĭs, -ent

-bŏr, -bĕrĭs (-bĕrĕ), -bĭtŭr
-bĭmŭr, -bĭmĭnĭ, -buntŭr
-ăr, -ērĭs (-ērĕ), -ētŭr
-ēmŭr, -ēmĭnĭ, -entŭr   } **Future.**

Pres. Subj.
ăm-em, -ēs, -ĕt; -ēmŭs, -ētĭs, -ent
mŏn-ĕ
rēg   { -am, -ās, -ăt
aud-ĭ { -āmŭs, -ātĭs, -ant

-ĕr,-ērĭs(-ērĕ),-ētŭr; -ēmŭr,-ēmĭnĭ,-entŭr
-ăr, -ārĭs (-ārĕ), -ātŭr
-āmŭr, -āmĭnĭ, -antŭr   } **Subj. Pres.**

Imperf. Subj.
ăm-ā
mŏn-ē { -rem, -rēs, -rĕt
rēg-ĕ { -rēmŭs, -rētĭs, -rent
aud-ī

-rĕr, -rērĭs (-rērĕ), -rētŭr
-rēmŭr, -rēmĭnĭ, -rentŭr   } **Imperf.**

Imperat.
ăm-ā, -ātĕ; -ātō, -ātōtĕ, -antō
mŏn-ē, -ētĕ; -ētō, -ētōtĕ, -entō
rēg-ĕ, -ĭtĕ; -ĭtō, -ĭtōtĕ, -untō
aud-ī, -ītĕ ; -ītō, -ītōtĕ, -ĭuntō

-ārĕ, -āmĭnĭ; -ātŏr, -antŏr
-ērĕ, -ēmĭnĭ; -ētŏr, -entŏr
-ĕrĕ, -ĭmĭnĭ; -ĭtŏr, -untŏr
-īrĕ, -īmĭnĭ; -ītŏr, -ĭuntŏr   } **Imperat.**

Pres.Part. Pres.Inf. Gerund.   ### Gerundive. Pres. Inf.

Infin.,etc.
ăm -ans   -ārĕ   -andum
mŏn -ens   -ērĕ   -endum
rĕg -ens   -ĕrĕ   -endum
aud -iens -īrĕ   -iendum

-andŭs   -ārī
-endŭs   -ērī
-endŭs   -ī
-iendŭs -īrī   } **Infin.,etc.**

FROM THE PERFECT BASE.   ### FROM THE SUPINE BASE.

ăm-āv
mŏn-ŭ
rex
aud-īv

{ -ī, -istī, -ĭt } IND.
{ -ĭmŭs,-istĭs,-ērunt(-ērĕ) } Perf.
{ -ĕram, -ĕrās, -ĕrăt
{ -ĕrāmŭs, -ĕrātĭs, -ĕrant } Plpf.
{ -ĕrō, -ĕrĭs, -ĕrĭt
{ -ĕrĭmŭs, -ĕrītĭs, -ĕrint } Fut.-Perf.
{ -ĕrim, -ĕrĭs, -ĕrĭt
{ -ĕrĭmŭs, -ĕrītĭs, -ĕrint } SUBJ. Perf.
{ -issem, -issēs, -issĕt
{ -issēmŭs,-issētĭs,-issent } Plpf.
{ -issĕ } Perf.INF.

ăm-āt
mŏn-ĭt
rect
aud-īt

{ -ŭs sum, ĕs, est } IND.
{ -ī sŭmŭs, estĭs, sunt } Perf.
{ -ŭs ĕram,ĕrās,ĕrăt
{ -ī ĕrāmŭs, ĕrātĭs, ĕrant } Plpf.
{ -ŭs ĕrō, ĕrĭs, ĕrĭt
{ -ī ĕrĭmŭs, ĕrĭtĭs, ĕrunt } Fut.-Perf.
{ -ŭs sim, sīs, sĭt
{ -ī sīmŭs, sītĭs, sint } SUBJ. Perf.
{ -ŭs ess-em -ēs, -ĕt
{ -ī ess-ēmŭs, -ētĭs, -ent } Plpf.
{ -ŭs (essĕ) Perf.PART.& INF
{ -um īrī   Fut. INF

FROM THE SUPINE BASE.

ăm-āt
mŏn-ĭt
rect
aud-īt

{ -ūrŭs essĕ   Fut. INF.
{ -ūrŭs   Fut. PARTIC.
{ -um, -ū   SUPINE.